COMPLETE LATIN COURSE

FOR THE

FIRST YEAR,

COMPRISING

AN OUTLINE OF LATIN GRAMMAR, AND A SERIES OF PROGRESSIVE EXERCISES IN READING AND WRITING LATIN, WITH FREQUENT PRACTICE IN READING AT SIGHT.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph.D., LL.D,

PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

REVISED EDITION.

NEW YORK :: CINCINNATI :: CHICAGO AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY. Entered. according to Act of Congress, in the year 1883, by

ALBERT HARKNESS,

In the Office of the Librarian of Congress at Washington.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1888, by ALBERT HARKNESS,

In the office of the Librarian of Congress at Washington.

HARK. 1ST YR. LAT.

w. p. 8

PREFACE

TO THE REVISED EDITION.

In this edition, the Latin Course for the First Year has been thoroughly revised and in part rewritten. In its present form it aims to introduce the beginner to the Latin language as a means of expressing thought, and not as a mere system of grammatical forms and rules, to make his first lessons as simple and attractive as possible, and then to conduct him by easy stages to such a practical and working knowledge of the language as will enable him to read Caesar or Vergil with some little facility and with some degree of pleasure.

The following are a few of the leading features of the revised edition.

- 1. The beginner is introduced, at the outset, to complete Latin sentences, and is informed how he may best ascertain their meaning.
- 2. He learns no arbitrary rules. He is allowed to see the various Latin usages exemplified in the language itself, and is thus prepared to recognize in each rule of syntax, to which his attention is called, only a simple statement of the facts in the case.

- 3. He is instructed that his chief object must be to read and appreciate the language itself, and that the grammar will be useful mainly as it aids him in this work. An attempt is made to enable him to understand and enjoy the thought in the original, to see that Latin words are not mere equivalents for corresponding English words, but that they have a meaning of their own, that Latin nouns, for instance, are the actual names of real persons and things.
- 4. The grammatical information, which will be of immediate and constant use to the learner in reading and understanding Latin, is given in the lessons themselves, while other grammatical facts which ought to be within his reach, but which should not be allowed to burden his memory, are placed in the introduction for reference.

In conclusion, the learner is advised to make faithful use of the Suggestions, which he will find in the latter part of the book, beginning on page 261. It is hoped that they will greatly aid him in his work.

Brown University, July, 1888.

PREFACE.

The volume now offered to the public is intended to furnish the pupil a complete course for his first year in the study of Latin. It conducts the beginner through the common forms and inflections of the language, introduces him to the leading principles of its syntax, and aims to prepare him to enter with success upon the consecutive study of Caesar or of any of the less difficult Latin authors. It comprises an Outline of Latin Grammar, Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing Latin, eighteen pages of Connected Discourse from Caesar, Directions for Reading at Sight, Suggestions to the Learner, Notes, a Latin-English and an English-Latin Vocabulary.

The Paradigms and Rules are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar. Thus the great objection to many First Latin Books, that they fill the memory of the pupil with forms of statement that must be laid aside as soon as he passes to his Grammar, is entirely obviated in this volume.

The Latin Exercises are taken chiefly from Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. They are made so strictly progressive, that the learner will find it perfectly easy, in the latter part of the volume, to make the transition from classified sentences to connected discourse. The

English Exercises are modelled after the Latin, and involve the same constructions and the same vocabulary.

The Exercises in Reading at Sight consist of easy passages of connected discourse from Caesar's Commentaries. They are so arranged that all the words and constructions involved in any given exercise are introduced and used in previous lessons. The pupil, therefore, who has learned all the vocabularies, and has been faithful in his other work, will find little difficulty in reading at sight in accordance with the directions given him. The important point is not that he should translate any given passage absolutely at sight, but that he should master it without help from any source whatever. The exercises are intended to encourage independent work, to promote self-reliance in study, and to give facility in reading and appreciating Latin.

The Suggestions to the Learner are intended not only to point out to the beginner the process by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence, but also to aid him in expressing that meaning in idiomatic English. Experience has abundantly shown the need of such directions. The beginner's first efforts to solve the problem presented by a Latin sentence are too often little better than a series of unsuccessful conjectures, while his first translations are purely mechanical renderings, with little regard either to the thought of his author or to the proprieties of his mother-tongue.

I am happy in this connection to acknowledge my obligations to my esteemed friend, Mr. Edward H. Cutler, the accomplished Head-Master of the Newton High School. His accurate scholarship and large professional experience have contributed greatly to the value of every part of the work. The vocabularies are all from his hand.

The work which appears entire in this volume is also published without the *Grammatical Outline*, under the title: Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing Latin, with

Frequent Practice in Reading at Sight, intended as a Companion Book to the Author's Latin Grammar.

Teachers who use the author's Latin Series in connection with the Standard Edition¹ of his Latin Grammar, may now choose for their classes during the first year of their Latin studies any one of the following courses:—

- 1. The Complete Latin Course for the First Year.
- 2. The Grammar, and the Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing Latin.
 - 3. The Grammar, and the New Latin Reader.

Each of these courses will be found to furnish an adequate preparation for the reading of any of the less difficult Latin authors. In making the selection, teachers will have an opportunity to gratify their individual preferences, and to consult the special needs of their schools.

Brown University, Providence, R.I., July, 1883.

¹ Those who retain the earlier edition of the Grammar will find the Introductory Latin Book and the Latin Reader adapted to it. The editions of Latin Authors may be had with references to either edition of the Grammar, at the option of the instructor.

CONTENTS.

		AGE
Introduction.	Pronunciation. — Quantity. — Accentuation .	1
	Sentences. — Verbs \dots	11
LESSON I.	Parts of Speech. — Nouns	15
II.	Cases	17
III., IV.	Sentences. — Verbs. — First Conjugation	19
v.	First Declension	22
VI.	Subject Nominative. — Agreement of Verbs .	23
VII.	Direct Object	26
VIII., IX.	Questions	28
X., XI.	Certain Forms of the Second Conjugation	
	Appositives. — Genitive with Nouns	30
XII., XIII.	Second Declension	33
XIV.	Adjectives. — First and Second Declension. —	
	Agreement of Adjectives	37
\mathbf{XV} .	Adjectives. — Certain Forms of Sum	39
XVI., XVII.	Adjectives Liber Aeger	40
XVIII.,—XXIV.	Third Declension	
	Dative with Verbs	. 47
	Predicate Nouns	. 51
XXV.		
	Prepositions	
XXVI.	Certain Forms of the Third Conjugation. — Us	
	of Adverbs	. 60
XXVII., XXVIII.	Certain Forms of the Fourth Conjugation	
	Perfect Tense. — Ablative of Means	
XXIX., XXX.	Adjectives of the Third Declension	
	Comparison of Adjectives	. 70
XXXI.	Ablative with Comparatives	. 71
XXXII.	Fourth Declension. — Fifth Declension. — Tim	е 74

LESSON XXXIII.	Numerals. — Accusative of Time and Space.	77
XXXIV.—XXXVI.	Pronouns	81
	Questions—Answers	87
XXXVII.	Agreement of Pronouns	88
XXXVIII.	Present and Imperfect Subjunctive Active,	
	and Present Imperative Active, in Conju-	
	gations I. and II., and in Sum Use of	
	Indicative	91
XXXIX.	Subjunctive of Desire, Command. — Impera-	
	tive	94
XL., XLI.	Present and Imperfect Subjunctive Active,	
	and Present Imperative Active, in Conju-	
	gations III. and IV Sequence of Tenses.	
	—Purpose	97
XLII.	Result	102
XLIII.	Moods in Indirect Clauses	106
XLIV.	Present Infinitive Active.—Use of Infini-	
	tive. — Certain Forms of Possum	109
XLV.	Directions for Reading at Sight. — Exercise	
	in Reading at Sight	112
XLVI., XLVII.	$Sum \dots \dots \dots \dots$	115
	Dative with Adjectives	118
XLVIII L.	First Conjugation. — Indicative Active	120
LI., LII.	First Conjugation. — Active Voice	123
	Two Accusatives — Same Person	126
LIIILV.	First Conjugation. — Indicative Passive. —	
	Separation, Source, Cause	128
LVI., LVII.	First Conjugation. — Subjunctive Passive. —	
	Supine in um	133
LVIII.	First Conjugation.—Passive Voice.—Accusa-	
	tive and Infinitive. — Subject of Infinitive	135
LIX.	Exercise in Reading at Sight	140
LX.	Second Conjugation. — Indicative Active .	141
LXI. — LXIII.	Second Conjugation. — Active Voice	1 43
	Place in Which	147
LXIV., LXV.	Second Conjugation. — Indicative Passive. —	
	Use of Vocative	151
LXVI LXVIII.	Second Conjugation Passive Voice	153

	CONTENTS.	хi
LESSON LXIX.	Exercise in Reading at Sight	160
LXX.	Third Conjugation. — Indicative Active	161
LXXI., LXXII.	Third Conjugation. — Active Voice	163
XXIII. — LXXV.	Third Conjugation. — Passive Voice	169
LXXVI.	Exercise in Reading at Sight	176
LXXVII.	Fourth Conjugation. — Indicative Active .	177
VIII., LXXIX.	Fourth Conjugation. — Active Voice	179
	Ablative of Specification	183
XXLXXXII.	Fourth Conjugation. — Passive Voice	185
	Ablative of Difference	188
	Ablative Absolute	190
LXXXIII.	Exercise in Reading at Sight	193
LXXXIV.	Third Conjugation. — Verbs in io. — Active	
	Voice. — Supine in \bar{u}	194
LXXXV.	Third Conjugation. — Verbs in iō. — Passive	
	Voice. — Conditional Sentences	198
LXXXVI.	Concessive Clauses	202
LXXXVII.	Deponent Verbs Ablative in Special Con-	
	structions	205
LXXXVIII.	Indirect Discourse	209
LXXXIX.	Periphrastic Conjugations. — Exercise in	
	Reading at Sight	214
XCXCV.	Irregular Verbs. — Possum	215
	$Fer\bar{o}$	216

LXXIII LXXV.	Third Conjugation. — Passive Voice 169
LXXVI.	Exercise in Reading at Sight 176
LXXVII.	Fourth Conjugation. — Indicative Active . 17
LXXVIII., LXXIX.	Fourth Conjugation. — Active Voice 179
	Ablative of Specification
LXXX LXXXII.	Fourth Conjugation. — Passive Voice 188
	Ablative of Difference 188
	Ablative Absolute 190
LXXXIII.	Exercise in Reading at Sight 195
LXXXIV.	Third Conjugation. — Verbs in io. — Active
	Voice. — Supine in \tilde{u}
LXXXV.	Third Conjugation. — Verbs in $i\bar{o}$. — Passive
	Voice. — Conditional Sentences 198
LXXXVI.	Concessive Clauses 202
LXXXVII.	Deponent Verbs. — Ablative in Special Con-
	structions
LXXXVIII.	Indirect Discourse 209
LXXXIX.	Periphrastic Conjugations. — Exercise in
	Reading at Sight 214
XC.—XCV.	Irregular Verbs. — $Possum$ 215
	$Fer\bar{o}$
	$Vol\check{o}N\bar{o}l\check{o}M\bar{a}l\check{o}$ Two Accusatives 220
	$Fi\tilde{o}$. — $E\tilde{o}$. — Accusative of Limit. — Place
	from Which
XCVI., XCVII.	Impersonal Verbs.—Two Datives 229
	Accusative and Genitive 232
XCVIII.	Exercise in Reading at Sight 235
XCIX., C.	Gerunds, Gerundives, and Participles 236
Narratives from Caesa	r.—The Helvetii 242
Invasion of Britain	
Suggestions on Exercis	ses in Latin Composition 260
Suggestions to the Lea	rner,
Latin-English Vocabul	
English-Latin Vocabul	
	Rules of Syntax 321
	v



FIRST YEAR'S LATIN COURSE.

INTRODUCTION.

Note. — The teacher will doubtless deem it advisable to begin with Lesson I., page 15, and to use the introduction for reference.

LATIN ALPHABET.

- 1. LATIN GRAMMAR treats of the principles of the Latin language.
- 2. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, with the omission of w.
- 3. Letters are divided according to the position of the vocal organs at the time of utterance into two general classes, vowels and consonants, and these classes are again divided into various subdivisions, as seen in the following

CLASSIFICATION OF LETTERS.

 3 E is a medial vowel between the open a and the close i; o a medial

¹ If the vocal organs are sufficiently open to allow an uninterrupted flow of vocal sound, a vowel is produced, otherwise a consonant; but the least open vowels are scarcely distinguishable from the most open consonants.

² In pronouncing the open vowel *a* as in *father*, the vocal organs are fully open. By gradually contracting them at one point and another we produce in succession the medial vowels, the close vowels, the semivowels, the nasals, the aspirate, the fricatives, and finally the mutes, in pronouncing which the closure of the vocal organs becomes complete.

II. CONSONANTS.1

2.	SEMIVOWELS, sonant ² NASALS, sonant.					GUTTURALS. i or $j = y$ n ³	DENTALS.	LABIALS, $\mathbf{v} = w$ \mathbf{m}
3.	ASPIRATE, surd 2 .				_	h		***
4.	FRICATIVES, comprising	ng:		٠	٠	**		
	1. Liquids, sonant		•				l, r	
	2. Spirants, surd				٠		s	f
5.	MUTES, comprising:						· -	•
	1. Sonant mutes .					g	đ	b
	2. Surd mutes	•		•		c, k, q	t	p

Note. -X = cs, and z = ds, are double consonants, formed by the union of a mute with the spirant s.

4. Diphthongs are formed by the union of two vowels in one syllable.

Note. — The most common diphthongs are ae, oe, uu, and eu. Ei, oi, and ui are rare.

PHONETIC CHANGES.

22. Vowels are often weakened, i.e., are often changed to weaker vowels.

The order of the vowels, from the strongest to the weakest, is as follows:

vowel between the open a and the close u; y was introduced from the Greek.

- ¹ Observe that the consonants are divided:
 - I. According to the organs chiefly employed in their production, into
 - 1. Gutturals—throat letters, also called Palatals.
 - 2. Dentals teeth letters, also called Linguals.
 - 3. Labials lip letters.
- II. According to the MANNER in which they are uttered, into
 - Sonants, or voiced letters.
 Surds, or voiceless letters.
- ² The distinction between a *sonant* and a *surd* will be appreciated by observing the difference between the sonant b and its corresponding surd p in such words as bad, pad. B is vocalized, p is not.
- ⁸ With the sound of n in concord, linger. It occurs before gutturals congruenter, suitably.

a, o, u, e, i. Thus a is changed to o . . . u . . . e . . . i. o to u . . . e . . . i. u to e . . . i. e to i.

Carmen,⁸ carmenis, carminis, a song, of a song; faciō. cōn-faciō, cōn-faciō, I make, I accomplish; factus, īn-factus, īn-fectus, made, not made; teneō, con-teneō, con-tineō, I hold, I contain; tuba, tuba-cen, tubi-cen, a flute, a flute-player.

30. A Guttural—c, g, q, (qu) or h,—before s generally unites with it and forms x:

Ducs, dux, leader; $p\bar{a}cs$, $p\bar{a}x$, peace; $r\bar{e}gs$, $r\bar{e}cs$, $r\bar{e}x$, king; $l\bar{e}gs$, $l\bar{e}cs$, $l\bar{e}x$, law: $coqus\bar{i}$, $cocs\bar{i}$, $cox\bar{i}$, I have cooked; $trahs\bar{i}$, $tracs\bar{i}$, $trax\bar{i}$, I have drawn.

31. $\bf S$ is generally changed to $\bf r$ when it stands between two vowels:

Flōsēs, florēs, flowers; jūsa, jūra, rights; mēnsāsum, mēnsārum, of tables; agrōsum, agrōrum, of fields; esam, eram, I was; esāmus, erāmus, we were.

33. Partial Assimilation. — A consonant is often partially 4 assimilated by a following consonant. Thus before the surd ${\bf s}$ or ${\bf t}$, a sonant ${\bf b}$ or ${\bf g}$ is generally changed to its corresponding surd, ${\bf p}$ or ${\bf c}$:

Scrībsī, scrīpsī, I have written; scrībtus, scrīptus, written; rēgsī, rēcsī, rēxī (30), I have ruled; rēgtus, rēctus, ruled.

¹ The change from a through o to u is usually arrested at u, while a is often changed directly through e to i without passing through o or u. Thus the open a is changed either to the close u through the medial o, as seen on the right side of the following vowel-triangle, or to the close i through the medial e, as seen on the left side:

 $^{^{2}}$ But $u,\,e,\,{\rm and}\,\,i$ differ so slightly in strength that they appear at times to be simply interchanged.

[§] Here e in carmen becomes i in carminis, a in facio becomes i in $e\bar{o}n$ -ficio, etc.

⁴ That is, it is adapted or accommodated to it, but does not become the same letter.

PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.1

I. Roman Method of Pronunciation.²

5. Vowels. — The vowel sounds are the following: —

				Torre							0.
ē ī ō	"	$egin{array}{c} e \ \ddot{\imath} \ & \ddot{o} \end{array}$	"	machine:4 old:	\bar{a}' - $r\bar{\imath}s.^3$ \bar{e}' - $d\bar{\imath}.$ $\bar{\imath}'$ - $r\bar{\imath}.$ \bar{o}' - $r\bar{a}s.$ \bar{u}' - $n\bar{o}.$	e i o	"	$egin{array}{c} e \ i \ o \end{array}$	"	SHORT. Cuba:5 net: cigar: obey: full:	a'-met. re'-get. vi'-det. mo'-net. su'-mus.

- 1. A short vowel in a long syllable is pronounced short: $sunt,^6$ u as in sum, su'-mus. But see 16, note 2.
- 3. I preceded by an accented a, e, o, or y, and followed by another vowel, is a semivowel with the sound of y in yet (7): A- $ch\bar{a}'$ -ia (A- $k\bar{a}'$ - $y\bar{a}$).
- 4. **U** in qu, and generally in gu and su before a vowel, has the sound of w: $qu\bar{\imath}$ (kwē), lin'-gua (lin'- $gw\ddot{a}$), $su\bar{a}'$ -sit (swä'-sit).
- In this country three distinct methods are recognized in the pronunciation of Latin. They are generally known as the *Roman*, the *English*, and the *Continental Methods*. Recent researches have revealed laws of phonetic change of great value in tracing the history of Latin words. Accordingly, whatever method of pronunciation may be adopted for actual use in the class-room, the pupil should sooner or later be made familiar with the leading features of the Roman Method, which is at least an approximation to the ancient pronunciation of the language. The pupil will, of course, at present study only the method adopted in the school.

² Those who adopt the English Method will now turn to page 6; those who adopt the Continental Method to page 8. Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the Continent of Europe has its own method.

³ The Latin vowels marked with the macron "are long in quantity, i.e. in the duration of the sound (16); those not marked are short in quantity; see 16, note 3. Observe that the accent is also marked. For the laws of accentuation, see 17 and 18 in this introduction.

4 Or $ar{e}$ like $ar{a}$ in made, $ar{i}$ like $ar{e}$ in me, and $ar{u}$ like oo in moon.

⁵ The short vowels can be only imperfectly represented by English equivalents. In theory they have the same sounds as the corresponding long vowels, but occupy only half as much time in utterance.

6 Observe the difference between the length or quantity of the vowel and the length or quantity of the syllable. Here the vowel u is short, but the syllable sunt is long; see 16, I. In syllables long irrespective of the length

6. Diphthongs.—In diphthongs each vowel retains its own sound:

ae (for ai) like the English ay (yes): $m\bar{e}n'$ -sae. au like ow in how: cau'-sa.

oe (for oi) like oi in coin: foe'-dus.

7. Consonants. — Most of the consonants are pronounced nearly as in English, but the following require special notice:

c like k in king: $c\bar{e}'$ - $l\bar{e}s$ (kay-lace), $c\bar{\imath}'$ - $v\bar{\imath}$ (kē-wē). g " get: re'-gunt, re'-gis, ge'-nus.

j "y "yet: $j\bar{u}$ '-stum (yoo-stum), ja'-cet.

s " s " son: sa'-cer, so'-ror, A'-si-a.

t " t " time: ti'-mor, $t\bar{o}'$ -tus, $\bar{a}c'$ -ti- \bar{o} . v " w " we: va'-dum, $v\bar{v}'$ - $c\bar{c}$, vi'-ti-um.

8. Syllables. — In dividing words into syllables,

- 1. Make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: $m\bar{o}'$ -re, per-su \bar{a}' - $d\bar{e}$, $m\bar{e}n'$ -sae.
- 2. Join to each vowel as many of the consonants which precede it—one or more—as can be conveniently pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: 4 pa'-ter, pa'-trēs, ge'-ne-rī, do'-mi-nus, men'-sa, bel'-lum. But—
- 3. Compound words must be separated into their component parts, if the first of these parts ends in a consonant: ab'-es, ob- $\bar{\imath}$ -re.⁵

of the vowels contained in them, it is often difficult and sometimes absolutely impossible to determine the *natural quantity* of the vowels; but it is thought advisable to treat vowels as short in all situations where there are not good reasons for believing them to be long.

¹ Combining the sounds of a and i.

² Ei as in veil, eu with the sounds of e and u combined, and oi = oe, occur in a few words: dein, neu'-ter, proin.

 $^{^3}$ There is some uncertainty in regard to the sound of v. Corssen gives it at the beginning of a word the sound of the English v.

⁴ By some grammarians any combination of consonants which can begin either a Latin or a Greek word is always joined to the following VOWel, as o'-mnis, i'-pse. Others, on the contrary, think that the Romans pronounced with each vowel as many of the following consonants as could be readily combined with it.

⁵ Those who adopt the Roman Pronunciation, omitting the English and the Continental Method, will now turn to Lesson I., page 15.

II. English Method of Pronunciation.

- 9. Vowels.—Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds.
- 10. Long Sounds. Vowels have their long English sounds **a** as in *fate*, **e** in *mete*, **i** in *pine*, **o** in *note*, **u** in *tube*, **y** in *type* in the following situations:
 - 1. In final syllables ending in a vowel:—
 Se, si, ser'-vi, ser'-vo, cor'-nu, mi'-sy.
 - 2. In all syllables, before a vowel or diphthong:—
 De'-us, de-o'-rum, de'-ae, di-e'-i, ni'-hi-lum.1
- 3. In penultimate ² syllables before a single consonant, or before a mute followed by a liquid:—

Pa'-ter, pa'-tres, ho-no'-ris, A'-thos, O'-thrys.

4. In unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or before a mute followed by a liquid:

Do-lo'-ris, cor'-po-ri, con'-su-lis, a-gric'-o-la.

1. A unaccented, except before consonants in final syllables (11, 1), has the sound of a final in America: men'-sa, a-cu'-tus, a-ma'-mus.³

2. I and y unaccented, in any syllable except the first and last, generally have the short sound: nob'-i-lis (nob'-e-lis), Am'-y-cus (Am'-e-cus).

- 3. I preceded by an accented a, e, o, or y, and followed by another vowel, is a semivowel with the sound of y in yet: A-cha'-ia (A-ka'-ya), Pom-pe'-ius (Pom-pe'-yus), La-to'-ia (La-to'-ya), Har-py'-ia (Har-py'-ya).
- 4. **U** in qu, and generally in gu and su before a vowel, has the sound of w: qui (kwi), qua; lin'-gua (lin'-gwa); sua'-de-o (swa'-de-o).
- 11. SHORT SOUNDS. Vowels have their short English sounds **a** as in *fat*, **e** in *met*, **i** in *pin*, **o** in *not*, **u** in *tub*, **y** in *myth* in the following situations: —

¹ In these rules no account is taken of the aspirate h: hence the first i in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel; for the same reason, ch, ph, and th are treated as single mutes; thus th in Athos and Othrys.

² Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

⁸ Some give the same gound to a final in

⁸ Some give the same sound to a final in monosyllables: da, qua; while others give it the long sound, according to 10, 1.

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant: --

A'-mat, a'-met, rex'-it, sol, con'-sul, Te'-thys; except post, es final, and os final in plural cases: res, di'-es, hos, a'-gros.

2. In all syllables before x, or any two consonants except a mute followed by a liquid (10, 3 and 4):—

Rex'-it, bel'-lum, rex-e'-runt, bel-lo'-rum.

3. In all accented syllables, not penultimate, before one or more consonants:—

Dom'-i-nus, pat'-ri-bus. But -

- 1) **A**, **e**, or **o** before a single consonant (or a mute and a liquid), followed by e, i, or y before another vowel, has the long sound: a'-ci-es, a'-ci-es, a'-cr-i-a, me'-re-o, do'-ce-o.
- 2) **U**, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant or a mute and a liquid, except *bl*, has the long sound: Pu'-ni-cus, sa-lu'-bri-tas.
- 12. DIPHTHONGS. Diphthongs are pronounced as follows:

 Ae like e: Cae'-sar, Daed'-a-lus.\(^1\) | Au as in author: au'-rum.

 Oe like e: Oe'-ta, Oed'-i-pus.\(^1\) | Eu\(^2\) as in neuter: neu'-ter.
- 13. Consonants. The consonants are pronounced in general as in English. Thus:—
- I. C and G are soft (like s and j) before e, i, y, ae, and oe, and hard in other situations 3: ce'-do (se'-do), ci'-vis, Cy'-rus, cae'-do, coe'-pi, a'-ge (a'-je), a'-gi; ca'-do (ka'-do), co'-go, cum, Ga'-des.
- II. S, T, and X are generally pronounced as in the English words son, time, expect: sa'-cer, ti'-mor, rex'-i (rek'-si). But—
- 1. S, T, and X are aspirated before i preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, -s and t taking the sound of sh, and x that of ksh: Al'-si-um (Al'-sh-um), ar'-ti-um (ar'-sh-um), anx'-i-us (ank'-sh-un).

¹ The diphthong has the long sound in Cae'-sar and Oe'-ta, according to 10, 3, but the short sound in Daed'-a-lus (Ded'-a-lus) and Oed'-i-pus (Ed'-i-pus), according to 11, 3, as e would be thus pronounced in the same situations.

² Ei and oi are seldom diphthongs, but when so used they are pronounced as in height, coin: hei, proin. Ui, as a diphthong, with the long sound of i, occurs in cui, hui, huic.

⁸ C has the sound of sh —

^{1.} Before i preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel: so'-ci-us (so'-she-us);

^{2.} Before eu and yo preceded by an accented syllable: ca-du'-ce-us (ca-du'-she-us), Sto'-y-on (Sish'-y-on).

- 2. S is pronounced like z—
- 1) At the end of a word, after e, ae, au, b, m, n, r: spes, praes, laus, urbs, hi'-ems, mons, pars;
- 2) In a few words after the analogy of the corresponding English words: Cae'-sar, Caesar; cau'-sa, cause; mu'-sa, muse; mi'-ser, miser, miserable, etc.
 - 3. X at the beginning of a word has the sound of z: Xan'-thus.
 - 14. Syllables. In dividing words into syllables —
- 1. Make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: mo'-re, per-sua'-de, men'-sae.
- 2. Distribute the consonants so as to give the proper sound to each vowel and diphthong, as determined by previous rules (10–12): pa'-ter, pa'-tres, a-gro'-rum, au-di'-vi, gen'-e-ri, dom'-i-nus.

III. Continental Method of Pronunciation.

5. Vowels.—The vowel sounds are the following:—

				_							
ē ī ō	"	$e \\ i \\ ilde{o}$	in "	prey:2 machine:2 old:	$ar{a}' - ris.^1$ $ar{e}' - dar{\imath}.$ $ar{i}' - rar{\imath}.$ $ar{o}' - rar{a}s.$ $ar{u}' - nar{o},$	e i o	"	$i \\ o$	"	SHORT. Cuba:3 net: cigar: obey: full:	a'-met. re'-get. vi'-det. mo'-net. su'-mus.

- 1. A short vowel in a long syllable is pronounced short: sunt, 4u as in sum, su'-mus. But see 16, note 2.
- 6. Diphthongs. In diphthongs each vowel retains its own sound: —

ae (for ai) like the English ay (yes): $m\bar{e}n'$ -sae.⁵ au like aw in how: cau'-sa. oe (for ai) like ai in ai coin: ai

 $^{^1}$ The Latin vowels marked with the macron $\bar{\ }$ are long in quantity, i.e. in the duration of the sound (16); those not marked are short in quantity; see 16, note 3.

² Or \tilde{e} like \tilde{a} in made, \tilde{i} like \tilde{e} in me, and \tilde{u} like oo in moon.

 $^{^3}$ The sounds of the vowels and diphthongs are the same as in the Roman method; see pages 4 and 5.

⁴ See foot-note 6, page 4.

⁶ See foot-note 2, page 5.

⁵ See foot-note 1, page 5.

- 13. Consonants. The consonants are pronounced in general as in English; see 13, I., II. 1, 2, page 7.
- 14. Syllables.—In dividing words into syllables make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: $m\bar{o}'$ -re, per-su \bar{a}' -d \bar{e} , $m\bar{e}n'$ -sae.

QUANTITY.

- 16. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.²
 - I. Long. A syllable is long in quantity —
 - 1. If it contains a diphthong or a long vowel: haec, res.3
- 2. If its vowel is followed by x or z or any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid: dux, $r\bar{e}x$, sunt.⁵
- II. Short.—A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel, by a diphthong, or by the aspirate $h: di-\bar{e}s$, vi-ae, ni'-hil.⁶

¹ Join to each vowel as many of the consonants which precede it—one or more—as can be conveniently pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: pa'-ter, pa'-trēs, ge'-ne-rī, do'-mi-nus, mēn'-sa, bel'-lum. But compound words must be separated into their component parts, if the first of these parts ends in a consonant: ab'-es, ob-ī'-re.

² Common, i.e. sometimes long and sometimes short.

⁸ See note 3, below.

⁴ That is, in the order here given, with the mute before the liquid; if the liquid precedes, the syllable is long.

⁵ Observe that the vowel in such syllables may be either long or short. Thus it is long in $rex{e}$, but short in dux and sunt.

⁶ By referring to pages 4 and 8, it will be seen, that, in the Roman Method and in the Continental, quantity and sound coincide with each other: a vowel long in quantity is long in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is short in sound. But, by referring to 10 and 11, it will be seen, that, in the English Method, the quantity of a vowel does not at all affect its sound, except in determining the accent (18). Hence, in this method, a vowel long in quantity is often short in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is often long in sound. Thus in $r\bar{e}x$ and $s\bar{o}l$, the vowels are long in quantity; but by 11, 1, they have the short English sounds: while in ave, mare, the vowels are all short in quantity; but by 10, 1 and 3, they all have the long English sounds. Hence, in pronouncing according to the English Method, determine the place of the accent by the quantity, according to

III. Common. — A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally short, is followed by a mute and a liquid: a-grī.

Note 1.—Vowels are also in quantity either long, short, or common; but the quantity of the vowel does not always coincide with the quantity of the syllable.²

Note 2. — Vowels are long before ns, nf, gn, and gm; $c\bar{o}n'$ -sul, $\bar{i}nf\bar{e}'$ - $l\bar{i}x$, $r\bar{e}g'$ -num, $\bar{a}gmen$.

Note 3. — The signs $\bar{\ }$, $\bar{\ }$ are used to mark the quantity of vowels, the first denoting that the vowel over which it is placed is *long*, the second that it is *common*, i.e. sometimes long and sometimes short: $a-m\bar{a}'-b\bar{o}$. All vowels not marked are to be treated as short.³

ACCENTUATION.

- 17. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first: $m\bar{e}n'$ -sa.
- 18. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the *Penult*, if that is long in quantity; otherwise on the *Antepenult*: ho-nō'-ris, cōn'-su-lis.
- 3. A secondary or subordinate accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third: $mo'-nu-\bar{e}'-runt$, $mo'-nu-e-r\bar{u}'-mus$, $\bar{i}n-stau'-r\bar{a}-v\bar{e}'runt$.

^{18,} and then determine the sounds of the letters irrespective of quantity, according to 10-13.

A vowel is said to be naturally short, when it is short in its own nature; i.e. in itself, without reference to its position.

² Thus in long syllables the vowels may be either long or short, as in $r\bar{e}x$, dux, sunt (see foot-note 6, p. 4). But in short syllables the vowels are also short.

⁸ See p. 4, foot-note 6. In many works short vowels are marked with the sign $\check{}$: $r\check{e}gis$.

 $^{^{4}}$ The penult is the last syllable but one; the antepenult, the last but two.

⁵ Thus the quantity of the *syllable*, not of the *vowel*, determines the place of the accent: *regen'-tis*, accented on the penult, because that *syllable* is *long*, though its *vowel* is *short*; see 16, I., 2.

⁶ In the subsequent pages, the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules.

⁷ In the English Method divide thus: mon'-u-e'-runt, mon-u-e-ra'-mus.

SENTENCES. - VERBS.

- 346. A sentence is a combination of words expressing either a single thought or two or more thoughts.
 - 347. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses a single thought: Deus mundum aedificavit, God made (built) the world. Cic.
- 348. A Complex Sentence expresses one leading thought with one or more dependent thoughts:

Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amīcos, so long as you shall be prosperous, you will number many friends. 1 Ovid.

349. A Compound Sentence expresses two or more independent thoughts:

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, the sun hastens to its setting and the mountains are shaded. Verg.

- 356. The Simple Sentence in its most simple form consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:—
 - 1. The Subject, or that of which it speaks;
 - 2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject: Cluilius moritur, Cluilius dies.² Liv.

Note. — In Latin, both subject and predicate may be contained or implied in a single word, if that word is a verb:

Amās,3 thou lovest. Amat,3 he loves.

357. The SIMPLE SENTENCE in its MOST EXPANDED FORM consists of these same parts with their various modifiers:

¹ In this example two simple sentences—(1) 'you will be prosperous,' and (2) 'you will number many friends'—are so united that the first only specifies the time of the second: You will number many friends so long as you shall be prosperous. The part of the complex sentence which makes complete sense of itself—multōs numerābis amīcōs—is called the Principal or Independent Clause; and the part which is dependent upon it—dōnec erīs fēlīx—is called the Subordinate or Dependent Clause.

² Here Cluilius is the subject, and moritur the predicate.

³ The ending s shows that the subject is of the second person singular, **THOU**, while t shows that it is of the third person singular, **HE**.

In hīs castrīs Cluīlius, Albānus rēx, moritur, Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.1 Liv.

- 192. Verbs in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: est, he is; dormit, he is sleeping; legit, he reads.
 - 193. Verbs comprise two principal classes:—
- I. TRANSITIVE VERBS admit a direct object of the action: servum verberat, he beats the slave.2
- II. Intransitive Verbs do not admit such an object: puer currit, the boy runs.2
 - 194. Verbs have Voice, Mood, Tense, Number and Person.
 - 195. There are two voices:
- I. The Active Voice³ represents the subject as acting or Existing: pater filium amat, the father loves his son; est, he is.
- II. The Passive Voice represents the subject as acted UPON by some other person or thing: fīlius ā patre amātur, the son is loved by his father.
 - 196. There are three moods: 4__
- I. The Indicative Mood either asserts something as a fact or inquires after the fact:

Legit, HE IS READING. Legitne, IS HE READING? Servius rēgnāvit, Servius REIGNED. Quis ego sum, who am I?

¹ Here Cluilius, Albānus rēx, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form: in his castris moritur, the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

² Here servum, 'the slave,' is the object of the action; beats (what?) the slave. The object thus completes the meaning of the verb. He beats is incomplete in sense, but the boy runs is complete, and accordingly does not admit an object.

³ Voice shows whether the subject acts (Active Voice), or is acted upon (Passive Voice). Thus, with the Active Voice, 'the father loves his son,' the subject, father, is the one who performs the action, loves, while with the Passive Voice, 'the son is loved by the father,' the subject, son, merely receives the action, is acted upon, is loved.

⁴ Mood, or Mode, means manner, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several moods.

II. The Subjunctive Mood expresses not an actual fact, but a possibility or conception.

Amemus patriam, LET US LOVE our country. Sint beātī, MAY THEY BE happy. Quaerat quispiam, some one MAY INQUIRE.

III. The Imperative Mood expresses a command or an entreaty:

Jūstitiam cole, practise justice. Tū nē cēde malīs, do not yield to misfortunes.

- 197. There are six tenses:1
- I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION: -
- 1. Present: amō, I love, I am loving.
- 2. Imperfect: amābam, I was loving, I loved.
- 3. Future: amābō, I shall love, I will love.
- II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION:
- 1. Perfect: amāvī, I have loved, I loved.
- 2. Pluperfect: amāveram, I had loved.
- 3. Future Perfect: amāverō, I shall have loved.
- 198. Tenses are also distinguished as—
 - I. PRINCIPAL OF PRIMARY TENSES:
- 1. Present: amō, I love.
- 2. Present Perfect: amāvī, I have loved.
- 3. Future: amābō, I shall love.
- 4. Future Perfect: amāverō, I shall have loved.
- II. HISTORICAL OF SECONDARY TENSES:
- 1. Imperfect: amābam, I was loving.
- 2. Historical Perfect: amāvī, I loved.
- 3. Pluperfect: amāveram, I had loved.
- 199. In *Verbs*, as in Nouns (44), there are two numbers, Singular and Plural, and three persons, First, Second, and Third.

Note. — The various verbal forms which have voice, mood, tense number, and person, make up the *finite verb*.

¹ Tense means time. The tense of a verb shows the time of the action

- 200. Among verbal forms are included the following verbal nouns and adjectives:
- I. The Infinitive is a verbal noun. It is sometimes best translated by the English *Infinitive*, sometimes by the *verbal noun in* Ing, and sometimes by the *Indicative*:

 $Ex\bar{i}re$ ex urbe volö, I wish to go out of the city. Gestiö $sc\bar{i}re$ omnia, I long to know all things. Hace $sc\bar{i}re$ juvat, to know these things affords pleasure.

II. The GERUND gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. It corresponds to the English verbal noun in ING:

Amandī, of Loving. Amandī causā, for the sake of Loving. Ars vīvendī, the art of Living. Ad discendum propēnsus, inclined to learn, of to learning.

III. The Supine gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension.² It has a form in \mathbf{um} and a form in $\mathbf{\bar{u}}$:

 $Am\bar{a}tum$, to love, for loving. $Am\bar{a}t\bar{u}$, to be loved, for loving, in loving. Auxilium postul $\bar{a}tum$ vēnit, he came to ask aid. Difficile $dict\bar{u}$ est, it is difficult to tell.

IV. The Participle in Latin, as in English, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective. It is sometimes best translated by the English *Participle* or *Infinitive*, and sometimes by a *Clause*:

Amāns, Loving. Amātūrus, About to Love. Amātus, Loved. Amandus, deserving to be loved. Platŏ scrībēns mortuus est, Plato died while writing, or while he was writing.

Note. — A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and the Future, $am\bar{a}ns$, $am\bar{a}t\bar{u}rus$; and two in the Passive, the Perfect and the Gerundive, $am\bar{a}tus$, amandus.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations.

¹ See 32, 51.

LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

LESSON I.

PARTS OF SPEECH .-- NOUNS.

1. Lesson from the Grammar.1

38. In Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*, viz.: Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.²

Nouns.

- 39. A Noun or Substantive is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: Cicero, Cicero; Rōma, Rome; domus, house.
- 1. A PROPER NOUN is a proper name, as of a person or place: $Cicer\ddot{o}$; $R\ddot{o}ma$.
- 2. A COMMON NOUN is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: vir, man; equus, horse.
 - 40. Nouns have Gender, Number, Person, and Case.

¹ The lessons are from the author's Latin Grammar, and the numerals at the side of the page, 38, 39, etc., designate articles in that work. It is advised that the Introduction be used mainly for reference, but that such parts of it be learned from time to time as the interests of the class may require. For pronunciation the pupil must at first depend upon his teacher, but he will soon be able to profit by the rules contained in the Introduction.

 $^{^{2}}$ In general, the use of the Parts of Speech is the same in Latin as in English.

I. Gender.

41. There are three genders: 1 Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

Note. — In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

- 42. General Rules for Gender.
- I. Masculines: —
- 1. Names of Males; Cicero; vir, man; rex, king.
- 2. Names of Rivers, Winds, and Months: Rhēnus, Rhine; Notus, south wind; Mārtius, March.

II. Feminines:

- 1. Names of Females: mulier, woman; leaena, lioness.
- 2. Names of Countries, Towns, Islands, and Trees: Graecia. Greece; $R\bar{o}ma$, Rome; $D\bar{e}los$, Delos; pirus, pear-tree.

II. PERSON AND NUMBER.

- 44. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one; the plural, more than one.
 - 2. In this exercise give the Gender and Number of each noun, and tell whether it is Common or Proper.
- 1. Caesar (Caesar), Alexander (Alexander), Graecia (Greece). 2. Mātrēs (mothers), māter (a mother), Hispānia (Spain). 3. Pater (a father), patrēs (fathers), Rhēnus (the river Rhine). 4. Puer (a boy), puerī (boys), puella (a girl), puellae (girls). 5. Sicilia (Sicily), Sparta (the city Sparta), mīles (a soldier), mīlitēs (soldiers).

¹ In English, gender denotes sex. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote males; feminine nouns, females; and neuter nouns, objects which are neither male nor female. In Latin, however, this natural distinction of gender is applied only to the names of males and females; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction, according to grammatical rules.

LESSON II.

NOUNS. - CASES.

3. Lessons from the Grammar.

45. The Latin has six cases:1—

Names. English Equivalents.

Nominative, Nominative.

Genitive, Possessive, or Objective with of.

Dative, Objective with to or for.

Accusative, Objective.

Vocative, Nominative Independent.

Ablative, Objective with from, with, by, in.

Thus in general the English cases are represented in Latin as follows:

1. The Nominative, by the Nominative in Latin:

The queen is praised. Rēgīna laudātur.2

2. The Possessive and the Objective with of, by the Genitive in Latin:

THE QUEEN'S daughter is praised. Filia $r\bar{e}g\bar{i}nae$ laudātur.³
The daughter of the Queen is praised. Filia $r\bar{e}g\bar{i}nae$ laudātur.

3. The Objective with to or for, by the Dative in Latin; the Objective without a preposition, by the Accusative:

They give a BOOK TO THE QUEEN. Reginae librum donant.4

¹ The case of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words: as, John's book. Here the possessive case shows that John sustains to the book the relation of possessor.

² Observe that the English words to be illustrated are printed in SMALL CAPITALS and the corresponding Latin in *Italics*. Queen is in the *Nominative*, and is the subject of the verb is praised, and regina, the corresponding word in the Latin, is also in the *Nominative* and is the subject of the Latin verb laudātur. The Latin has no article; accordingly regina may mean a queen, the queen, or simply queen.

^{*} Here daughter, the subject of the English sentence, and filia, the subject of the Latin sentence, are both in the Nominative, but the possessive queen's, or its equivalent, of the queen, becomes in the Latin reginae, the Genitive of regina.

⁴ Book, the object of give, is in the Objective case, and the correspond-

4. The Nominative Independent in an address, by the Vocative in Latin:

They praise you, O QUEEN. Tē, rēgīna, laudant.1

5. The Objective with from, with, by, in, by the Ablative in Latin:

They are fortifying the city with a wall. Urbem $vall\bar{o}$ muniunt.² They are walking in the garden. In hort \bar{o} ambulant.

Note 1. The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called the $Oblique\ Cases.$

Note 2. The Latin has also a few remnants of another case, called the Locative, denoting the place in which.

- 4. In this exercise give the Gender, Number, and Case of each Noun, and tell whether it is Common or Proper.
- 1. Rēx (the king) laudātur (is praised). 2. Fīlius (the son) rēgis (of the king) laudātur (is praised). 3. Fīliī (the sons) rēgis (of the king) laudantur (are praised). 4. Fīliī (the sons) rēgum (of kings) laudantur (are praised). 5. Rēx (the king) fīliam (his ³ daughter) amat (loves). 6. Rēx (the king) fīliās (his daughters) amat (loves). 7. Caesar (Caesar) mīlitēs (the soldiers) laudat (praises). 8. Mīlitēs (the soldiers) laudantur (are praised).

ing Latin, librum, the object of the Latin verb donant, is in the Accusative, but the words to the queen are rendered by $r\bar{e}ginae$, the Dative of $r\bar{e}gina$. Observe the order of the words:

ENGLISH ORDER: They give a book to the queen.

LATIN ORDER: To the queen a book they give.

¹ O queen is rendered by the Vocative $r\bar{e}g\bar{n}a$; and you, the object of praise, by the Accusative $t\bar{e}$, the object of laudant. Here again observe the order of the words.

² With a wall is rendered by the Ablative vallō, but in the garden by the Ablative with in: in hortō. Observe the order of the words:

ENGLISH ORDER: They are fortifying the city with a wall.

LATIN ORDER: The city with a wall they are fortifying.

ENGLISH ORDER: They are walking in the garden.

LATIN ORDER: In the garden they are walking.

Observe that in all these examples the verb in Latin stands at the end of the sentence.

³ In Latin the possessive pronouns, meaning his, her, their, when not emphatic, are seldom expressed if they can be supplied from the context.

LESSON III.

SENTENCES. — VERBS. — CERTAIN FORMS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

5. Lesson from the Grammar.

356. Every Sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:—

- 1. The Subject, or that of which it speaks;
- 2. The Predicate, or that which is said of the subject: Cluilius moritur, Cluilius dies. Liv.

Note. — In Latin, both subject and predicate may be contained or implied in a single word, if that word is a verb:

Amās,2 thou lovest. Amat,2 he loves.

- 201. Regular verbs³ are conjugated in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations.
- 6. In Verbs of the First Conjugation, the Third Person in the singular and plural of the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative mood has the following—

ENDINGS.

PRESENT		IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
Singular,	at,	ābat,	ābit.
Plural,	ant,	ābant,	ābunt.

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Pres. amat, he loves; 4
Imp. amabat, he was loving; 5
Fut. amabit, he will love;

amant, they love. amabant, they were loving.5 amabunt, they will love.6

- ¹ Cluilius is the subject, and moritur the predicate.
- ² The ending s shows that the subject is of the second person singular, **THOU**, while t shows that it is of the third person singular, **HE**.
 - 3 For verbs, mood, tense, number, and person, see pages 12 and 13.
- ⁴ The subject of each of these verbs may be, in English, either he, she, or it: amat, he loves, she loves, or it loves. The suffix, t, shows the number and person of the subject, but not its gender.
 - ⁵ Or, he loved; plural, they loved. See page 13, 197.
- ⁶ Each of these Latin forms, amat, amant, etc., consists of two distinct elements—(1) the stem, which gives the general meaning of the verb;

7. In English, the tenses, numbers, and persons of verbs are indicated by certain words or signs; as,

PRESENT. IMPERFECT. FUTURE.

He loves, he was loving, he will love.

They love, they were loving, they will love.

In Latin, however, no such signs are used; but their place is supplied by the endings of the verb. Hence, in translating English into Latin, omit these signs, and express the tense, number, and person of the verb by the proper endings:

PRESENT. IMPERFECT. FUTURE.
Eng. He loves, he was loving, he will love,
Lat. Amat, amābat, amābit.

LESSON IV.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION. — EXERCISES.

8. Vocabulary.1

Ambulat, he walks, he is walking.²
Arat, he ploughs, he is ploughing.
Dēlīberat, he deliberates, he is deliberating.
Equitat, he rides, he is riding.
Lacrimat, he weeps, he is weeping.
Nāvigat, he sails, he is sailing.
Rēgnat, he reigns, he is reigning.

and (2) the suffix, added to the stem, to designate tense, number, and person. Thus in ama-t ama-nt

amā-bat amā-bant amā-bit amā-bunt

the stem is $am\bar{a}$, and the suffixes are t, nt, bat, bant, bit, bunt; but as in some verbal forms the final vowel of the stem has become inseparably united with the suffix, it is impossible to keep the two elements of the word distinct. We accordingly give the endings produced by the union of this final vowel with the suffix, as above, at, ant, etc.

The final vowel of the stem is called the stem characteristic.

1 It is recommended that the Vocabularies be so carefully and accurately learned that the pupil shall be able to give with promptness either the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English.

² Or, she walks, etc.

- 9. In this exercise, first pronounce the several sentences with care, then give the Tense, Number, and Person of each Verb, and finally translate the whole into English.
- Rēgnat,¹ rēgnant.
 Dēlīberābat, dēlīberābant.
 Lacrimābit, lacrimābunt.
 Ambulant, arant, equitant.
 Equitat, equitābat, equitābit.
 Nāvigat, nāvigābat, nāvigābunt.
 Ambulat, ambulābunt, ambulābat.
 Rēgnant, rēgnābant.
 Nāvigant, ambulābit, equitābant.

10. Translate into Latin.

1. He was reigning, they will reign, she will reign.² 2. They are walking, he will walk, they were walking. 3. She is weeping, they will weep, he was weeping. 4. They will ride, he will sail. 5. He is deliberating, they will deliberate. 6. He was ploughing, they will plough. 7. They were ploughing, he will plough. 8. They were sailing, they are deliberating.

Again, what is the meaning of $\bar{a}bat$, $\bar{a}bant$, in $d\bar{e}l\bar{i}ber\bar{a}bat$, $d\bar{e}l\bar{i}ber\bar{a}bant$, and of $\bar{a}bit$, $\bar{a}bunt$, in $lacrim\bar{a}bit$, $lacrim\bar{a}bunt$? What do these endings tell you about the subjects of these verbs? What about their tense? What about the time of each action? The endings $\bar{a}bat$ and $\bar{a}bant$ assure you that the action of the verb was taking place at some past time; $\bar{a}bit$ and $\bar{a}bunt$ that it will be taking place or will take place at some future time.

In these exercises you may use at pleasure either he or she as subject, if the sense permits: he reigns, he is reigning, or she reigns, she is reigning. You should, however, accustom yourself to think of all the possible meanings of a Latin word, or of a Latin sentence, before you attempt to translate it. This habit, if early formed, will be of great value to you in your subsequent work.

Observe that the English pronouns, he, she, it, they, are not to be rendered by separate Latin words, as the Latin verb contains a pronominal subject in itself. Hence, 'he reigns,' rēgnat; 'they reign,' rēgnant.

¹ In preparing this exercise, notice carefully the endings of the words; even a Roman could not understand this Latin without attending to these endings. What, then, is the meaning of the endings at, ant, in rēgnat, rēgnant? They show that in the first the subject, or agent, of the action is in the third person singular, he, she, or it; and, in the second, in the third person plural, they. But these endings also show that the verbs are in the present tense. How does that fact help you to understand the meaning? It tells you that the action is now taking place: He is reigning.

LESSON V.

NOUNS. - CASES. - FIRST DECLENSION.

11. Lesson from the Grammar.

46. Declensions. — The process by which the several cases of a word are formed is called Declension. It consists in the addition of certain suffixes to one common base called the stem.¹ In Latin there are five declensions.

FIRST DECLENSION. — A NOUNS.

48. Nouns of the first declension end in a and ē—feminine; ās and ēs—masculine.²
Nouns in α are declined as follows:

Example.	SINGULAR.	
Nom. mēnsa.	MEANING.	CASE-ENDING. 4
	a table,8	\mathbf{a}
Gen. mēnsae,	of a table,	ae
Dat. mēnsae,	to, for a table,	ae
Acc. mēnsam,	a table,	am
Voc. mēnsa,	O table,	a
Abl. mēnsā,	from, with, by a table,	ā
37	PLURAL.	
Nom. mēnsae,	tables,	ae
Gen. mēnsārum,	of tables,	ārum
Dat. mēnsīs,	to, for tables,	īs
Acc. mēnsās,	tables,	
Voc. mënsae,	. ,	ās
Abl. mēnsīs,	O tables,	ae
aros. mensis,	from, with, by tables.	īs

¹ Thus each case-form contains the stem, which gives the general meaning of the word, and the case-sutfix, which shows its relation to some other word. In $r\bar{e}g$ -is, 'of a king,' the general idea, king, is denoted by the stem, $r\bar{e}g$; the relation of, by the suffix is. When the stem ends in a vowel, the case-sutfix is seen only in combination with that vowel. The ending thus produced is called a case-ending, and the final vowel of the stem is called the stem characteristic or simply the characteristic.

² That is, nouns of this declension in a and \bar{e} are feminine, and those in $\bar{a}s$ and $\bar{e}s$ are masculine, unless their gender is determined by their signification according to the General Rules: see page 16, 42.

³ Mēnsa may be translated a table, table, or the table.

⁴ These case-endings should be carefully studied and compared, as

- 1. Stem. In nouns of the first declension, the stem ends in a.1
- 2. In the Paradigm, observe that the stem is $m\bar{e}ns\bar{a}_1^1$ and that the several cases are distinguished by their case-endings.²
 - 3. Examples for Practice. Like mēnsa decline: —

Āla, wing; aqua, water; causa, cause; fortūna, fortune.

4. Locative.—Names of towns and a very few other words have a Locative Singular in ae, denoting the place in which (p. 18, note 2): $R\bar{o}mae$, at Rome; $m\bar{\imath}litiae$, in war.

LESSON VI.

NOUNS.—FIRST DECLENSION.—NOMINATIVE CASE.— RULES III. AND XXXVI.

12. Examine carefully the following examples.

1. Rēgnat,	He, she, or it reigns.
2. Numa rēgnat,	$Numa\ reigns.^4$
3. Rēgnat,	$He\ reigns.$
4. Victoria regnat,	Victoria reigns.
5. Rēgnat,	She reigns.
6. Rēginae rēgnant,	Queens reign.
7. Régnant.	They reign.4

they will serve as a practical guide to the learner in distinguishing the different cases and in ascertaining the meaning of words.

1 Remember that the final vowel of the *stem* forms a part of the *case-ending*. See page 22, foot-note, 1.

² Observe also (1) that the *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike, (2) that the *Dative* and *Ablative* plural are alike, and (3) that the *Genitive* and *Dative* singular and the *Nominative* and *Vocative* plural are all alike.

8 This is the full meaning of $r\bar{e}gnat$ when there is nothing in the context to restrict it, but take notice that in the third example it is rendered he reigns, because we make it refer to Numa, the king, while in the fifth example it is rendered she reigns, because we make it refer to Victōria.

4 Observe (1) that $r\bar{e}gnant$, 'they reign,' differs from $r\bar{e}gnat$, 'he, she, or itreigns,' only in having nt, meaning they, as its ending, while $r\bar{e}gnat$ has simply t, meaning he, she, it; and (2) that, though the forms of the verb thus contain a pronoun, yet a substantive may at any time be introduced as subject, and that then the pronoun is not translated. Thus $r\bar{e}gnat$, 'he, she, or it reigns,' but Numa $r\bar{e}gnat$, 'Numa reigns' (not 'Numa he reigns'), Victoria $r\bar{e}gnat$, 'Victoria reigns,' $r\bar{e}gnant$, 'they reign,' but $r\bar{e}ginae$ $r\bar{e}gnant$, 'queens reign.'

Note 1. — Observe (1) that in the first, third, fifth, and seventh examples the subjects are pronouns implied in the endings at, ant, or, more strictly, t, nt, he, she, it, they, and (2) that in the second example the subject is Numa, in the fourth $V\bar{\iota}ct\bar{o}ria$, and in the sixth $r\bar{e}g\bar{\iota}nae$, and that these three subjects are all in the Nominative case. This is in accordance with general Latin usage, 1 expressed in the following

RULE III. - Subject Nominative.

368. The subject of a finite verb 2 is put in the Nominative.

Note 2. — Observe that in the examples at the head of this lesson the verb is in the singular if the subject is singular, and in the plural if the subject is plural. Thus, in the second example, the singular verb, $r\bar{e}gnat$, is used, because the subject, Numa, is singular, while in the sixth example the plural verb, $r\bar{e}gnant$, is used, because the subject, $r\bar{e}g\bar{n}nae$, is plural. Observe also that these verbs are in the third person, because their subjects, Numa and $r\bar{e}g\bar{n}nae$, are in the third person.³ This is in accordance with general Latin usage, expressed in the following

RULE XXXVI. - Agreement of Verb with Subject.

460. A finite verb agrees with its subject in NUMBER and PERSON.

13. Vocabulary.

Agricola, ae, 4 m.5 Incola, ae, m. or f.

husbandman.6
inhabitant.

¹ English usage is the same.

- ² That is, Latin writers always put a noun or pronoun in the Nominative case when they wish to use it as the subject of a finite verb, i.e. of any part of the verb except the Infinitive. This Rule is a simple statement of that fact.
- ³ See page 13, 199. If the subject was a pronoun of the *first* or of the *second* person, the verb would be in the *first* or the *second* person; as we shall see when we take up those parts of the verb.
- ⁴ The ending *ae* is the case-ending of the Genitive: *agricola*; Genitive, *agricolae*.
- ⁵ Gender is indicated in the vocabularies by m for masculine, f. for feminine, and n. for neuter.
- ⁶ In learning Latin it is not enough to find English equivalents for Latin words, the pupil must early learn to see the meaning in the Latin itself, without even thinking of the English. The Latin nouns in this

Nauta, ae, m. sailor, seaman.

Poēta, ae, m. poet.

Puella, ae, f. girl, maiden.
Pugnat, he is fighting.

Rēgīna, ae, f. queen.

Vīctoria, ae, f. Victoria, queen of England.

14. Give the Gender, Number, Person, and Case of each Noun, and the Tense, Number, and Person of each Verb, and translate the whole into English.

1. Puella ¹ lacrimat. 2. Puellae ¹ lacrimant. 3. Agricola arābat. 4. Agricolae arābant. 5. Poēta equitābit. 6. Puellae ambulābunt. 7. Vīctōria rēgnat. 8. Rēgnābit. ² 9. Rēgnābat. 10. Vīctōria dēlīberat. 11. Incolae dēlīberant. 12. Nauta nāvigābat. 13. Nautae navigābunt. 14. Incolae dēlīberābunt. 15. Nautae pūgnābant. 16. Nautae nāvigant. 17. Poētae nāvigābunt.

15. Translate into Latin.

1. Victoria was reigning. 2. She is reigning. 3. The sinhabitants were deliberating. 4. They will deliberate. 5. The sgirls are riding. 6. They will ride. 7. The sailors were walking. 8. They are walking. 9. The poet was sailing. 10. He will walk. 11. The husbandman is ploughing. 12. Husbandmen plough. 13. The poets are deliberating. 14. The queen will reign. 15. Queens reign.

vocabulary, for instance, must represent to him not words, but living persons. Agricola should suggest to him, not the English word husbandman, but the husbandman himself, not the name, but the man.

¹ As the Latin has no article, a noun may, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated (1) without the article: as, puella, girl; puellae, girls; (2) with the indefinite article a or an: as, puella, a girl; (3) with the definite article the: as, puella, the girl.

² See page 23, foot-note, 3.

³ The pupil will remember that the English articles, a, an, and the, are not to be rendered into Latin at all.

LESSON VII.

VERBS.—SUBJECT.—DIRECT OBJECT.—RULE V.

16. Examine carefully the following examples.

1. Rēgīna laudat.

The queen praises.

2. Rēgīna puellam laudat.

The queen praises the girl.

3. Puella rēgīnam laudat.

The girl praises THE QUEEN.

Note 1.—In the example $r\bar{e}g\bar{\imath}na$ laudat, "the queen praises," the thought is not entirely complete, as we are not told what the queen praises, but in the example $r\bar{e}g\bar{\imath}na$ puellam laudat, "the queen praises (what?) the girl," the sense is complete. The noun which thus completes the meaning of a verb is called the *Direct Object*.

Note 2.—Observe that in English the object follows the verb: thus in the examples above, the objects, the girl and the queen, follow the verb, praises; but in Latin the object usually precedes the verb; thus puellam and $r\bar{e}g\bar{i}nam$ precede the verb laudat.

Note 3.—Again compare the second and third examples. Observe that laudat is common to both, that $r\bar{e}g\bar{\imath}na$ in the second becomes $r\bar{e}g\bar{\imath}nam$ in the third, and that puellam in the second becomes puella in the third. Notice now the effect of these simple changes upon the meaning of the sentences. You thus learn that when the Romans spoke of a queen as the subject of an action, they used the form $r\bar{e}g\bar{\imath}na$, but when they spoke of a queen as the object of an action they used $r\bar{e}g\bar{\imath}nam$. These forms, $r\bar{e}g\bar{\imath}na$, $r\bar{e}g\bar{\imath}nam$, are types or examples of a large class of Latin nouns which in the singular end in a when used as subject and in am when used as object.

Note 4. — Observe that puellam, the Direct Object in the second example, and $r\bar{e}g\bar{\imath}nam$, the Direct Object in the third example, are both in the Accusative. This is in accordance with general Latin usage, expressed in the following

RULE V. - Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative.

17. Vocabulary.

Amat,
Amīcitia,
Dēlectat,

he loves. friendship. he delights. Epistula, ae, f. letter, epistle. Filia, ae, f. daughter. Jüstitia, ae, f. justice. Laudat, he praises.

18. Translate into English.

1. Rēgīna puellās laudābat.¹ 2. Puellae rēgīnam laudābant. 3. Rēgīna incolās laudat. 4. Incolae rēgīnam laudant. 5. Poētae amīcitiam laudant. 6. Poētae rēgīnam laudābunt. 7. Rēgīna poētās laudābit. 8. Nauta poētam laudābat. 9. Poēta nautam laudābit. 10. Poētae nautās laudant. 11. Poēta dēlīberābit. 12. Poētae dēlīberābant. 13. Puellae ambulābant. 14. Rēgīna fīliam² amat. 15. Fīliam amābit.³ 16. Epistula rēgīnam dēlectat.

19. Translate into Latin.

1. The poet praises the queen. 2. He was praising the queen. 3. The poet will praise friendship. 4. The letter delights the girl. 5. The girl praises the letter. 6. The girls were praising the poet. 7. The girls love the queen. 8. The queen loves the girls. 9. The husbandman will

¹ In taking up a Latin sentence, remember that the meaning must be learned in part from the vocabulary, and in part from the endings of the words. In this sentence, for example, we first learn the general meaning of the words from the vocabulary. We then ascertain the number and case of $r\bar{e}g\bar{i}na$ from its ending. We find that it is in the singular number, and that in form it may be either a Nominative or a Vocative. As a Nominative it would mean that the queen is the subject of the action, as that is the only use of the Nominative which we have thus far learned; as a Vocative, that the queen is addressed. We next notice puellas. This must be an Accusative Plural, and it accordingly represents the girls as the object of an action; puellas, then, must be the object of the action of which $r\bar{e}g\bar{i}na$ is the subject. The ending $\bar{a}bat$ in $laud\bar{a}bat$ shows that the verb is in the imperfect tense, third person singular, and that it accordingly represents the action as taking place in past time, and as having one person for its subject. We are now prepared to translate the sentence: The queen was praising the girls. See Suggestions, I. to X., page 261.

² Render her daughter. In Latin the possessive pronouns, meaning his, her, their, when not emphatic, are seldom expressed.

⁸ Render she will love, thus making the pronoun refer to regina.

plough. 10. The husbandmen were ploughing. 11. The poets are deliberating. 12. The husbandman loves his daughter.

LESSON VIII.

SUBJECT. — DIRECT OBJECT. — QUESTIONS.

- 20. In questions the interrogative particles, -ne, nonne, and num, are often used in Latin.
- 1. Questions with -ne ask for information: $R\bar{e}gatne$, is he reigning?
- 2. Questions with $n\bar{o}nne$ expect the answer 'yes': $N\bar{o}nne$ $r\bar{e}gnat$, 'is he not reigning?' ²
- 3. Questions with num expect the answer 'no': Num $r\bar{e}gnat$, 'is he reigning?' ²

21. Vocabulary.

Artemisia,	Artemisia, queen of Caria.
Corōna, ae, f.	crown.
Exspectat,	he expects, awaits.
Fābula, ae, f .	story, fable.
Jūlia, ae, f_{ullet}	Julia, a Roman name.
Nōn,	not.
Sapientia, ae, f.	wisdom.

22. Translate into English.

- 1. Nonne Artemīsia rēgnābat? 2. Rēgnābat. 3. Nonne poēta rēgīnam laudābit? 4. Rēgīnam laudābit. 5. Num poēta nāvigābat? 6. Non nāvigābat. 7. Nonne poētae sapientiam laudant? 8. Sapientiam laudant. 9. Ambulantne? 3. Non ambulant. 11. Equitantne? 12. Equitant.
- 13. Nonne rēgīna coronam amābat? 14. Coronam amābat. 15. Nonne fābulae puellās dēlectābant? 16. Puellās dēlectābant. 17. Fābula nautās dēlectat. 18. Fābulae nautam dēlectant. 19. Nautae nāvigābunt.

1 The particle -ne is always thus appended to some other word.

² Observe in 2 and 3 that the auxiliary is stands at the beginning of the question in English, and that the subject follows: Is he not reigning? Is he reigning? Does and do often introduce questions in the same way, and in the past tense was and did: was he not reigning, nonne regnabat? 3 Ambulantne = ambulant and the interrogative particle-ne.

23. Translate into Latin.

- 1. Does not Julia praise the queen? 2. She praises the queen. 3. Will the girls love Julia? 4. They will love Julia. 5. Is not Victoria reigning? 6. She is reigning. 7. Is the sailor expecting letters? 8. He is not expecting letters. 9. Does the poet love his daughters?
- 10. He loves his daughters. 11. Will not the letters delight the queen? 12. They will delight the queen. 13. Were not the inhabitants deliberating? 14. They were deliberating. 15. The story will delight the poet.

LESSON IX.

SUBJECT. - DIRECT OBJECT. - QUESTIONS.

24. Vocabulary.

Accüsat. he accuses. Armat. he arms. Familia, ae, f. family, servants. Gallia, ae, f. Gaul, now France. Honorat. he honors. Patria, ae, f. country, one's country. Probat. he approves. Sententia, ae, f. opinion, sentiment. Tullia, ae, f. Tullia, a Roman name.

25. Translate into English.

- Nonne agricolae patriam amābant?
 Patriam amābant.
 Num incolae rēgīnam accūsābunt?
 Non rēgīnam accūsābunt.
 Rēgīnam amant.
 Rēgīna nautās armābit.
 Nonne familiam armābat?
 Familiam armābat.
 Num Artemīsia incolās armābat?
- 10. Non incolās armābat. 11. Rēgnābatne? 12. Rēgnābat. 13. Incolae nautās accūsābunt. 14. Nonne agricolae nautās accūsābant? 15. Nautās accūsābant. 16. Nonne rēgīna sententiam probābat? 17. Sententiam probābat. 18. Nonne incolae sententiam probābunt?

26. Translate into Latin.

1. Was Artemisia reigning? 2. She was not reigning. 3. Victoria was reigning. 4. Do the husbandmen love Gaul? 5. They do 1 not love Gaul. 6. Will not the queen honor the poet? 7. She will honor the poet. 8. The inhabitants honor the queen. 9. Do they not love their country?

10. They love their country. 11. Will the queen approve the opinion? 12. She will approve the opinion. approves the opinion. 14. Was not Gaul arming its inhabitants? 15. Gaul was arming its inhabitants. 16. Did not Artemisia accuse 2 her servants? 17. She accused 2 her servants.

LESSON X.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION. -RULES II. AND XVI.

27. In verbs of the Second Conjugation, the Third Person in the singular and plural of the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative mood has the following

		ENDINGS.	
Singular, Plural,	et, ent,	Imperfect. ēbat, ēbant,	Future. ēbit. ēbunt. ³

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.

PLURAT.

Pres	monet, he advises; 4
Imp	monebat, he was advising: 5
Fut.	monebit, he will advise;

monent, they advise. monēbant, they were advising.5 monebunt, they will advise.

¹ Omit do in rendering into Latin, as that language has no separate words for the English auxiliaries, does, do, did.

² Use the imperfect; see page 19, foot-note 5.

 $[{]f 3}$ Observe that these endings all begin with the stem-characteristic ${f e}$.

⁴ Or, she advises, it advises; see page 23, foot-note 3.

⁵ Or, he advised; plural, they advised; see page 19, foot-note 5.

28. Examine the following examples.

- 1. Artemīsia rēgnat.
- 2. Artemīsia rēgīna rēgnat.
- 3. Poēta Artemīsiam laudat.
- 4. Artemīsiam rēgīnam laudat.
- 5. Coronam laudat.
- 6. Corōnam rēgīnae laudat.

Artemisia reigns.

Artemisia the queen reigns.

The poet praises Artemisia.

He praises Artemisia THE QUEEN.

He praises the crown.

He praises the crown of the QUEEN.

Note 1.—A noun or pronoun used to qualify or identify another noun or pronoun, denoting the same person or thing, as $r\bar{e}g\bar{\imath}na$ in the second example and $r\bar{e}g\bar{\imath}nam$ in the fourth, is called an appositive. $R\bar{e}g\bar{\imath}na$, "the queen," is an appositive, showing the rank or office of Artemisia,—Artemisia the QUEEN.

Note 2. — Observe that in the second example, where $Artem\bar{\imath}sia$ is in the Nominative, the appositive, $r\bar{e}g\bar{\imath}na$ is also in the Nominative, while in the fourth example, where $Artem\bar{\imath}siam$ is in the Accusative, the appositive is also in the Accusative. This usage is expressed in the following

RULE II. - Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees in Case with the noun or pronoun which it qualifies.

Note 3. — Observe that in the sixth of the above examples the genitive $r\bar{e}g\bar{i}nae$ limits or qualifies $cor\bar{o}nam$ by showing whose crown is meant, the crown of the queen. This usage is expressed in the following

RULE XVI. - Genitive with Nouns.

395. Any noun, not an appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive.

397. The Partitive Genitive designates the whole of which ${\bf a}$ part is taken.

Gallorum fortissimi, the bravest of the Gauls.

¹ The pupil must not fail to notice that the Appositive always denotes the *same* person or thing as the noun or pronoun which it qualifies, while the Genitive always denotes a different person or thing. The Appositive follows its noun as in examples 2 and 4 above. The Genitive generally follows its noun as in example 6, but when *emphatic* it is placed before that noun.

LESSON XI.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

29. Vocabulary.

Dēlet. he 1 destroys. Docet. he teaches. Habet. he has. Luxuria, ae, f. luxury. Monet. he advises. Pecūnia, ae, f. money. Rōma, ae, f. Rome, the city Rome. Tacet. he is silent. Timet. he fears. Videt. he sees.

30. Translate into English.2

1. Poēta fīliam docēbat. 2. Fīliam docēbit. 3. Nonne

¹ See page 23, foot-notes 3 and 4.

² The pupil has already learned that in the first declension a noun in a is always in the Nominative or Vocative singular, and he has observed that in the previous exercises the Nominative is always the subject of a verb. He has now learned a new use for the Nominative, viz. that it may be an Appositive qualifying another Nominative.

Again, he has learned that a noun in am is in the Accusative singular and a noun in $\bar{a}s$ in the Accusative plural, and he has observed that in previous exercises the Accusative is the direct object, i.e. the object of some action, but he has now learned a new use for the Accusative, viz. that it may be an Appositive qualifying another Accusative. Hence, in future, in preparing his exercises, he must remember that a Nominative may be either the subject of a verb or an Appositive, and that an Accusative may be either the object of an action or an Appositive, but he will have little difficulty in distinguishing the Appositive from the subject or object, if he remembers that it follows another noun or pronoun in the same case, as in examples 2 and 4 under 28.

The pupil has also learned that a noun may be qualified by another noun denoting a different person or thing, and that the qualifying noun is in the Genitive, as in the sixth and seventh examples under 28, but the Genitive may also be used as an Appositive to another Genitive; hence the pupil must remember when he sees a Genitive that it may either qualify another noun, denoting a different person or thing, or may be an Appositive to another Genitive. See Suggestion VI., page 262.

agricolae ¹ fīliās docēbunt? 4. Fīliās docēbunt. 5. Artemīsia rēgīna ² tacēbat. 6. Vīctōria rēgīna jūstitiam laudat. 7. Incolae Vīctōriam rēgīnam ³ honōrant. 8. Nōnne poēta fīliam Jūliam ³ docēbit? 9. Fīliam Jūliam docēbit. 10. Nōnne poēta Vīctōriam rēgīnam vidēbit? 11. Rēgīnam vidēbit. 12. Poēta pecūniam habet.

13. Nonne Jūlia, fīlia poētae, pecūniam habēbit? 14. Pecūniam habēbit. 15. Num agricolae tacēbant? 16. Non tacēbant. 17. Nonne luxuria Romam dēlēbat? 18. Luxuria Romam dēlēbat. 19. Tullia, fīlia rēgīnae, fīliam poëtae amat. 20. Nonne Jūlia Tulliam, fīliam rēgīnae, amābit?

31. Translate into Latin.

- 1. The queen was advising her daughter. 2. Was not Victoria advising her daughters? 3. Victoria the queen was advising her daughters. 4. Will not the poet praise Victoria the queen? 5. He will praise Victoria the queen. 6. He is praising the daughter of the queen. 7. He praises the daughters of Victoria the queen.
- 8. Did Artemisia the queen fear the sailors? 9. She did not fear the sailors. 10. Did not the husbandmen fear the queen? 11. They were fearing Artemisia the queen. 12. Will not the girls see the queen? 13. They will see the queen. 14. Will they not see the crown?

LESSON XII.

NOUNS. - SECOND DECLENSION.

32. Lesson from the Grammar.

51. Nouns of the second declension end in

er, ir, us, and os -masculine; um, and on-neuter.

¹ In form where may agricolae be found? In what case is it in this sentence? See Suggestion VII., page 263.

² Which nominative is subject and which appositive?

³ Which accusative is object and which appositive?

⁴ In form where may poetae be found? In what case is it here?

Nouns in er, ir, us, and um are declined as follows:

Servus, slave. Puer, boy. Ager, field. Templum, temple.

SINGULAR.

Ivom. se	ervus	puer	ager	templum
Gen. se	erv i	puer ī	agr ī	templī
Dat. se	erv ō	$\mathrm{puer}\mathbf{\bar{o}}$	agr ō	templo
Acc. se	ervum	puerum	agrum	templum
	erv e	puer	ager	templum
Abl. se	erv ō	puer ō	$\operatorname{agr}{oldsymbol{oldsymbol{\sigma}}}$	$\mathbf{templ}ar{\mathbf{o}}$
		PLURAL		
Nom. ser		puer ī	agr ī	templa
Gen. serv	võrum	puer ōrum	agr ōrum	templ ōrum
Dat. serv	vīs	puer īs	agrīs	templis
Acc. serv	vōs	puer ōs	agr ōs	templa.
Voc. serv	7 1	puer ī	agrī	templa.
Abl. serv	'is	puer īs	agr īs	templīs

- 1. Stem. In nouns of the second declension, the stem ends in o.
- 2. In the PARADIGMS, observe —
- 1) That the stems are servo, puero, agro, and templo.
- 2) That the characteristic **o** becomes **u** in the endings us and um, and **e** in serve; that it disappears by contraction in the endings a, $\bar{\imath}$, and $\bar{\imath}s$ (for o-a, o-i, and o-is), and is dropped in the forms puer and ager.
- 3) That the case-endings, including the characteristic o, are as follows:—

SING	JLAR.	PLURAL.	
$egin{array}{ll} Maso. \\ Nom. & us^2 \\ Gen. & ar{\mathbf{i}} \\ Dat. & ar{\mathbf{o}} \end{array}$. Neut. um ī	$egin{array}{c} \mathbf{M}_{\mathbf{A}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{G}}. \\ oldsymbol{N}om. \ \mathbf{\hat{i}} \\ Gen. \ \ \mathbf{\bar{o}rum} \end{array}$	Neut. a ōrum
Acc. um $Voc.$ e	um um	$egin{array}{ll} Dat. & ext{is} \ Acc. & ext{os} \ Voc. & ext{i} \end{array}$	īs a a
$Abl.$ δ	ō	Abl. is	ĩs

3. Examples for Practice.—Like servus: dominus, master. Like puer: gener, son-in-law. Like ager: magister, master. Like templum: bellum, war.

¹ For the characteristic, and for the distinction between case-endings and case-suffixes, see 11 with foot-note.

 $^{^2}$ The endings of the Nominative and Vocative Singular are wanting in nouns in $\it er.~$ Thus $\it puer$ is for $\it puerus.$

- 5. Nouns in ius generally contract iī in the Genitive Singular and ie in the Vocative Singular into $\bar{\imath}$ without change of accent; Claudī for Claudī, of Claudius, fīlī for fīliī, of a son; Mercūrī for Mercūrie, Mercury, fīlī for fīlie, son.
- 8. LOCATIVE. Names of towns, and a few other words, have a Locative Singular in $\bar{\imath}$, denoting the place in which (page 23, 4). Corinth, at Corinth; hum, on the ground.

33. Vocabulary.

Ager, agrī, m. field. Crassus, i, m. Crassus, a Roman name. Discipulus, \bar{i} , m. pupil, learner. Dominus, $\bar{1}$, m. master, owner. Fīlius, \bar{i} , $m.^1$ son. Liber, libri, m. book. Liberat. he liberates, liberates. Puer, pueri, m. boy. Servus, ī, m. slave. Templum, i, n. temple. Tyrannus, i, m. tyrant.

34. Translate into English.²

- 1. Fīlia tyrannī tacēbat. 2. Fīliae tyrannī tacent. 3. Servus agrum arat. 4. Servī agrum arābunt. 5. Servī rēgīnae agrōs arābant. 6. Rēgīna servōs laudābit. 7. Nōnne puer librum habet? 8. Librum habet. 9. Nōnne puerī librōs habēbunt? 10. Librōs habēbunt. 11. Discipulus librōs habēbat. 12. Nōnne discipulī librōs habēbant?
- 13. Librōs habēbant. 14. Tullia, fīlia rēgīnae, discipulōs laudābat. 15. Discipulī Tulliam, fīliam rēgīnae, laudant. 16. Crassus agrōs habēbat. 17. Nōnne servōs habēbat? 18. Servōs habēbat. 19. Nōnne servōs līberābat? 20. Servōs līberābat. 21. Poēta servum habet. 22. Nōnne servum līberābit? 23. Servum līberābit.

¹ Fīlī for fīliī; see 32, 5.

² It is important that the pupil should early learn to recognize Latin words by their sounds as well as by their forms. Many teachers, therefore, frequently read the Latin to their classes, and require them to translate with closed books.

³ $Had = was \ having$; see page 19, foot-note 5.

35. Translate into Latin.

- 1. The story delights the boy. 2. Stories delight boys. 3. The stories will delight the boys. 4. The boy was expecting a letter. 5. The boys were expecting letters. 6. The queen praises her daughter. 7. The queen will praise the daughter of the tyrant.
- 8. Is not the husbandman ploughing the field? 9. He is ploughing the field. 10. The husbandman will plough the fields. 11. Did not the slave love his master? 12. He loved his master Crassus. 13. Will not the boys see the temple? 14. They will see the temple.

LESSON XIII.

SECOND DECLENSION.

36. Vocabulary.

Amīcus, ī, m. friend.
Dōnum, ī, n. gift, present.
Fortūna, ae, f. fortune.
Gener, generī, m. son-in-law.
Nātūra, ae, f. nature.
Pīsistratus, ī, m. Pisistratus, tyrant of Athens.
Socer, socerī, m. father-in-law.

Terret, he terrifies, frightens. Verbum, i, n. word.

37. Translate into English.

- 1. Verba tyrannī rēgīnam terrēbant. 2. Verba Pīsistratī tyrannī rēgīnam terrēbant. 3. Servus puerum terret. 4. Servī puerōs terrēbunt. 5. Verba servī puerum terrent. 6. Socer tyrannī tacēbat. 7. Puerī servōs rēgīnae timent. 8. Puer librum habet. 9. Puer librōs habēbit. 10. Puerī librōs habēbunt. 11. Rēgīna tyrannum timēbat. 12. Tyrannum timēbit. 13, Pīsistratum timēbant.
- 14. Pīsistratum tyrannum timēbant. 15. Puer amīcum habēbat. 16. Nonne amīcum amābat? 17. Amīcum amā-

bat. 18. Amīcōs habēbit. 19. Puerī amīcōs habent. 20. Tullia amīcōs exspectābat. 21. Servīne ¹ dominum exspectābunt? 22. Dominum exspectābunt. 23. Nōnne epistula Crassī rēgīnam dēlectābat? 24. Rēgīnam dēlectābat. 25. Rēgīna sapientiam, dōnum nātūrae, habet.

38. Translate into Latin.

- 1. Will the boy see the crown of the tyrant? 2. He will see the crown. 3. Did not the gift delight Tullia? 4. It delighted Tullia, the daughter of the queen? 5. Did not Tullia praise the gifts? 6. She praised the gifts. 7. Did not the letter of Tullia delight her father-in-law? 8. It delighted her father-in-law.
- 9. Did not the tyrant terrify the son-in-law of the queen? 10. He terrified the son-in-law of the queen. 11. The slave was ploughing the field. 12. The slaves are ploughing the field. 13. The slaves will plough the fields. 14. The son-in-law has the letter. 15. He will have the letters. 16. The tyrant will see the letter. 17. He will see the letter of the queen.

LESSON XIV.

ADJECTIVES. — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. —
RULE XXXIV.

39. Lesson from the Grammar.

146. The Adjective is the part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: bonus, good; māgnus, great.

Note. — The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies: bonus puer, a good boy; bona puella, a good girl; bonum templum, a good temple.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension, and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

¹ Servine = servi with the interrogative particle ne.

² In what case should the Latin word for daughter be put? The word for of the queen? See 28, Rule II. and Rule XVI.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS: A AND O STEMS.

Maso. Nom. bonus Gen. bonī Dat. bonō Acc. bonum Voc. bone Abl. bonō	SINGULAR. FEM. bonae bonae bonae bonam bona bona	Neur. bonum bonā bonoum bonum bonum bono
Nom. bonī Gen. bon ōrum Dat. bonīs Acc. bon ō s Voc. bon ī Abl. bon īs	plural. bonae bonaruum bonis bonas bonae bonis	bona bon ōrum bonīs bona bona bonīs

Servus Bonus, a good slave.2

SINGULAR.

	DIMOULA	No.
Gen. Dat. Acc. Voc.	servus bonus, servī bonā, servō bonō, servum bonum, serve bone, servō bonō,	a good slave. of a good slave. for a good slave. a good slave. O good slave. from a good slave.
		y v. w v v y

PLURAL.

	* WOLVETTO	
	servī bonī,	good slaves.
Gen.	serv õrum bon õrum ,	of good slaves.
Dat.	servis bonis,	for good slaves.
	servās bonās,	good slaves.
Voc.	servi boni,	O good slaves.
∆ bl.	servīs bonīs,	from good slaves.

¹ Bonus is declined in the Masc. like servus of Decl. II., (32,51,) in the Fem. like $m\bar{e}nsa$ of Decl. I., (11, 48), and in the Neut. like templum of Decl. II., (32,51). The stems are bono in the Masc. and Neut., and $bon\bar{a}$ in the Fem.

² In English the adjective usually precedes its noun, but in Latin it sometimes precedes and sometimes follows, though when not *emphatic* it more frequently follows.

40. Examine the following examples.

Servus bonus.
 Servi boni.
 Servi bonis.
 For good slaves.
 Vērae amīcitiae.¹
 TRUE friendships.
 Templum pulchrum.
 A beautiful temple.

Note.—In these examples, observe that the adjectives are all in the same *Gender*, *Number*, and *Case* as their nouns. This usage is expressed in the following

RULE XXXIV. - Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An adjective agrees with its noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE.

LESSON XV.

ADJECTIVES. — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. — RULE XXXIV. — EXERCISES.

41. Certain Forms of the Verb Sum, I am. SINGULAR. PLURAL.

Pres. est, he, she, or it is;
Imp. erat, he, she, or it was;
Fut. erit, he, she, or it will be;

sunt, they are. erant, they were. erunt, they will be.

42. Vocabulary.

golden, of gold. Aureus, a, um, good. Bonus, a, um, Fidus, a, um, faithful. Glöria, ae, f. glory. great, large. Māgnus, a, um, much; plural, many. Multus, a, um, Novus, a, um, nem. Sanctus, a, um, sacred. proud, haughty. Superbus, a, um,

43. Translate into English.

1. Nonne corona aurea ² rēgīnam delectat? 2. Rēgīnam bonam delectat. 3. Corona aurea est. 4. Coronac sunt

¹ Vērae is emphatic: See page 38, foot-note 2.

² On the position of the adjective in Latin, see page 38, foot-note 2.

aureae.¹ 5. Nõnne rēgīna bona corõnam laudābat. Corōnam auream laudābat. 7. Puellae rēgīnam bonam amant. 8. Puellae bonae rēgīnam amant. 9. Puellae bonae rēgīnam bonam amābunt.

10. Discipulus novum² librum habet. 11. Discipulī librōs novõs habēbunt. 12. Nõnne discipulī multõs librõs habent? 13. Non habent. 14. Libros multos habebunt. 15. Poeta glöriam habet. 16. Poētae glöriam māgnam habēbunt. Poēta māgnus glōriam māgnam habēbat. 18. Glōria est māgna. 19. Templum erat sanctum.

44. Translate into Latin.

- 1. Tullia has many 3 books. 2. Are the books new? 3 3. They are not new. 4. Has not the poet a faithful friend? 4 5. He has many friends. 6. Are the friends faithful? 7. They are faithful. 8. The good queen has many friends. 9. The slave loves his good master. 10. Do not good masters have good slaves?
- 11. They have good slaves. 12. Tullia was praising the great poet. 13. The great poet will praise the good queen. 14. Great poets have great glory. 15. The haughty tyrant terrified the poet. 16. Tullia feared the haughty tyrant. 17. Tullia loves faithful friends. 18. The sailor will see the sacred temple.

LESSON XVI.

ADJECTIVES. — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

45. Lesson from the Grammar.

¹ While in general the verb in Latin occupies the last place in the sentence, est and sunt often stand between the subject and the predicate adjective, as in this sentence. Some freedom of arrangement is, however, allowed. Thus Coronae sunt aureae might be coronae aureae sunt, and corona aurea est, above, might be corona est aurea.

² Novum is emphatic.

³ Put the adjective in the right form to agree with its noun.

⁴ In translating English into Latin, the pupil is expected, in the arrangement of words, to imitate the order followed in the Latin Exercises.

149. Liber, <i>free</i> . 1	SINGULAR.	
MASO.	Fem	Neur,
Nom. liber	līber a	līber um
Gen. līberī	līber ae	līber ī
Dat. liber ö	līber ae	līber ō
Acc. līberum	līber a m	līber um
Voc. liber	līber a	līber um
Abl. liberō	līber ā	līber ō
	LURAL.	
Nom. līberī	līber ae	līber a
Gen. līber ōrum	līber ārum	līber ōrum
$oldsymbol{Dat}$. liber $oldsymbol{is}$	līber īs	l īber īs
$Acc.$ līber $ar{\mathbf{o}}\mathbf{s}$	līber ās	līber a
Voc. liberT	līber ae	l īber a
$Abl.$ liber $oldsymbol{is}$	${f l}{f i}{f b}{f e}{f r}{f i}{f s}$	l īber īs
150. Aeger, sick.		
σ,	SINGULAR.	
MASO,	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. aeger	$\mathbf{a}\mathbf{e}\mathbf{g}\mathbf{r}\mathbf{a}$	aegru m
Gen . $\operatorname{aegr} \mathbf{I}$	aegr ae	aegrīi
$oldsymbol{D}at$. ae $\operatorname{\acute{e}r}$	aegr ae	aegr ō
Acc. aegrum	a egr am	aegrum
Voc. aeger	aegr a	aegrum
Abl. aegr ō	$\mathbf{a}\mathrm{egr}\mathbf{ar{a}}$	aegrō
	PLURAL.	
Nom. aegr∎	aegr ae	aegr a
Gen. aegr ōrum	aegr ārum	aegr ōrum
Dat. aegrīs	aegr īs	aegr ī s
$Acc.$ $aegrar{\mathbf{o}}\mathbf{s}$	aegr ās	aegra
Voc. aegrī	aegr ae	aegra
Abl. aegrīs	$\operatorname{aegr} \mathbf{\bar{i}s}$	aegr īs
		-

151. IRREGULARITIES. — Nine adjectives have in the singular **īus** in the Genitive and **ī** in the Dative:

Alius, a, ud, another; nūllus, a, um, no one; sōlus, alone; tōtus, whole; ūllus, any; ūnus,² one; alter, -tera, -terum, the other; uter, -tra, -trum, which (of two); neuter, -tra, -trum, neither.

 $^{^1}$ In the Masculine $l\bar{i}ber$ is declined like puer (32, 51), aeger, like ager (32, 51). 2 For declension see page 78.

LESSON XVII.

ADJECTIVES. — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. EXERCISES.

46. Vocabulary.

Aeger, aegra, aegrum, ill, sick. Beātus, a, um, happy, blessed. Egregius, a, um, excellent, distinguished. Grātus, a, um, acceptable, pleasing. Hōra, ae, f. hour. Longus, a, um, long, lasting. Pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful. Vērus, a, um, true. Victoria, ae, f. victory. Vita, ae, f. life.

47. Translate into English.

- 1. Agricola agrum pulchrum habet. 2. Estne beātus?
 3. Beātus est. 4. Agricola beātus agrum arābat. 5. Nonne agricolae beātī sunt? 6. Beātī sunt. 7. Puella pulchra pulchram rēgīnam amat. 8. Puellae pulchrae rēgīnam bonam amābant. 9. Nonne rēgīna bona puellās pulchrās amābit? 10. Puellās pulchrās amābit.
- 11. Poēta servum ēgregium habēbat. 12. Servus Tulliae ēgregius erat. 13. Dominus superbus ēgregiōs servōs habet. 14. Suntne hōrae longae? 15. Nōn longae sunt. 16. Estne vīta longa? 17. Nōn est longa. 18. Puer erat aeger. 19. Puerī erant aegrī. 20. Suntne puellae aegrae? 21. Nōn sunt aegrae. 22. Vīta agricolae est beāta.

48. Translate into Latin.

1. The present is beautiful. 2. Is it acceptable? 3. It is acceptable. 4. Presents are acceptable. 5. Beautiful presents are acceptable. 6. Victory will be acceptable. 7. The glory of the victory will be great. 8. Is the story true? 9. It is not true. 10. Many stories are true. 11. Is the slave of the poet ill? 12. He is not ill.

13. Julia, the beautiful daughter of the poet, is ill. 14. Tullia was praising the beautiful daughter of the poet. 15. The temple is beautiful. 16. Many temples are beautiful. 17. Tullia will see the beautiful temples. 18. Will not the pupils have beautiful books? 19. They will have beautiful books. 20. Friends will be faithful.

LESSON XVIII.

THIRD DECLENSION - CONSONANT AND I NOUNS.

49. Lesson from the Grammar.

55. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, ŏ, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, and x.

- 56. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:
 - I. Nouns whose stem ends in a Consonant.
 - II. Nouns whose stem ends in I.

CLASS I. — CONSONANT STEMS.

57. STEMS ENDING IN A LABIAL: B OR P.

Princeps, M., a leader, chief.

		SINGULAR.	CASE-SUFFIXES.
Nom.	prīnceps,	a leader,	ន
Gen.	princip is ,	of a leader,	is
Dat.	principī,	to, for a leader,	ī (
Acc.	princip em,	a leader,	em
Voc.	princeps,	O leader,	8
Abl.	prīncip e ,	from, with, by a leader,	e
		PLURAL.	
Nom.	prīncip ēs ,	leaders,	ēs
Gen.	prīncip um ,	of leaders,	um
Dat.	princip ilbus ,	to, for leaders,	ibus
Acc.	prīncip ēs ,	leaders,	ēs
Voc.	prīncipēs,	O leaders,	ēs
Abl.	prīncip ibus ,	from, with, by leaders.	ibus

- 1. Stem and Case-Suffixes. In this Paradigm observe —
- 1) That the stem is *prīncep*, modified before an additional syllable to *prīncip*; see p. 2, 22, and 49, 57, 2.
- 2) That the case-suffixes appear distinct and separate from the stem; 1 see 11, 46, with foot-note.
- 2. Variable Vowel. In the final syllable of disyllabic consonant stems, short \mathbf{e} or \mathbf{i} generally takes the form of e in the Nominative and Vocative Singular, and that of i in all the other cases. Thus $pr\bar{i}nceps$, $pr\bar{i}ncipis$, and $j\bar{u}dex$, $j\bar{u}dicis$ (53, 59), alike have e in the Nominative and Vocative Singular, and i in all the other cases.

58. Stems ending in a Dental: D or T.

Lapis	s, M., stone.	Aetās, f., age.	Mīles, M., soldier.
		SINGULAR.	
Nom.	lapi s	aetā s	mīle s
Gen.	lapid is	aetāt is	mīlit is
Dat.	lapidI	aetātīi	\mathbf{m} īlit \mathbf{I}
Acc.	lapid em	aetāt em	mīlit em
Voc.	lapis	aetās	mīle $f s$
Abl.	$\operatorname{lapid}\mathbf{e}$	aetāt e	$m\bar{\imath}lit\mathbf{e}$
		PLURAL.	
Nom.	lapid ēs	aetāt ēs	m īlit $ar{f e}$ s
Gen.	lapid um	aetāt um	mīlit um
Dat.	lapid ibus	aetāt ibus	mīlit ibus
Acc.	lapid ēs	aetāt ēs	m īlit $ar{f e}{f s}$
Voc.	lapid ēs	aetāt ēs	$\mathrm{mar{i}lit}ar{\mathbf{e}}\mathbf{s}$
Abl.	lapid ibus	aetāt ibus	mīlit ibus
Nepōs,	м., grandson.	Virtūs, f., virtue.	Caput, N., head.
		SINGULAR.	
Nom.	nepō s	virtū s	\mathbf{caput}
Gen.	nepōt is	virtūt is	capit is
Dat.	nepōt ī	virtūtī	capit ī
Acc.	${ m nep ilde{o}tem}$	virtūt em	caput
Voc.	$\mathrm{nep}ar{\mathrm{o}}\mathbf{s}$	virtū s	\mathbf{caput}
Abl.	$\mathrm{nepar{o}t}oldsymbol{e}$	virtūt e	$\operatorname{capit}\mathbf{e}$

¹ Thus, princep-s, princip-is, etc. In the first and second declensions, on the contrary, the suffix can not be separated from the final vower of the stem in such forms as $m\bar{e}ns\bar{i}s$, $puer\bar{i}$, $agr\bar{i}s$, etc.

PLURAL.

Nom.	nepõt ēs	virtūt ēs	c apit a
Gen.	nepöt urm	virtüt um	c apit um
Dat.	nepöt ibus	virtūt ibus	c apit ibus
Acc.	$\operatorname{nep\bar{o}t}\mathbf{\bar{e}s}$	virtūt ēs	c apit a
Voc.	$\mathbf{nep ilde{o}t ilde{e}s}$	virtūt ēs	c apit a
Abl.	nepõt ibus	virtūt ibus	c apit ibus

- 1. Stems and Case-Suffixes. —In these Paradigms observe —
- 1) That the stems are lapid, aetāt, mīlit, nepōt, virtūt, and caput.
- 2) That miles has the variable vowel, e, i, and caput, u, i.
- 3) That the dental **d** or **t** is dropped before **s**: lapis for lapids, aetās for aetāts, mīles for mīlets, virtūs for virtūts.
- 4) That the case-suffixes, except in the neuter, caput, 'head,' are the same as those given above; see 49,57.
- 5) That the neuter, caput, has no case-suffix in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular, a in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, and the suffixes of masculine and feminine nouns in the other cases.

LESSON XIX.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS I.

50. Vocabulary.

Caput. capitis, n. head. Comes, comitis, m. and f. companion. Hospes, hospitis, m. guest, host. Lapis, lapidis, m. stone.Mīles, mīlitis, m. soldier. Nepos, nepotis, m. grandson. Princeps, principis, m. leader, chief, chieftain. Virtūs, virtūtis, f. virtue, valor, bravery.

51. Translate into English.

Nonne mīlitēs pūgnābunt?
 Pūgnābunt.
 Nonne sunt fīdī?
 Sunt fīdī.
 Prīnceps nepotem laudat.
 Nonne mīlitem laudat?
 Mīlitem laudat.
 Estne superbus?
 Superbus est.
 Mīlitēs prīncipem laudant.
 Virtūtem prīncipis laudant.

12. Virtūs mīlitum. 13. Virtūte mīlitum. 14. Virtūtem mīlitum timet. 15. Tyrannus virtūtem mīlitum timēbat. 16. Rēgīna virtūtem mīlitum laudat. 17. Fīlia rēgīnae mīlitēs laudābit. 18. Mīlitēs fīliam rēgīnae laudant. 19. Pīsistratum tyrannum accūsat. 20. Pīsistratum tyrannum accūsābant. 21. Mīles dōnum pulchrum videt. 22. Mīlitēs dōna pulchra vident. 23. Tyrannus prīncipēs timēbat.

52. Translate into Latin.

- 1. The chief praises his companion. 2. Has he many companions? 3. He has many companions. 4. Did the chiefs approve the opinion? 5. They approved the opinion. 6. The chief praised his grandson. 7. The queen praises her guest. 8. She has many guests. 9. The boy has a large head. 10. The chief praises the valor of his soldiers.
- 11. The companions of Tullia, the queen. 12. For the companions of Tullia, the queen. 13. They accuse Tullia, the queen. 14. They were accusing the companions of Tullia, the queen. 15. They fear the tyrant. 16. They will fear the grandson of the tyrant. 17. The friends of the queen praise the chief. 18. The friend of the queen was praising the good chiefs.

LESSON XX.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS I. — RULE XII.

53. Lesson from the Grammar.

59. Stems ending in a Guttural: C or G.

	Rēx, м.,	Jūdex, M. &	F., Radix, F.,	Dux, M. & F.
	king.	judge.	root.	leader.
		SINGUL	AR.	
Nom	. rēx	$\mathbf{j}\mathbf{\bar{u}}\mathbf{dex}$	$r\bar{a}d\bar{\imath}x$	dux
Gen.	rēg is	jūdic is	rādīc is	duc is
Dat.	rēg ī	jūdie 	rādīe ī	$\mathrm{due}\mathbf{\bar{\imath}}$
Acc.	rēg em	jūdic em	rādīc em	duc em .
Voc.	rēx	jūdex	$r\bar{a}d\bar{\imath}x$	dux
Abl.	rēge	jūdic e	$r\bar{a}d\bar{\imath}c$	duc e

PLURAL.

Nom	rēg ēs	j ūdic ēs	rādīc ēs	duc ēs
	rēgum	jūdic um	rādīc um	duc um
	rēg ibus	jūdic ibus	rādīc ibus	ducibus
	rēg ēs	jūdic ēs	rādīc ēs	ducēs
	rēg ēs	jūdic ēs	rādīc ēs	ducēs
Abl.	rēg ibus	jūdic ibus	rādīc ibus	ducibus

- 1. Stems and Case-Suffixes. In the Paradigms observe —
- 1) That the stems are $r\bar{e}g$, $j\bar{u}dic$, $r\bar{u}d\bar{i}c$, and duc; $j\bar{u}dic$ with the variable vowel, i, e; see 49, 57, 2.
 - 2) That the case-suffixes are those given in 49, 57.
- 3) That **s** in the Nominative and Vocative Singular unites with c or g of the stem, and forms x; see p. 3, 30.

54. Examine the following examples.

1.	<i>Imperiō</i> pāret.	He is obedient to (obeys) AUTHORITY.
9	## a ma *7. × 1 4	m

Hōc mihi placet.
 Nōbīs vita data est.
 This is pleasing to (pleases) ME.
 Life has been given to US.

4. Lėgės cīvitātī scripsit. He wrote laws for the state.

Note.—In these examples imperiō, 'to authority,' mihī, 'to me,' nōbis, 'to us,' and cīvitātī, 'for the state,' are examples of what is called the Indirect Object. The first is the Indirect Object of pāret, the second of placet, the third of data est, and the fourth of scripsit. If the verb is transitive (p. 12, 193), as in the last example, an Accusative of the Direct Object (16, 371) may be used in addition to the Indirect Object. Observe that in these examples the Indirect Objects are all in the Dative Case. This is in accordance with the following

RULE XII. - Dative with Verbs.

384. The Indirect Object of an action is put in the Dative. It is used—

I. With Intransitive and Passive Verbs:

Serviunt populo, they are devoted to the people. Cic. Imperio parebant, they were obedient to (obeyed) authority. Caes. Tempori

¹ Populo, 'to the people,' is in the Dative, and is the Indirect Object of serviunt, 'they serve' or 'are devoted;' $pl\bar{e}b\bar{i}$, 'to the common people,' is the Indirect Object of the transitive verb dedit, 'he gave,' which also takes the Direct Object $agr\bar{o}s$, 'fields,' 'lands.'

cēdit, he yields to the time. Cic. Laborī student, they devote themselves to labor. Caes. Mundus deo pāret, the world obeys God. Cic. Nobīs vita data est, life has been granted to us. Cic.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the DIRECT OBJECT:

Agrös plēbī 1 dedit, he gave lands to the common people. Cic. Tibī grātiās agō, I give thanks to you. Cic. Pōns iter hostibus dedit, the bridge gave a passage to the enemy. Liv. Lēgēs civitātibus suīs scrīpsērunt, they prepared laws for their states. Cic.

LESSON XXI.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS I. — EXERCISES.

55. Vocabulary.

divine. Divinus, a, um, Donat, Hūmānus, a, um, Iniquus, a, um, Jūdex, jūdicis, m. and f. Latinus, i, m. Lavinia, ae, f. Lēx, lēgis, f. Nūntiat. Pāret, he pleases. Placet, kina. Rēx, rēgis, m. proud. Superbus, a, um,

he presents.
human.
unjust.
judge. [Central Italy.
Latinus, King of the Laurentians in
Lavinia, daughter of King Latinus.
law.
he announces.
he obeys.

56. Translate into English.

Mīlitēs prīncipī pārēbant.
 Lēgī pārent.
 Lēgibus pārent.
 Rēgem bonum laudant.
 Rēx jūdicēs bonōs laudat.
 Mīles vīctōriam nūntiat.
 Rēgī vīctōriam nūntiat.
 Jūdex erat inīquus.
 Rēgīna rēgī librum pulchrum dōnābit.
 Prīnceps sapientiam rēgis laudābat.
 Rēx bonus lēgibus pārēbat.
 Rēgēs bonī lēgibus pārēbunt.

¹ See foot-note, page 47.

2 In what case? See 54, Rule XII.

13. Lēx dīvīna rēgī bonō placet. 14. Lēgēs bonae jūdicī placent. 15. Jūdex bonus rēgem superbum timet. 16. Rēgem superbum timēbit. 17. Rēgēs superbōs timēbunt. 18. Rēgīna jūdicem bonum laudābat. 19. Jūdex rēgem bonum laudābit. 20. Rēgīna bona jūdicem inīquum timēbat. 21. Jūdex puerō librum dōnat. 22. Fīlia rēgīnae puellīs librōs dōnābit.

57. Translate into Latin.

- The judge praises the law.
 Does he obey the law?
 The king will present a beautiful gift to the judge.
 The soldiers praise the judge.
 The poet praises the king.
 The good poet was praising the daughter of the king.
 The poets praise Lavinia, the daughter of Latinus, the king.
- 8. They were praising the virtues of the good king. 9. The queen was praising the bravery of the soldier. 10. The poets will praise the bravery of the soldiers. 11. The soldiers will obey the laws. 1 12. The king will present a golden crown 1 to the queen. 1

LESSON XXII.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS I.

58. Lesson from the Grammar.

60. Stems ending in L, M, N, or R.

	Sōl, M., sun.	Cōnsul, M., consul.	Passer, M., sparrow.	Pater, M., father.
		SINGUL	AR.	•
Nom.		cõnsul	passer	pater
Gen.	sōl is	consul is	passer is	patr is
Dat.	sölī	cōnsul ī	passerI	patr ī
Acc.	sõl em	cönsul em	passerem	patr em
Voc.	sõl	consul	passer	pater
Abl.	sōle	eõnsul e	•	•
			passer e	patr $f e$

¹In what case will you put the Latin word for king? 16, Rule V.; the Latin words for laws, crown to the queen? 54, 384, I. and II.

		PLURAL	•	
Nom.	sõl ēs ¹	\mathbf{c} onsul $\mathbf{ar{e}}\mathbf{s}$	passer ēs	patr ēs
Gen.		cōnsul um	passeruum	patr um
Dat.	sõl ibus	cōnsul ibus	passer ibus	patr ibus
Acc.	sōl ēs	\mathbf{c} onsul $\mathbf{ar{e}}\mathbf{s}$	passer ēs	patr ēs
Voc.	sōl ēs	consul ēs	passer ēs	patr ēs
Abl.	sõl ibus	consul ibus	passer ibus	patr ibus
	Pāstor, M.,	Leŏ, M.,	Virgŏ, F.,	Carmen, N.,
	shepherd.	lion.	maiden.	song.
		SINGULA	R.	
Nom.	pāstor	leŏ	virgŏ	carmen
Gen.	p ā stōr is	leōn is	virgin is	carmin is
Dat.	pāstōr ī	leōnī	virgin ī	carmin T
Acc.	pāstör em	leõn em	virgin em	carmen
Voc.	pāstor	leŏ	virgŏ	carmen
Abl.	pāstēr e	leōn e	virgin e	$\mathbf{e}_{\mathbf{armin}}\mathbf{e}$
		PLURAI	·	
Nom.	pāstēr ēs	leõn ēs	virgin ēs	carmin a
Gen.	pāst ōrum	leön um	virginum	carmin um
Dat.	pāstēr ibus	leön ibus	virgin ibus	c armin ibus
Acc.	pāstōr ēs	leōn ēs	${f v}$ irgin ${f ar e}{f s}$	c armin a
Voc.	pāstōr ēs	leōn ēs	virgin ēs	carmin a
Abl.	pāstőr ibus	leōn ilbus	virgin ibus	carmin ibus

- 1. Stems and Case-Suffixes. In the Paradigms observe —
- 1) The stems are $s\bar{o}l$, $c\bar{o}nsul$, passer, patr, $p\bar{a}st\bar{o}r$, $le\bar{o}n$, virgon, carmen-
- 2) Virgō (virgon) has the variable vowel, o, i, and carmen, e, i.
- 3) In the Nominative and Vocative Singular s, the case-suffix, is omitted, the stem $p\bar{a}st\bar{o}r$ shortens o, while $le\bar{o}n$ and virgon drop n.

61. Stems ending in S.

	Flōs, m., flower.	Jūs, n., $right$.	Opus, N., work.	Corpus, N., body.
		SINGU	LAR.	
Nom.	flōs	jūs	opus	\mathbf{corpus}
Gen.	flör is	jūr is	oper is	corpor is
Dat.	flör∎	jūr ī	oper T	$\operatorname{corpor} \mathbf{I}$
Acc.	flör em	jūs	opus	\mathbf{corpus}
Voc.	flōs	jūs	opus	corpus
Abl.	flör e	jūr e	oper e	corpore

¹ Many monosyllables want the Genitive Plural.

	PLUR	AL.	
Nom. flörēs	jūr a	$\mathrm{oper} oldsymbol{a}$	corpora
Gen. flörum	jūr um	opermum	corporum
Dat. flöribus	jūr ibus	oper ibus	corporibus
Acc. flöres	jūr a	oper a	corpora
Voc. flörēs	jūr a	\mathbf{opera}	corpora
Abl. flöribus	jūr ibus	oper ibus	corporibus

- 1. Stems and Case-Suffixes. In the Paradigms observe —
- 1) That the stems are flos, jūs, opos, and corpos.
- 2) That opus has the variable vowel, e, u, and corpus, o, u.
- 3) That **s** of the stem becomes **r** between two vowels: flos, floris for flosis).
- 4) That the Nominative and Vocative Singular omit the case-suffix; see 58, 60, 1, 3).

LESSON XXIII.

THIRD DECLENSION. — RULE I. — EXERCISES.

59. Examine the following examples.

1. Servius rēx.

Servius THE KING. 2. Servius rēx erat. Servius was king.

3. Artemīsia, Mausōlī uxor. Artemisia, THE WIFE of Mausolus.

4. Artemīsia Mausōlī *uxor* erat. Artemisia was the wife of Mausolus.

Note 1.— In the first example $r\bar{e}x$ is an Appositive; see 28, Rule II. In the second example, however, $r\bar{e}x$ is predicated or affirmed of Servius, — Servius was king, — and is called a Predicate Noun. $R\bar{e}x$ erat is the Predicate of the sentence of which Servius is the subject. In the third example uxor is an Appositive, while in the fourth it is a Predicate Noun, predicated of Artemisia.

Note 2. — In the second and fourth examples observe that $r\bar{e}x$ and xxor are in the same case as the nouns of which they are predicated, i.e. in the Nominative. This usage is expressed in the following

RULE I. - Predicate Nouns.1

362. A noun predicated of another noun denoting the same person or thing agrees with it in CASE:

¹ Compare this Rule with Rule II.; see 28.

Brūtus cūstōs 1 libertātis fuit, Brutus was the GUARDIAN of liberty. Liv. Servius rēx est dēclārātus, Servius was declared KING. Liv. Orestem sē esse dīxit, he said that he was ORESTES. Cic.

60. Vocabulary.

Bellum, i, n. Brūtus, ī, m. Cāria, ae, f. Cato, onis, m. Causa, ae, f. Cicero, onis, m. Exsul, ulis, m. and f. Frāter, frātris, m. Herodotus, i, m. Historia, ae, f. Imperator, oris, m. Libertās, ātis, f. Mausolus, i, m. Numa, ae, m. Ōrātor, ōris, m. Uxor, $\bar{\text{oris}}, f$. Victor, oris, m. Vindex, vindicis, m. and f.

mar. Brutus, a Roman name. Caria, a country in Asia Minor. Cato, a Roman name. cause. Cicero, a Roman orator and statesman. exile. brother. Herodotus, a Greek historian. history. general, commander. liberty, freedom. Mausolus, King of Caria. Numa, second of the legendary kings of Rome. orator. wife. conqueror. defender.

61. Translate into English.

Cicerŏ exsul erat.
 Nonne consul bellum timēbat?
 Bellum timēbat.
 Numa erat bonus rēx.
 Cicerŏ consul vīctorem laudat.
 Numa rēx patriam amābat.
 Orātor Numam laudat.
 Cicerŏ consul erat.
 Vindex lībertātis.
 Brūtus, vindex lībertātis.
 Poēta imperātorem laudat.
 13.

¹In these examples $c\bar{u}st\bar{o}s$, $r\bar{e}x$, and Orestem are all predicate nouns, and agree in case respectively with $Br\bar{u}tus$, Servius, and $s\bar{e}$.

² Libertātis is in the Genitive, depending upon vindex, according to 28, Rule XVI. The Genitive generally follows its noun, as in this instance, but sometimes, especially when emphatic, it precedes, as in belli causa below.

³ Vindex in 10 is an Appositive, according to 28, Rule II., but in 11 it is a Predicate Noun, according to 59, Rule I.

Tullia bellī causa erat. 14. Tullia, rēgis fīlia. 15. Herodotus, pater historiae. 16. Catŏ, māgnus imperātor. 17. Catŏ māgnus imperātor erat.

18. Jūstitia, rēgīna virtūtum. 19. Jūstitia est rēgīna virtūtum. 20. Artemīsia rēgis² uxor erat. 21. Artemīsia Mausōlī, Cariae rēgis,³ uxor erat. 22. Virtūs est comes sapientiae. 23. Virtūtēs sunt comitēs sapientiae. 24. Jūdex virtūtem rēgis laudat. 25. Virtūtēs rēgis bonī laudābat. 26. Poētae virtūtēs Numae, rēgis bonī, laudābunt. 27. Rēx bonus⁴ est. 28. Pater jūdicis rēgem bonum laudābit. 29. Tulliam, rēgis fīliam,⁵ accūsābant.

62. Translate into Latin.

1. Cicero was an orator. 2. He was a great orator. 3. Mausolus was king. 4. Was he not king of Caria? 5. He was king of Caria. 6. Poets will praise the great commander. 7. They praise the father of history. 8. Does not the consul praise his brother? 9. He praises his brother.

10. The soldiers fear the king. 11. Latinus was the king. 12. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus. 13. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus, the king. 14. The daughter of the king was praising the faithful slave. 15. The orator will praise the wisdom of the judge. 16. Cicero, the orator, praises the bravery of the conqueror. 17. Cicero, the consul, praises the bravery of the soldiers. 18. The judge praises the wisdom of Cicero, the consul.

¹ Filia governs $r\bar{e}gis$, according to Rule XVI., but is itself in apposition with Tullia, according to Rule II. The appositive generally follows its noun.

 $^{^2}$ Remember that the Genitive sometimes precedes the governing word, especially when it is emphatic.

What is the construction of regis? See 28, Rule II.

⁴ See 40, Rule XXXIV.

⁵ Explain the case of *filiam*. See 28 and 16, Rules II. and ∇ .

⁶ A Predicate Noun. See 59, Rule I.

⁷ In what case will you put the Latin word? See 28, Rule II.

LESSON XXIV.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS II. — I STEMS.

63. Lesson from the Grammar.

CLASS II. — I STEMS.

62. Stems ending in I.—Nouns in is and 5s, not increasing in the Genitive.

	Tussis, f.,	Turris, F.,	Īgnis, м.,	Hostis, M. & F.,	Nübēs, F.,
	cough.	tower.	fire.	enemy.	cloud.
			SINGULAR.	-	
Nom.	. tuss is	turr is	īgn is	host is	nūb ēs
Gen.	tuss is	turr is	ĩgn is	hostis	nüb is
Dat.	$\mathbf{tuss}\mathbf{\bar{I}}$	turrī	īgn ī	host	nūb ī
Acc.	tuss im	turr im, e n	n ignem	host em	nüb em
Voc.	tuss is	turris	ĩgn is	host is	nüb és
Abl.	$\mathbf{tuss}\mathbf{I}$	turrī, e	īgn ī, e	hoste	nūbe
			PLURAL.		
Nom.	tussēs	turr ē s	$ar{ ext{rgn}}ar{ extbf{e}} extbf{s}$	$\mathrm{host}\mathbf{ar{e}s}$	nūb ēs
Gen.	tussium	turr itum	ígn ium	host ium	nūb ium
Dat.	tussib us	turr ibus	īgn ibu :	s host ibus	nūb ibus
Acc.	tuss ēs, īs	turr ēs, īs	īgn ēs, ī	s host ēs, īs	nūb ēs, īs
Voc_{\bullet}	tuss ēs	turrēs	īgn ēs	$\mathrm{host}\mathbf{ar{e}s}$	nūb ēs
Abl.	tuss ibus	turr ibus	īgn ibu	s host ibus	nūb ibus

- I. Paradigms. Observe —
- 1. That the stems are tussi, turri, $\bar{\imath}gni$, hosti, and $n\bar{u}bi$.
- 2. That the case-endings, including the characteristic i, which disappears in certain cases, are as follows:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. is, ēs	ēs
Gen. is	ium
Dat_{\cdot} i	ibus
Acc. im, em	ēs, īs
Voc. is	ēs
Abl. ĭ, e	ibus

 $^{^{\}rm 1}$ That is, having as many syllables in the Nominative Singular as in the Genitive Singular.

63. Stems ending in I.—Neuters in e, al, and ar.

Ŋ	Iare, <i>sea</i> .	Animal, animal.	Calcar, spu	r.
Nom. Gen. Dat. Acc. Voc. Abl.	mare maris mare mare mare	SINGULAR. animal animāl īs animāl ī animal animal animāl ī	calcar calcār īs calcār ī calcār ī calcar calcar	Case-Endings. e— 1 is i e— e— i
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	mar ia	animāl ia	c alcār ia	ia
Gen.	mar ium	animāl ium	calcār ium	ium
Dat.	mar ibus	animāl ibus	calcār ibus	ibus
Acc.	mar ia	animāl ia	c alcār ia	ia
Voc.	mar ia	animāl ia	calcār ia	ia
Abl.	mar ibus	animāl ibus	calcār ibus	i bus

- 1. Paradigms. Observe —
- 1) That the stem-ending i is changed to e in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of mare, and dropped in the same cases of animal (for animāle) and calcar (for calcāre).
 - 2) That the case-endings include the characteristic i.

64. Stems ending in **I.**—Nouns in **s** and **x** generally preceded by a consonant.

	Cliëns, M. & F., client.	Urbs, f., city.	Arx, f., citadel.	Mūs,² m., mouse.
		SINGULAR.		
	cliën s	$\mathbf{u}\mathrm{r}\mathrm{b}\mathbf{s}$	arx	mūs
Gen.	clientis ⁸	urbis	arc is	mūr is
•	client ī	urb ī	arcī	mür i
Acc.	client em	urb em	arc em	mūr em
Voc.	cliën s	\mathbf{urbs}	arx	müs
Abl.	client e	urbe	arce	mūr e

¹ The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting.

² Cliens is for clientis, urbs for urbis, arx for arcis, and mūs for mūsis. Mūs, originally an s-stem, Greek $\mu \tilde{v}_5$, became an i-stem in Latin by assuming i.

⁸ The vowel e is here short before nt, but long before ns; see p. 9, 16, note 2. Indeed, it seems probable that nt and nd shorten a preceding vowel, as ns lengthens it.

PLURAL.

Nom.	client ēs	$\mathrm{urb} ar{\mathbf{e}} \mathbf{s}$	arc ēs	mūr ēs
Gen.	client ĭum	urb ituum	arcium	mūr iuum
Dat.	client ibus	urb ibus	arc ibus	mūr ibus
Acc.	client ēs , īs	urb ēs, īs	arc ēs , īs	mūr ē s, īs
Voc.	client ēs	urb ēs	arces	mür ēs
Abl.	clientibus	urb ibus	arc ibus	mūr ibus

I. PARADIGMS. — Observe —

- 1) That the stems are clienti, urbi, arci, and mūri.
- 2) That these nouns are declined in the singular precisely like consonant-stems, and in the plural precisely like all other masculine and feminine i-stems.
 - 65. Summary of I-stems. To I-stems belong —
- 1. All nouns in is and ēs which do not increase in the Genitive; see 63, 62.
 - 2. Neuters in e, al (for alis), and ar (for aris); see 63, 63.
- 3. Many nouns in \mathbf{s} and \mathbf{x} especially (1) nouns in \mathbf{ns} and \mathbf{rs} , and (2) monosyllables in \mathbf{s} and \mathbf{x} preceded by a consonant; see 63, 64.
- 66, 4. LOCATIVE. Many names of towns have a Locative Singular in \bar{i} or e denoting the place in which (11, 46, 4). Karthägin \bar{i} or Karthägine, at Carthage, Tibur \bar{i} or Tibure, at Tibur.

LESSON XXV.

GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION.—RULE XXXIII.— EXERCISES.

64. Lesson from the Grammar.

GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION.

99. Nouns in the third declension ending in

ŏ, or, ōs, er, and in ēs and es

increasing in the Genitive, are masculine: sermo, discourse; dolor, pain; mos, custom; agger, mound; pes, Genitive pedis, foot.

¹ That is, have no more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative.

105. Nouns of the third declension ending in

ās, as, is, ys, x, in ēs

not increasing in the Genitive, and in spreceded by a consonant, are feminine: aetās, age; nāvis, ship; chlamys, cloak; pāx, peace; nūbēs, cloud; urbs, city.

111. Nouns of the third declension ending in

a, e, ī, y, c, l, n, t, ār, ar, ur, ūs, and us

are neuter: 1 poēma, poem; mare, sea; lāc, milk; animal, animal; carmen, song; caput, head; corpus, body.

65. Examine the following examples.

1. Apud concilium. In the presence of the council.

Post castra.
 Ab urbe.
 Prō castrīs.
 Behind THE CAMP.
 From THE CITY.
 Before THE CAMP.

Note. — Observe that in the first and second of these examples, the nouns after the prepositions apud and post are in the Accusative, and that in the third and fourth the nouns after ab and $pr\bar{o}$ are in the Ablative. This general usage is expressed in the following

RULE XXXIII. - Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with prepositions: ²

¹ Nouns whose gender is determined by Signification (1, 42) may be exceptions to these rules for gender as determined by Endings.

² The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relation of objects to each other: apud jūdicem dīxit, 'he spoke in the presenze of the judge'; prō castrīs, 'before the camp.' Here apud and prō are prepositions. In the Vocabulary, each preposition, as it occurs, will be marked as such; and the case which may be used with it will be specified. The following examples illustrate the use of prepositions: in Asiam profugit, he fled into Asia; in Italia fuit, he was in Italy; sub montem, toward the mountain; sub monte, at the foot of the mountain; ad urbem, to the city; apud concilium, in the presence of the council; contra nătūram, contrary to nature; ab urbe, from the city; ex Asiā, out of Asia.

Ad amīcum scrīpsī, I have written to a friend. Cic. In cūriam, into the senate-house. Liv. In Italia, in Italy. Nep. Pro castris, before the camp. Caes.

66. Vocabulary.

Aedificat, Ante, prep. w. acc.

Apud, prep. w. acc.

Caesar, aris, m.

Cīvis, cīvis, m.2 Cīvitās, ātis, f.

Contrā, prep. w. acc. Habitat,

Hostis, is, m. and f.

In, prep. w. acc. and abl. Lūx, lūcis, f. Multus, a, um,

Nāvis, is, f.2

Oppügnat,

Patria, ae, f. Pro, prep. w. abl. Pūgnat,

Rōmulus, ī, m. Superat.

he builds.

before.

in the presence of, among, in; of an author, in the works of.

Caesar, the celebrated Roman statesman and general.

citizen. state.

against, contrary to. he resides, lives, dwells.

enemy. into, in. light. much, many.

ship.

he assaults, attacks, storms.

native country. for, before. he fights.

Romulus, the legendary founder he conquers.

lof Rome.

67. Translate into English.

1. Cīvēs rēgem laudant. 2. Rēx cīvēs laudat. 3. Puer leonem timēbit. 4. Leo puerum terret. 5. Urbs est māgna. 6. Estne pulchra? 7. Est pulchra. 8. Rēx hostēs superābit. 9. Caesar multās navēs habēbat. 10. Apud Herodotum sunt fābulae. 11. Apud Herodotum, patrem historiae, sunt multae fābulae. 12. Mīlitēs pro patriā pūgnābant. 13.

¹ Here the Ablative Italia is used with in, though, in the second example, the Accusative cūriam is used with the same preposition. The rule is, that the Latin preposition in is used with the Accusative when it means into, and that it is used with the Ablative when it means in.

² Decline cīvis like īgnis; nāvis like turris.

⁸ See Rule XXXIII., 432.

Mīlitēs pro lībertāte pūgnant. 14. Cīvis bonus lēgibus patriae pāret.

15. Cönsul in urbe habitābat. 16. Hostēs urbem oppūgnābant. 17. Rēx urbēs multās oppūgnābit. 18. Caesar hostēs superābat. 19. Cōnsul virtūtem hostium timēbat. 20. Mīlitēs cōnsulibus pārēbunt. 21. Caesar turrim oppūgnābat. 22. Rēx turrēs oppūgnābit. 23. Hostēs arcem oppūgnābunt. 24. Hostēs nāvēs multās habent. 25. Caesarī pūgnam nūntiant. 26. Cīvēs bonī lēgibus pārent. 27. Cōnsulēs virtūtem hostium timent.

68. Translate into Latin.

1. The consul was attacking the tower. 2. He had (was having) many soldiers. 3. The king had a beautiful ship.
4. The consul had many ships. 5. The ships of the consul were large. 6. The commander destroyed the city. 7. He destroyed the city contrary to the law. 8. Caesar conquers the king. 9. The citizens praise the law. 10. They praise the laws. 11. They praise the laws of the state. 12. The judge will obey the laws. 13. The citizens will obey the laws of the state. 14. The consul was building a large ship.

15. The citizens will build many ships. 16. The king has a good ship. 17. The soldiers were fighting for liberty. 18. The consul will attack the city. 19. He will conquer the enemy. 20. The conqueror is in the city. 21. The father of the king resides in the city. 22. The father of the good queen will reside in the city. 23. Good citizens will fight for their country. 24. The soldiers of the good king were assaulting many cities of the enemy.

¹ See 65, Rule XXXIII. The words contrary to are to be rendered by a single Latin preposition. We have already learned that the English prepositions of, to, by, with, etc., may generally be rendered into Latin without prepositions by simply using the proper case; but many prepositions, as before, between, behind, around, contrary to, must be rendered by corresponding prepositions.

LESSON XXVI.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

69. In verbs of the Third Conjugation, the Third Person in the *singular* and *plural* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* mood has the following

ENDINGS.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
Singular,	it	ēbat	$\mathbf{e}\mathbf{t}$
Plural,	unt	ēbant	$_{ m ent}$

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Pres. regit, he rules; Imp. regēbat, he was ruling; Fut. reget, he will rule; regunt, they rule. regebant, they were ruling. regent, they will rule.

70. Examples. — Adverbs.

1. Mīles pūgnat.

The soldier fights.

2. Mīles fortiter pūgnat.

The soldier fights beavely.

3. Mīles $n\bar{o}n$ pūgnat.

The soldier does not fight.

Note. —In these examples fortiter (bravely), and $n\bar{o}n$ (not) are adverbs modifying $p\bar{u}gnat$. The use of adverbs is expressed in the following

RULE LXI.—Use of Adverbs.

551. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS:

Sapientës fëliciter 1 vivunt, the wise live happily. Cic. Facile doctissimus, unquestionably the most learned. Cic. Haud aliter, not otherwise. Verg.

¹ The Adverb is, therefore, the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. Fēliciter, 'happily,' is an adverb qualifying the verb vīvunt, 'live' (live happily). Facile, 'easily,' unquestionably,' is an adverb qualifying the adjective doctissimus, 'the most learned' (easily, i.e. unquestionably the most learned). Haud, 'not,' is an adverb qualifying the adverb aliter, 'otherwise' (not otherwise). The adverb in Latin usually stands directly before the word which it qualifies, as in these examples.

71. Adverbs, unlike Nouns and Adjectives, from which they are largely derived, are *indeclinable*. They have a variety of endings, of which we now notice e, o, and ter: modestē, 'modestly'; saepe, 'often'; tūtō, 'safely'; fortiter, 'bravely.'

72. Vocabulary.

to.

briefly.

he leads.

happily.

bravely.

he reads.

he sends.

modestly.

number.

he rules.

he writes.

simply.

often.

oration, speech.

not.

he says, speaks.

attentively, diligently.

ambassador; lieutenant.

about, concerning, in regard to.

Ad, prep. with acc.

Breviter, adv.

Dē, prep. with abl.

Dīcit,

Diligenter, adv.

Dūcit,

Fēlīciter, adv. Fortiter, adv.

Lēgātus, ī, m.

Legit,

Mittit,

Modestē, adv. Non, adv.

Numerus, ī, m.

Ōrātiō, ōnis, f.

Regit,

Saepe, adv. Scribit.

Simpliciter, adv.

Vērum, \bar{i} , n.

dv.

 $truth. \ he \ lives.$

73. Translate into English.

1. Dīcit, dīcēbant, dīcet. 2. Legunt, legēbat, legent. 3. Dīcunt, scrībunt. 4. Dīcēbat, scrībēbat. 5. Dīcent, scrībent. 6. Dūcit, dūcēbat, dūcet. 7. Regunt, regēbat, regent. 8. Cōnsul modestē dīcēbat. 9. Puerī modestē dīcunt. 10. Rēx breviter dīcet. 11. Cōnsulēs breviter dīcunt. 12. Jūdex fēlīciter vīvit. 13. Cīvēs fēlīciter vīvēbant. 14. Pāstōrēs simpliciter vīvunt.

15. Jūdex librum legēbat. 16. Jūdicēs ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis legēbant. 17. Jūdicēs bonī ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis cōnsulis

dīligenter legēbant. 18. Epistulās cōnsulis dīligenter legent. 19. Hostēs lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. 20. Hostēs lēgātōs ad rēgem mittent. 21. Mīlitēs fortiter pūgnābant. 22. Cōnsul amīcōs multōs habēbat. 23. Cōnsul māgnum amīcōrum numerum habēbat.

74. Translate into Latin.

1. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 2. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule. 3. They lead, they rule. 4. They were leading, they were ruling. 5. They will lead, they will rule. 6. The judge will speak the truth. 7. They speak the truth. 8. They will speak modestly. 9. Cicero was writing to a friend. 10. The boys will write often. 11. Cicero was writing about friendship.

12. The king is writing a book. 13. He will write many books. 14. The boy is writing about virtue. 15. The boys will write about the victory. 16. The king lives happily. 17. The father of the good queen was living happily. 18. He was reading a good book. 19. The boys will read good books. 20. Caesar sends an ambassador to the enemy. 21. The king will send ambassadors to the enemy.

LESSON XXVII.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION. — PERFECT TENSE.

75. In verbs of the FOURTH CONJUGATION, the THIRD PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* mood has the following

ENDINGS.

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
Singular,	it	${f i}ar{{ m e}}{f bat}$	iet
Plural.	iunt	${f i}ar{{f e}}{f b}{f a}{f n}{f t}$	ient

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Pres. audit, he hears; Imp. audicbat, he was hearing; Fut. audict, he will hear; audiunt, they hear. audiebant, they were hearing. audient, they will hear.

76. In verbs of the Four Conjugations, the Third Person in the *singular* and *plural* of the *perfect* tense of the *indicative* mood has the following

ENDINGS.

Si	PLURAL.	
Conj. I.	āvit	āvērunt
Conj. II.	uit	uērunt
Conj. III.	sit	\mathbf{s} erun \mathbf{t}
Conj. IV.	īvit	īvērunt

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

I. amāvit, he has loved; II. monuit, he has advised; III. rēxit, he has ruled;

IV. audivit, he has heard;

amāv**ērunt**, they have loved.¹ monu**ērunt**, they have advised. rēx**ērunt**,²they have ruled. audīv**ērunt**, they have heard.

77. In the verb Sum, the Third Person in the singular and plural of the perfect tense of the indicative mood has the following forms:

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

fuit, he has been, he was ;

fuerunt, they have been, they were.

78. Examples. — Ablative.

- 1. Virtūte rēgnum tenuit.
- He obtained the kingdom by Merit.
- 2. Oppidum vallō munīvit. He fortified the town by means of a rampart.

Note. — Observe in these examples that virtūte, 'by merit,' and vallō, 'by means of a rampart,' are both in the Ablative. This Latin idiom is expressed in the following

¹ Or he loved, they loved. 2 Rexit=reg-sit, rexerunt=reg-serunt; p. 3, 30.

RULE XXV .-- Ablative of Means.

420. Instrument and Means are denoted by the Ablative:

Cornibus taurī sē tūtantur, bulls defend themselves WITH THEIR HORNS. Cic. Glöriā dūcitur, he is led BY GLORY. Cic. Sol omnia lūce collustrat, the sun illumines all things with its light. Cic. Lacte vïvunt, they live upon milk. Caes. Tellūs saucia vomeribus, the earth turned (wounded) with the ploughshare. Ovid.

LESSON XXVIII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION AND PERFECT TENSE. — EXERCISES.

79. Vocabulary.

high. Altus, a, um, closely, soundly. Artē, adv. Castra, ōrum, n. pl. camp. he quards. Cüstödit, 4,1 learner, pupil. Discipulus, i. m. he sleeps. Dormit, 4, Ērudit, 4, he instructs. ditch, moat. Fossa, ae, f. runaway, deserter. Ito France. Fugitivus, ī, m. Gaul, a country nearly corresponding Gallia, ae, f. the Helvetii or Helvetians, a people of Helvētiī, ōrum, m. pl.[Switzerland. Legiō, ōnis, f. legion. he fortifies. Mūnit, 4, wall. Mūrus, ī, m. Posteä, adv. afterward. fight, battle. Pûgna, ae, f. Roman. Romanus, i, m. discourse, conversation. Sermő, onis. m. Vallum, ī, n. rampart. Vox. vocis, f. voice.

¹ As the ending of the third person singular of the present indicative is the same in the fourth conjugation as in the third, verbs of the fourth conjugation for the present will be distinguished in the vocabularies by the numeral 4.

80. Translate into English.

- Audiunt, audiebat, audient, audīvit.
 Ērudit, ērudiebant, ērudiet, ērudīvērunt.
 Mūnit, cūstōdit, cūstōdient, mūnient.
 Puerī dormiēbant.
 Puer artē dormiēbat.
 Pāstōrēs artē dormiunt.
 Mīlitēs artē dormīvērunt.
 Mīlitēs arcem mūniēbant.
 Caesar castra mūnīvit.
 Legiōnēs castra mūniēbant.
 Hostēs fortiter pūgnāvērunt.
 Hostēs urbem oppūgnāvērunt.
 Jūdex bonus tyrannum timuit.
 Cīvēs Pīsistratum tyrannum timuērunt.
- 15. Hostēs urbem mūrō mūniēbant. 16. Cōnsul urbem mūrō altō mūnīvit. 17. Rōmānī Helvētiōs superāvērunt. 18. Mīlitēs castra fossā mūniēbant. 19. Caesar castra vallō mūnīvit. 20. Fugitīvī hostibus pūgnam nūntiāvērunt. 21. Rōmānī posteā hostēs superāvērunt. 22. Caesar in Galliā fuit. 23. Hostēs nāvēs multās habuērunt. 24. Cicerŏ cōnsul epistulās multās scrībit. 25. Cōnsul vōcēs mīlitum audīvit. 26. Puerī sermōnem dē amīcitiā audient.

81. Translate into Latin.

- 1. He hears, he guards. 2. They hear, they guard. 3. He was hearing, they were sleeping. 4. He was sleeping, they were hearing. 5. He will hear, they will hear. 6. They have slept, they have heard. 7. The boys heard the oration. 8. The pupils heard the conversation. 9. They did not hear the oration. 10. The citizens are fortifying the city. 11. They will guard the beautiful city. 12. The soldiers will guard the city. 13. They will guard the temple.
- 14. The shepherd was sleeping soundly. 15. The shepherds will sleep soundly. 16. Caesar heard the voice of the soldier. 17. Caesar hears the voices of the soldiers. 18. The soldier heard the voice of Caesar. 19. They heard the conversation in regard to the consul. 20. Caesar was fortifying the camp with a rampart. 21. The soldiers will fortify the camp with a moat.

LESSON XXIX.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

82. Lesson from the Grammar.

- 152. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes:
- I. Those which have in the Nominative Singular three different forms—one for each gender.
- II. Those which have two forms—the masculine and feminine being the same.
- III. Those which have but one form—the same for all genders.
- 153. Adjectives of Three Endings in this declension have the stem in i, and are declined as follows:

Ācer, sharp.1	SINGULAR.	¢.
MASO.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. ācer 2	ācr is	ā cr e
Gen. ācr is	ācr is	ācr is
Dat. ācrī	ā cr ī	ācr ī
Acc. ācrem	ācr em	ã cr e
Voc. ācer	ācr is	ãcr e
Abl. ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
	PLURAL.	
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. ācrēs	ācr ēs	ācr ia
Gen. äcrium	ācr ium	ācr ium
Dat. ācribus	ācr ibus	ācr ibus
Acc. ācrēs, Is	ācr ēs, īs	ācr ia
Voc. ācrēs	ācr ēs	ācr ia
Abl. ācribus	ācr ibus	ācr ibus

¹ ĀCER is declined like *ignis* in the Masc. and Fem., and like *mare* (63, 63) in the Neut., except in the Nom and Voc. Sing. Masc., and in the Abl. Sing.

² These forms in er are like those in er of Decl. II. in dropping the ending in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., and in developing final r into er: $\bar{a}cer$ for $\bar{a}cris$, stem $\bar{a}cris$.

154. Adjectives of Two Endings are declined as follows:

Trīstis,	sad.1	Tristior, sadder.	1
<i>'</i>		GULAR.	
M. AND	F. NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom. trīstis	\mathbf{triste}	trīstior	trīstius
Gen. trīstis	trīst is	trīstiōr is	trīstiōr is
Dat. trīstī	trīst ī	trīstiōr ī	trīstiōr ī
Acc. tristen	n triste	trīstiōr em	trīstius
Voc. trīstis	trïste	tristior	trīstius
Abl. trīstī	\mathbf{t} rīst $\mathbf{\bar{i}}$	trīstiōr e (ī)²	trīstiōr e (ī)
	PLI	URAL.	
Nom. trīstēs	trīst ia	trīstiōr ēs	trīstiōr a
Gen. trīstiu	m trīstium	trīstiōr um	trīstiōr um
Dat. trīstib	us trīstibus	trīstiōr ibus	trīstiōr ibus
Acc. trīstēs	, īs trīstia	trīstiōr ēs (īs)	trīstiōr a
Voc. trīstēs	·	trīstiōr ēs	trīstiōr a
Abl. trīst il		trīstiōr ibus	trīstiōr ikus

83. Vocabulary.

Ācer, ācris, ācre,	sharp, severe.
Aetās, ātis, f .	age.
Cōpia, ae, f .	abundance, supply.
Crūdēlis, e,	cruel.
Fertilis, e,	fertile.
Fortis, e,	brave.
Gallus, i, m.	Gaul.
Germānus, ī, m.	German.
Incolit,	he inhabits.
Inūtilis, e,	useless.
Nāvālis, e,	naval.
Occupat,	he seizes, takes possession of.
Omnis, e,	all.
Pābulum, ī, n.	fodder.
Per, prep. w. acc.	through, on account of, by means
Post, prep. with acc.	after. [of, by, during, for.
Singulāris, e,	remarkable, singular.
Timor, oris, m.	fear.
Ūtilis, e.	useful.

¹ Trīstis and trīste are declined like ācris and ācre. Trīstior is the comparative of tristis.

² Enclosed endings are rare.

84. Translate into English.

- 1. Cīvis est fortis. 2. Cīvēs fortēs erunt. 3. Rēx est beātus. 4. Estne fortis? 5. Fortis est. 6. Librī sunt ūtilēs. 7. Gallia fertilis erat. 8. Cīvēs fortiter pūgnant. 9. Fertilēs agrōs habent. 10. Verba sunt ūtilia. 11. Lēx ācris est. 12. Lēgēs ācrēs sunt. 13. Mīles est fortis. 14. Mīlitēs sunt fortës. 15. Consul virtutem militis fortis laudat. Consul est orator.
- 17. Cato magnus imperator est. 18. Timor omnes mīlitēs occupāvit. 19. Timor omnēs hostēs occupābit. Gallī fortēs sunt. 21. Caesar Gallös fortēs superāvit. 22. Germānī agrōs fertilēs incolunt. 23. Pābulī copia in agrīs fertilibus erat. 24. Lēgēs sunt ūtilēs. 25. Cīvēs bonī lēgibus ūtilibus pārent. 26. Jūdicēs per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs erant. 27. Timor omnēs cīvēs occupābit. 28. Agrī Gallörum fertiles erant. 29. Mīles verba ducis fortis audit.

85. Translate into Latin.

1. Will the brave leader obey the words of the consul? 2. He will obey the words of the consul. 3. Is he a good commander? 4. He is a good commander. 5. He is brave. 6. Will not the books be useful? 7. They will be useful. 8. The leaders of the soldiers are brave. 9. The brother of the consul is a brave soldier. 10. The brother of the king was a severe judge. 11. The brother of the orator will be a severe judge.

12. The brave soldiers were guarding the camp. 13. The soldiers will be brave. 14. They will all be brave. Caesar praised the brave soldiers. 16. The soldiers will hear the words of the brave leader. 17. The field is fertile. 18. The fields are fertile. 19. Fear is taking possession of all the citizens. 20. There will be an abundance of fodder in

the fields of the Germans.

¹ Genitive according to Rule XVI.

LESSON XXX.

ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION.—COMPARISON OF

86. Lesson from the Grammar.

155. Adjectives of One Ending generally end in s or x, but sometimes in l or r.

156. Audāx, audacious.1

Fēlīx, happy.1

	SINGUL	AK.	
M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom. audāx	audāx	fëlīx	$f\bar{\mathbf{e}}l\bar{\mathbf{i}}\mathbf{x}$
Gen. audācis	audāc is	fēļīc is	fēlīc is
	audāc ī	fēlīc ī	fēlīc ī
Dat. audācī Acc. audāc em	audāx	fëlic em	fēlīx
	audāx	fēlīx	fēlīx
Voc. audāx	***************************************	fēlīc ī (e)	fēlīcī (e)
Abl. audācī (e)	audāc ī (e)	Tenci (e)	Tonor (e)
	PLURA		en1- 9-
<i>Nom.</i> audāc ēs	audāc ia	fēlīc ēs	fēlīc ia
Gen. audācium	audāc iuum	fēlīc ium	fēlīc ium
Dat. audāc ibus	audāc ibus	fēlīc ibus	fēlīc ibus
Acc. audācēs (Is)	audāc ia	fēlīc ēs (īs)	fēlīc ia
Voc. audācēs	audāc ia	fēlīc ēs	fēlīc ia
Abl. audācibus	audāc ibus	fēlīc ibus	fēlīc ibus
157. Amāns, <i>l</i> e	pving.	Prūdēns,	prudent.
	SINGUI	AR. M. AND F.	NEUT.
M. AND F.	NEUT.	MI. AND F.	nwidana

		SINGULAR		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom	amāns	amāns	prūdēns	prūd ēns
	amantis	amantis 2	prūdentiis	prūdent is 2
	amant I	amant X	prüdentī	prūdent ī
	amantem	amāns	prüdentem	prūdēns
	amāns	amāns	prūdēns	prūdēns
		amante (I)	prūdentī (e)	prūdentī (e)
Abl.	amante (I)	amante (1)	prudenta (e)	pradomi- (-)

¹ Observe that $\bar{\imath}$ in the Ablative Singular, and ia, ium, and is in the Plural, are the regular case-endings for i-stems. See 63.

² According to Ritschl, Schmitz, and others, the e which is long in $pr\bar{u}d\bar{e}ns$ before ns is short in all other forms of the word, i.e. before nt. In the same manner the a which is long in $am\bar{a}ns$, is according to Ritschl thort in amantis, $amant\bar{i}$, etc.

		PLURAL.		_
Nom.	amantēs	amantia.	prūdent ēs	prūdent ia
Gen.	amantium	amantium	prūdent ium	prüdent iuum
Dat.	amant ibus	amantibus	prūdent ibus	prūdent ibus
Acc.	$\operatorname{amant}\mathbf{ar{e}s}\left(\mathbf{ar{i}s}\right)$	amant ia	prūdent ēs (īs)	prūdentia
Voc.	amant ēs	amant ia	prūdent ēs	prūdentia
Abl.	amantibus	amant ibus	prüdent ibus	prüdent ibus

Note.—The participle $am\bar{a}ns$ differs in declension from the adjective $pr\bar{u}d\bar{c}ns$ only in the Ablative Singular, where the participle usually has the ending e, and the adjective, \bar{i} .

Comparison of Adjectives.

- 160. Adjectives have three forms, called the Positive degree, the Comparative, and the Superlative: altus, altior, altissimus, high, higher, highest. These forms denote different degrees of the quality expressed by the adjective.
- 161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:
 - I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON, by endings.
 - II. Adverbial Comparison, by adverbs.

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:

COMPARATIVE. SUPERLATIVE.	
MASC. FEM. NEUT. MASC.	Neu t. simu m

Altus, altior, altissimus: high, higher, highest. Levis, levior, levissimus: light, lighter, lightest.

1. Vowel Stems lose their final vowel: alto, altior, altissimus.

¹ Each of these forms of the adjective is declined. Thus altus and altissimus are declined like bonus, 39, 148: altus, a, um; altī, ae, ī, etc., altissimus, a, um; altīssimī, ae, ī, etc. Altior is declined like trīstior, 32, 154; altior, altius; altioris, etc.

165. The following are compared irregularly:

bonus, māgnus,	melior, mājor,	optimus, māximus, minimus.	good, better, best. great, greater, greatest. small, smaller, smallest.
parvus,	minor,	minimus,	small, smaller, smallest.

166. Positive Wanting.

citerior, deterior, interior, ocior.	citimus, dēterrimus, intimus, ōcissimus,	nearer, worse, inner, swifter,		prior, propior, ūlterior,	prīmus, pröximus, ūltimus,	former, nearer, farther.
---	---	---	--	---------------------------------	----------------------------------	--------------------------------

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs, *magis*, more, and *māximē*, most, to the positive:

Arduus, magis arduus, māximē arduus. Arduous, more arduous, most arduous.

LESSON XXXI.

THIRD DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.—COMPARISON.—EXERCISES.

87. Examples. — Comparison.

Aurum gravius est quam argentum. Gold is heavier THAN SILVER.
 Aurum argentō gravius est. Gold is heavier THAN SILVER.

Note. — Observe (1) that in the first example, the Latin construction is the same as the English, and that the two nouns compared, aurum and argentum, are in the same case, i.e. in the Nominative, and (2) that in the second example quam is omitted, and that the second noun is put in the Ablative. This Latin idiom is expressed in the following

RULE XXIII. - Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est amābilius virtūte, nothing is more lovely THAN VIRTUE. Cic. Quid est melius bonitūte, what is better THAN GOODNESS? Cic. Scīmus solem mājorem esse terrā, we know that the sun is larger than the earth. Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hibernia minor quam *Britannia* existimātur, *Ireland is considered* smaller than Britain. Caes. Agrīs quam *urbī* terribilior, more terrible to the country than to the city. Liv.

Note.—Conjunctions are mere connectives, and are without inflection. *Quam* is a conjunction.

88. Comparison of Adverbs.

Most adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison. The comparative is the accusative neuter singular of the adjective, and the superlative changes the ending ${\bf us}$ of the adjective into long $\bar{\bf e}$:

altus,	altior,	altissimus,	lofty.
altē,	altius,	$altissim\overline{e}$,	loftily.
prūdēns, prūdenter,	prūdentior, prūdentius,	prūdentissimus, prūdentissimē,	prudent. prudently.
practice,	P,	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	

89. Vocabulary.

00.	, ocaoma, g.
Aquil $\bar{\mathrm{e}}$ ia, ae, f .	Aquileia, a town in north-eastern Italy.
Ariovistus, $\bar{\imath}$, m .	Ariovistus, a German king.
Aurum, ī, n.	gold.
Belgae, ārum, m. pl.	the Belgae, or Belgians, a people of
Circum, prep. w. acc.	around, in the vicinity of. [Gaul.
Clārus, a, um,	$clear,\ illustrious.$
Consilium, iī, n.	counsel, plan.
Divitiacus, ī, m.	Divitiacus, a chieftain of the Aedui in
Duplex, duplicis,	double. [Gaul.
Fēlīx, fēlīcis,	happy, fortunate.
Hannibal, alis, m.	Hannibal, a Carthaginian general.
Hiemat,	he winters, passes the winter.

 $^{^1}$ Virtūte = quam virtūs; bonitāte = quam bonitās; terrā = quam terram (sc. esse.)

Homo, hominis, m. and f. man, human being, person.

Infēlix, înfēlīcis, Labiēnus, ī, m. Potēns, potentis, Pretiōsus, a, um, Quam, conj. Sapiēns, sapientis, unhappy, unfortunate.

Labienus, an officer in Caesar's army in powerful.

Gaul.

precious, valuable.

than.

wise.

90. Translate into English.

1. Ōrātor est clārus. 2. Estne clārissimus? 3. Est clārissimus. 4. Ōrātōrēs fuērunt clārī. 5. Ōrātōrēs clāriōrēs¹ sunt. 6. Ōrātōrēs clārissimī erunt. 7. Cōnsul fēlīx erat. 8. Cōnsulēs fēlīcēs sunt. 9. Caesar rēgem īnfēlīcem superāvit. 10. Caesar Ariovistum rēgem superāvit. 11. Caesar Ariovistum, īnfēlīcem Germānōrum rēgem, superāvit. 12. Legiŏ circum Aquilēiam hiemābit. 13. Hannibal īnfēlīx erat. 14. Jūdex sapiēns est. 15. Omnēs cīvēs jūdicem sapientem laudant. 16. Sapientēs hominēs cīvitātem regunt.

17. Caesar Labiēnum laudāvit. 18. Jūdex sapientior erat quam rēx. 19. Turris altior est quam mūrus. 20. Cōnsilium clārius est quam lūx. 21. Cōnsilium lūce clārius est. 22. Cōnsilia omnia lūce sunt clāriōra. 23. Belgae fortissimī sunt. 24. Gallōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae. 25. Mīlitēs nōn pūgnābunt. 26. Hostēs castra altissimō mūrō mūnīvērunt.

91. Translate into Latin.

1. Gold is valuable. 2. Wisdom is more valuable. 3. The king is unfortunate. 4. Is not the consul ill? 5. The consul is ill. 6. Life is precious. 7. Is not gold useful? 8. It is useful. 9. Cato was wise. 10. The Gauls were brave. 11. The Romans were braver than the Gauls. 12. The Gauls were unfortunate. 13. The Romans conquered the unfortunate Gauls. 14. King Divitiacus was very powerful. He

¹ Declined like tristior, 82, 154. Comparatives and superlatives, as well as positives, must agree with their nouns, according to 40 Rule XXXIV.

was the most powerful of all the chiefs. He was the most

powerful of all the Gauls.

15. Virtue is more valuable than gold. 16. Wisdom is more useful than gold. 17. Virtue is better than wisdom. 18. The soldiers are braver than the general. 19. The wall will be double. 20. The enemy will fortify the city with a double wall. 21. The wall was very high. 22. The Gauls were fortifying the city with a very high wall.

LESSON XXXII.

NOUNS. — FOURTH DECLENSION. — FIFTH DECLENSION.

92. Lesson from the Grammar.

FOURTH DECLENSION: U Nouns.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

us-masculine; ū-neuter.

SINGULAR.

CARE-ENDINGS.

They are declined as follows:

Früctus, fruit. Cornü, horn.

		DING CHAIL	CASE LINDINGS	
Nom	. frūct us	corn ü	us	ũ
Gen.	frūct ūs	corn ūs	ūs	ūs
Dat.	frūct uī, ū ¹	corn ü t	uī, ū¹	ū
Acc.	früctum	corn ü	um	ū
Voc.	früct us	corn u	us	ū
Abl.	früct ü	corn u i	ũ,	ū
		PLURAL.		
Non	. früct üs	cornua	ūs	ua.
Gen	früctuum.	cornulum	uum	uum
Dat.	früct ibus	cornibus ·	ibus (ubus) ²	ibus (ubus)
Acc.	früct üs	cornua	ūs	ua
Voc.	frūct ūs	cornua	ūs	ua
Abl.	früct ibus	cornibus	ibus (ubus)	ibus (ubus)

¹ Thus $u\bar{i}$ is contracted into \bar{u} : $fr\bar{u}ctu\bar{i}$, $fr\bar{u}ct\bar{u}$.

² The enclosed endings occur in a few words.

- 1. The STEM in nouns of the fourth declension ends in u: frūctu, cornu.
- 2. The Case-Endings here given contain the characteristic \mathbf{u} , weakened to i in ibus, but retained in ubus; see p. 2, 22.

FIFTH DECLENSION: E Nouns.

120. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **ēs**—feminine, and are declined as follows:

Dies, day.1	Rēs, $thing$.	
	SINGULAR.	Case-Endings.
Nom. diēs	r ēs	ēs
Gen. die or die	r ěī or r ē	ĕī, ē
Dat. die or die	r ĕī or r ē	ĕī, ē
Acc. diem	rem	em
Voc. dies	rës	ēs
Abl. die	rē	ě
	PLURAL.	Case-Endings.
Nom. diēs	r ēs	ēs
Gen. di ērum	r ērum	ērum
Dat. di ēbus	r ēbus	ēbus
Acc. diēs	rēs	ēs
Voc. dies	rēs	ēs
Abl. diebus	rēbus	ēbus

- 1. The Stem of nouns of the fifth declension ends in $\bar{\mathbf{e}}$: $di\bar{e}$, $r\bar{e}$.
- 2. The Case-Endings here given contain the characteristic $\bar{\mathbf{e}}$, which appears in all the cases. It is shortened (1) generally in the ending $\bar{e}\bar{\imath}$ when preceded by a consonant, and (2) regularly in the ending em.

93. Examples. - Time.

- 1. Urbem $h\bar{o}c$ tempore muniunt. They are AT this time fortifying the city.
- 2. Sextō annō. In the sixth year.

Note. — Observe that $h\bar{o}c$ tempore, 'at this time,' and $sext\bar{o}$ ann \bar{o} 'in the sixth year' are both in the *Ablative*. This Latin idiom is expressed in the following

 $^{^{1}}$ By exception, $di\bar{e}s$ is usually masculine in the singular, and always in the plural.

RULE XXXI. - Time.

429. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octōgēsimō annō est mortuus, he died in his eightieth year. Cic. Vēre convēnēre, they assembled in the spring. Liv.

94. Vocabulary.

Aciës, aciëi, f. Adventus, ūs, m.

Avis, is, f.

Cantus, ūs, m.

Comparat, Conspectus, $\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ s, m.

Exercitus, ūs, m.

Impetus, $\bar{u}s$, m.

Īnstruit,

Magistrātus, ūs, m. Manus, ūs, f.¹

Mīlitāris, e, Occāsus, \bar{u} s, m.

Portus, $\bar{u}s$, m. Posterus, a, um,

Redūcit, Spēs, spēi, *f*.

Tenet,

 $\bar{\mathbf{U}}$ sus, $\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ s, m.

edge, line of battle. approach, arrival.

bird.

singing.

he prepares, raises.

sight, view. army.

attack, charge. [forms the line of battle. he constructs, draws up; aciem instruit, he magistrate, magistracy. [ibus, in hand.

magistrate, magistraty. [ibus, in nana. hand, a band of soldiers, a force; in man-military; res militaris, military affairs.

setting; solis occasus, sunset.

port, harbor. following, next. he leads back.

hope. he holds.

use, usage, experience.

95. Translate into English.

1. Rēx exercitum comparābat. 2. Aciem īnstruēbat. 3. Tenetne portum? 2 4. Portum tenēbit. 5. Impetum timēbat. 6. Opus est māgnum. 7. Timor exercitum occupābat. 8. Portus est bonus. 9. Labiēnus in exercitū 3 Caesaris fuit. 10. Hannibal exercitum māgnum in Italiam dūxit. 11. Caesar exercitūs māgnōs comparāvit. 12. In cōnspēctū hostium erat.

¹ Feminine by exception.

² Tenetne = tenet and interrogative particle -ne.

³ See page 58, foot-note 1.

13. Puer cantum avis audiēbat. 14. Puerī cantūs avium audient. 15. Cōnsul hostium exercitum nōn tim ābat. 16. Cicerŏ cōnsul opus māgnum in manibus habēbat. 17. Hostēs portum tenēbant. 18. Caesar aciem īnstruet. 19. Posterō diē aciem īnstruēbat. 20. Posterō diē in cōnspectū hostium aciem īnstruēbat. 21. Posteā exercitum in castra redūxit. 22. Ariovistus sōlis occāsū exercitum in castra redūxit. 23. Hostēs adventum Caesaris exspectābant. 24. Timor omnem exercitum occupāvit.

96. Translate into Latin.

- 1. At sunset fear seized the army. 2. The next day Caesar conquered the king. 3. The consul will hold the harbor. 4. He has a large army. 5. Will he fortify the harbor? 6. He is fortifying the harbor. 7. Does he expect an attack? 8. He expects an attack. 9. The commander fears the attack of the enemy. 10. The soldiers will fight in sight of the commander. 11. The pupil is writing about the army. 12. The girl hears the singing of the bird.
- 13. Fear will take possession of the army. 14. Caesar led a large army into Gaul. 15. Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, had a large army in Gaul. 16. The consul will hold the harbor. 17. He was awaiting the approach of Ariovistus, the king of the Germans. 18. The consul has large experience in military affairs. 19. The soldiers of Ariovistus did not have large experience in military affairs.

LESSON XXXIII.

NUMERALS.

97. Lesson from the Grammar.

- 171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.
 - 172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

- 1. CARDINAL NUMBERS: 1 ūnus, one; duo, two.
- 2. Ordinal Numbers: 1 primus, first; secundus, second.
- 3. DISTRIBUTIVES: 1 singulī, one by one; bīnī, two by two.

174. PARTIAL TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES:

	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1.	ūnus, ūna, ūnum, one	$\operatorname{primus}, \mathit{first}$	singuli, one by one
	duo, duae, duo, two	secundus, $second$	bīnī, two by two 2
	trēs, tria, three	tertius, third	ternī (trīnī), three by three
	quattuor, four	quārtus, fourth	quaterni, four by four
	quinque, five	quintus, fifth	quini, five by five
6.	sex, six	sextus, sixth	sēni, six by six
7.	septem, seven	septimus, seventh	septēnī, seven by seven
	octo, eight	octāvus, eighth	octoni, eight by eight
9.	novem, nine	nonus, $ninth$	novēnī, nine by nine
10.	decem, ten	decimus, tenth	dēnī, ten by ten

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

175. $\overline{U}nus$, Duo, and $Tr\bar{e}s$ are declined as follows:

			Ūnus,	one.		
		SINGULAR.	•		PLURAL.	
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	$\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{n}\mathbf{u}\mathbf{m}$	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	ünörum	ūnārum	ünörum
Dat.	ūnī	ünī	ūnï	$ar{ ext{unis}}$	ūnīs	ūnīs
Acc.	ünum	ünam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna -
Voc.	ūne	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
Abl.	$\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{n}\bar{\mathbf{o}}$	ūnā	ūnō	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs

Duo, two. Tres, three.

		,			
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	trēs, m . and f .	tria, n .
Gen.	duõrum	duārum	duōrum³	${f trium}$	trium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	${f t}$ ribus
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
Voc.		duae	duo	trēs	${f tria}$
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

¹ Cardinals denote simply the number of objects. Ordinals denote the place of an object in a series. Distributives denote the number of objects taken at a time.

2 Or two each, two apiece.

³ Instead of duorum and duarum, duum is sometimes used.

Note 1.—The plural of $\bar{u}nus$ in the sense of alone may be used with any noun: $\bar{u}n\bar{\imath}$ $Ubi\bar{\imath}$, the Ubii alone; but in the sense of one, it is used only with nouns plural in form, but singular in sense: $\bar{u}na$ castra, one camp; $\bar{u}nae$ litterae, one letter.

176. The Cardinals from quattuor, 'four,' to centum, 'one hundred,' are indeclinable.

177. Hundreds are declined like the plural of bonus; ducenti, ae, a, 'two hundred.'

179. Ordinals are declined like bonus, and distributives like the plural of bonus.

98. Examples. — Duration of Time.

Caecus annōs multōs fuit. He was blind many YEARS.

2. Trīgintā annōs vīxit. He lived thirty YEARS.

3. Fossa quindecim pedēs lāta. A moat fifteen feet broad.

Note. — In these examples observe that annōs, 'years,' and pedēs,

Note. — In these examples observe that annos, 'years,' and peaes, 'feet,' are in the Accusative. This Latin idiom is expressed in the following

RULE IX. - Accusative of Time and Space.

379. DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative:

Rōmulus septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit annōs, Romulus reigned thirtyseven years. Liv. Quinque mīlia passuum ambulāre, to walk five miles. Cic. Pedēs octōgintā dīstare, to be eighty feet distant. Caes. Nix quattuor pedēs alta, snow four feet deep. Liv.

99. Vocabulary.

 $\bar{\mathbf{A}}$, ab, prep. w. abl. from, by. year. Annus, \bar{i} , m. Celts, a people of Gaul. Celtae, ārum, m. pl. about. Circiter, adv., and prep. w. acc. he enrols. Conscribit, Cyrus, King of Persia. Cyrus, $\bar{1}, m$. Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse. Dion \overline{v} sius, ii, m. Duodecim, indeclinable, twelve.

¹ The English uses the Objective case in the same way.

Duodēquadrāgintā, indeclinable, thirty-eight.

Merīdiēs, ēī, m.

Oppidum, \bar{i} , n.

Pars, partis, f. indeclinable, thirty-eight. indeclinable, thirty-eight. indeclinable, thirty-eight. indeclinable, thirty-eight. indeclinable, thirty-eight. indeclinable, thirty-eight.

Suessiones, um, m. pl.
Suessiones, a Gallic tribe.
he sustains, withstands, resists.

Trīgintā, indeclinable, thirty.
Ūndecimus, a, um, eleventh.

Usque, adv. until, even; usque ad, even to. Vēr, vēris, n. spring. [until. Vicus, ī, m. village.

100. Translate into English.

Gallī trēs hōrās pūgnābant.
 Nōnne fortiter pūgnant?
 Fortiter pūgnant.
 Circiter merīdiem exercitum in castra redūcet.
 Belgae ūnam Galliae partem incolunt.
 Celtae tertiam Galliae partem incolunt.
 Caesar duās legiōnēs in Ītaliā cōnscrībit.
 Trēs legiōnēs circum Aquilēiam hiemābant.
 Duās legiōnēs in Galliā cōnscrīpsit.
 Legiōnis nōnae mīlitēs fortiter pūgnāvērunt.
 Duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, fortiter pūgnābant.

12. Legiōnis decimae mīlitēs impetum hostium fortiter sustinēbant. 13. Legiōnis octāvae mīlitēs in conspectu imperātoris impetum hostium fortiter sustinuērunt. 14. Legionēs sex castra mūniēbant. 15. Mīlitēs ab horā quartā usque ad solis occāsum fortiter pūgnāvērunt. 16. Suessionēs oppida duodecim habent. 17. Cyrus trīgintā annos rēgnāvit. 18. Dionysius duodēquadrāgintā annos tyrannus fuit.

101. Translate into Latin.

1. Numa reigned many years. 2. Did not the Gauls fight bravely? 3. They fought bravely. 4. The boy has thirty books. 5. He will present three to his brother. 6. The legions will attack the tower at sunset. 7. At that time the tenth legion was in Gaul. 8. The soldiers of the

¹ Masculine by exception.

² Cönscripsit = conscrib-sit, see 76.

tenth legion were brave. 9. They were the bravest of all. 10. Two legions will guard the camp. 11. Five legions will

fortify the camp with a rampart.

12. The soldiers were fortifying one part of the village with a very high wall. 13. The commander was awaiting the arrival of two legions. 14. The two consuls enrolled six legions. 15. The soldiers of two legions did not have large experience in military affairs. 16. The enemy fought bravely for ten hours. 17. They held the harbor for five days.

LESSON XXXIV.

PRONOUNS

102. Lesson from the Grammar.

- 182. In construction, Pronouns¹ are used either as Substantives: ego, I, $t\bar{u}$, thou; or as Adjectives: meus, my, tuus, thy.
 - 183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:
 - 1. Personal Pronouns : $t\bar{u}$, thou.
 - 2. Possessive Pronouns: meus, my.
 - 3. Demonstrative Pronouns: $h\bar{i}c$, this.
 - 4. Relative Pronouns: qui, who.
 - 5. Interrogative Pronouns: quis, who?
 - 6. Indefinite Pronouns: aliquis, some one.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns, 2 so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are:

¹ But in their signification and use, Pronouns differ widely from ordinary substantives and adjectives, as they never *name* any object, action, or quality, but simply *point out* its relation to the speaker, or to some other person or thing.

⁹ Also called Substantive Pronouns, because they are always used substantively.

\mathbf{E}	go, <i>I</i> . Tū,	thou.	Suī, of himself, etc.1
	SINC	JULAR.	
Nom. eg	o	tū	
Gen. m	eī	tuī	suĭ ¹
Dat. m	ihĭ or mī	tibĭ	sibī
Acc. m	ē	tē	sē [*]
Voc.		tū	
Abl. m	ē	tē	sē
	PL	URAL.	
Nom. no	īs	võs	
Com Inc	ostrum	vestrum)	suī
Gen. $\begin{cases} nc \\ nc \end{cases}$	ostri	vestrī 🕽	Sui
Dat. no		võbīs	sib Ĭ
Acc. no	ōs ·	võs	s ē
Voc.		võs	
Abl. no	öbīs	vōbīs	$\mathbf{s} ilde{\mathbf{e}}$

- 2. Sui, of himself, etc., is often called the Reflexive pronoun.
- 4. REDUPLICATED FORMS. Sēsē, tētē, mēmē, for sē, tē, mē.
- 6. Cum, when used with the ablative of a Personal Pronoun, is appended to it: mēcum, tēcum.

II. Possessive Pronouns.

185. From Personal pronouns are formed the Possessives: 2

meus, a, um, my; noster, tra, trum, our; tuus, a, um, thy, your; vester, tra, trum, your; suus, a, um, his, hers, its; suus, a, um, their.

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are declined as follows:

¹ Of himself, herself, itself. The Nominative is not used.

² Possessives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions; but *meus* has in the Vocative Singular Masculine generally mi, sometimes *meus*, and in the Genitive Plural sometimes *meum* instead of *meōrum*.

MISSING PAGE

MISSING PAGE

Suus, a, um,

Temperantia, ae, f. Tum, adv. Vocat,

his, her, hers, its, their, theirs, his own, her own, its own, one's own. temperance, self-control.

then.

he calls, summons, invites.

104. Translate into English.

1. Caesar Divitiacum ad sē vocāvit. 2. Exercitus noster m Galliā hiemābat. 3. Hostēs suam urbem vallō mūniēbant. 4. Gallī hanc urbem vallō fossāque mūniēbant. 5. Mīlitēs omnia impedīmenta sēcum portant. 6. Pater tuus epistulam longam ad tē scrībet. 7. Amīcus tuus trēs epistulās ad mē scrīpsit. 8. Omnēs bonī võs semper amābunt.

9. Omnēs tē laudant; omnēs dē tuā hūmānitāte commemorant; omnēs aequitātem tuam, temperantiam, integritātemque laudant. 10. Mē commemorātiō tuae virtūtis dēlectāvit. 11. Omnēs bonī omnem ā nōbīs dīligentiam virtūtemque exspectant. 12. Sapientēs hominēs illam cīvitātem regēbant. 13. Doctī hominēs istam cīvitātem regunt. 14. Doctī et sapientēs hominēs hanc cīvitātem regent. 15. Cicerō suā manū epistulam scrīpsit (for scrīb -sit).

105. Translate into Latin.

1. The boy praises himself. 2. Many boys praise themselves. 3. Wise men do not praise themselves. 4. Your father loves you. 5. Does he praise me? 6. He praises you. 7. This book is beautiful. 8. These books are new. 9. The queen wrote this letter. 10. That legion was wintering in Italy. 11. Those legions will winter in Gaul. 12. The citizens praise you. 13. All the citizens will praise you.

14. Wise men will always praise your wisdom. 15. Good men will praise your virtue. 16. Good men will always praise your virtue and wisdom. 17. Your father wrote this letter with his own hand. 18. He has written to me. 19. The consul had five legions with him. 20. He was then in Italy. 21. The enemy are fortifying their city with a very high wall.

LESSON XXXVI.

PRONOUNS. - RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, INDEFINITE.

106. Lesson from the Grammar.

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative $qu\bar{\imath}$, 'who,' so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows:

	_	SINGULAR	•		PLURAL.	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	${f qu ilde u}$	quae	quae
Gen.	cūjus	cūjus	cū j us	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui 🗽	cui	${f quibus}$	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	\mathbf{quod}	${ m quar{o}s}$	quās	quae
Abl.	quö	quā	quō	${f quibus}$	quibus	quibus

- 1. $Qu\bar{\imath}=qu\bar{o},\ qu\bar{a},$ 'with which,' 'wherewith,' is a *Locative* or *Ablative* of the relative $qu\bar{\imath}$.
- 2. Cum, when used with the Ablative of the relative, is generally appended to it: quibuscum.

V. Interrogative Pronouns.

188. The Interrogative Pronouns quis and qui, with their compounds, are used in asking questions. They are declined as follows:

I. Quis, who, which, what?

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūjus	çũjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quid	quõs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quã	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

- II. Quī, which, what? is declined like the relative quī.
- 1. Quis is generally used substantively, and Qui, adjectively. The forms quis and quem are sometimes feminine.
- 2. $Qu\bar{\imath}$, how? in what way? is a Locative or Ablative of the interrogative quis.

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

- 189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are quis and qui, with their compounds.
- 190. Quis, 'any one,' and $qu\bar{\imath}$, 'any one,' 'any,' are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives quis and $qu\bar{\imath}$. But—
- 1. After $s\bar{\imath}$, nisi, $n\bar{e}$, and num, the Feminine Singular and Neuter Plural have quae or qua: $s\bar{\imath}$ quae, $s\bar{\imath}$ qua.
- 2. From quis and qui are formed—
 aliquis, aliqua, aliquid or aliquod, some, some one.
 quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam, certain, certain one.
- 351. An Interrogative Sentence has the form of a question:

Quis loquitur, who speaks? Ter. Quis non paupertatem extiméscit, who does not fear poverty? Cic. Qualis est oratio, what kind of an oration is it? Cic. Quot sunt, how many are there? Plaut. Ubi sunt, where are they? Cic. Visne fortunam experir meam, do you wish to try my fortune? Cic. Nonne nobilitar volunt, do they not wish to be renowned? Cic. Num igitur peccamus, are we then at fault? Cic.

1. Interrogative Words.—Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word—either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles: -ne, nonne, num; see examples above.

Note 1. — Questions with ne ask for information; Scribitne, 'is he writing?'

Note 2. — Questions with $n\bar{o}nne$ expect the answer yes: $N\bar{o}nne$ scribit, 'is he not writing?'

Note 3. -Questions with num expect the answer $no: Num \ scribit$, is he writing?'

2. The particle -ne is always appended to some other word, generally to the emphatic word of the sentence, i.e. to the word upon which the question especially turns; appended to $n\bar{o}n$, 'not,' it forms $n\bar{o}nne$:

Visne experiri, do you WISH to try? Cic. Tune id veritus es, did You fear this? Cic. Omnisne pecunia soluta est, has All the money

¹ Quidam changes m to n before d: quendam for quemdam.

been paid? Cic. Unquamne vidisti, have you ever seen? Cic. Nonne volunt, do they not wish? Cic.

352. Answers.—Instead of replying to a question of fact with a simple particle meaning yes or no, the Latin usually repeats the verb or some emphatic word, often with $pr\bar{o}rsus$, $v\bar{e}r\bar{o}$, 'certainly,' 'truly,' and the like, or if negative, with $n\bar{o}n$, 'not.'

Dixitne causam, did he state the cause? Dixit, he stated it. Cic. Possumusne tūtī esse, can we be safe? Non possumus, we can not. Cic.

- 353. DOUBLE OR DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS offer a choice or alternative, and generally take one of the following forms:
 - 1. The first clause has utrum or -ne, and the second an:

Utrum et vestra an nostra culpa est, is that your fault or ours? Cic. Romamne veniō an hīc maneō, do I go to Rome, or do I remain here? Cic.

2. The first clause omits the particle, and the second has an or anne:

Eloquar an sileam, shall I utter it, or keep silence? Verg.

LESSON XXXVII.

PRONOUNS. — RULE XXXV. — EXERCISES.

107. Examples.—Agreement.

Rëx *quem* omnës laudant. Rëgina *quam* omnës laudant. Ii *quës* omnës laudant. Ego *qu*ë dicë. The King whom all praise.
The Queen whom all praise.
Those whom all praise.
I who speak.

Note.—In these examples the pronoun *quem* refers to $r\bar{e}x$, called its antecedent, *quam* to its antecedent $r\bar{e}g\bar{\imath}na$, *quos* to its antecedent $i\bar{\imath}$, and $qu\bar{\imath}$ to its antecedent ego. Observe that the pronoun in each instance is in the same gender and number 1 as its antecedent. Thus

¹ The case of the pronoun is determined by the construction of the clause in which it stands, and not by the case of its antecedent. Thus in these examples, though the antecedents are all in the Nominative, the pronouns quem, quam, and $qu\bar{o}s$ are all in the Accusative as Direct Objects.

quem is in the masculine singular, because $r\bar{c}x$ is in that gender and number; quam in the feminine singular like $r\bar{c}g\bar{v}na$; and $qu\bar{v}s$ in the masculine plural like $i\bar{v}$. The pronoun has also the same person as its antecedent. Thus quem, quam, and quos are all in the third person, like their antecedents $r\bar{c}x$, $r\bar{c}g\bar{v}na$, and $i\bar{v}$, while $qu\bar{v}$ is in the first person, like its antecedent ego. This agreement of pronouns with their antecedents applies not only to relatives, but to all pronouns when used as substantives, 1 and is expressed in the following

RULE XXXV.- Agreement of Pronouns.

445. A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person:

Animal quod sanguinem habet, an animal which has blood. Cic. Ego, $qu\bar{\imath}$ të confirmo, I who encourage you. Cic. Vis est in virtuibus, $e\bar{\imath}s$ excite, there is strength in virtues, arouse them. Cic.

108. Vocabulary.

Agit, he leads, drives, does, acts, performs, treats, pleads; grātiās Arma, ōrum, n. pl. [agit, he returns thanks. Britannia, ae, f. Britain. Cis, prep. w. acc. on this side of. Constanter, adv. consistently, uniformly. Cotīdiē, adv. daily, Dēbet, he owes : he ought. Doctrina, ae, f. learning. Ex, ē, prep. w. abl. out of, from, of. Ferē, adv. almost. Grātia, ae, f. gratitude, favor; grātiae, pl., Locus, \bar{i} , m., pl. loca, \bar{o} rum, n. place. [thanks. Nāvigat, he navigates, sails. Platō, ōnis, m. Plato, a celebrated Greek philoso-[pher. Quidam, quaedam, quiddam or a certain, certain one. quoddam, Reliquus, a, um, remaining, the other, the rest of. Rhēnus, ĭ, m. the Rhine. Suprā, adv. above. Tempus, oris, n. time. Venetī, ōrum, m. pl.the Veneti, a tribe of western Gaul.

¹ Pronouns when used as adjectives agree, like other adjectives, with the nouns to which they belong, according to **40**. Rule XXXIV.

109. Translate into English.

- Gallī ea loca incolunt.
 Gallī fortēs sunt.
 Gallī, quī ea loca incolunt, fortēs sunt.
 Germānī, quī cis Rhēnum incolunt, in armīs sunt.
 Hostēs urbem,³ dē quā ² suprē scrīpsit Caesar, vallō fossāque mūniēbant.
 Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs erant.
 Hī cōnstanter omnēs idem⁴ nūnti ant.
 Venetī nāvēs habent multās, quibus⁵ in Britanniam nāvigant.
 Iī quī vōbīs omnia dēbent, vōs semper amābunt.
 Cīvēs nōbīs grātiās cotīdiē agunt.
- 11. Ille prīnceps doctrīnae, Platŏ, virtūtem et sapientiam laudat. 12. Iī quī hanc cīvitātem regunt, sapientēs sunt. 13. Quid dīxit? Hŏc dīxit. 14. Num hacc dīxērunt? Nōn dīxērunt. 15. Omnēs ferē Belgae in armīs fuērunt. 16. Cicerŏ in illō ipsō⁸ librō dē amīcitiā scrīpsit.

110. Translate into Latin.

1. Who was the king? 2. Was not Pomulus king? He was. Who was the leader of the Romans? Was not

2 For Gender and Number, see 107, Rule XXXV.

⁴ Direct Object of $n\bar{u}ntiant$.

× 1

¹ In preparing the longer and more difficult sentences in this and in the subsequent exercises, it is recommended that the pupil should follow the Suggestions which are inserted in this volume, page 200, and which are intended to aid him in discerning the *process* by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence.

³ In reading this sentence in the Latin slowly and attentively, in accordance with Suggestion IV., which words do you recognize? What parts of speech do you find? What cases, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons? What does each case, mood, tense, number, and person show you?

⁵ Ablative of Means. See 78, Rule XXV.

⁶ Ille is often thus used of what is WELL KNOWN, FAMOUS.

⁷ Observe that the auxiliaries does, do, did, are often used in interrogative and negative sentences in English, but that no corresponding auxiliaries are used in Latin. Thus, nonne dicit, does he say? non dicit, he does not say. Remember this difference in rendering into Latin, as in 110, 4 and 5, Did not Cicero, etc.?

⁸ Illo ipso, that very; ipse is sometimes best rendered very.

⁹ What Interrogative will you use? See 106, 351, 1, notes.

¹⁰ See 106, 352.

Caesar the leader of the Romans? Caesar was the leader of the Romans. 4. Did not Cicero write this book? He wrote it. 5. Did he write the book that 1 the pupils are reading? He did not write it. Caesar, who conquered the Gauls, wrote that book. 6. Cicero, who wrote these books, was at that time a very renowned orator.

7. The enemy, about whom Caesar wrote above, were Gauls.
8. The Belgae, who were at that time in arms, were the bravest of the Gauls.
9. What did Plato praise? Did he not praise learning and wisdom? He always praised virtue.
10. Who has written in regard to friendship? Cicero, the consul, wrote a book in regard to friendship.

LESSON XXXVIII.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE, AND PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE, IN CONJUGATIONS I. AND II., AND IN THE VERB Sum. — RULE XXXVII.

111. Lesson from the Grammar.

- 196. The Subjunctive Mood² expresses not an actual fact, but a possibility or conception. It is best translated —
- 1. Sometimes by the English auxiliaries, let, may, might, should, would:

Amēmus patriam, let us love our country. Sint beātī, may they be happy. Quaerat quispiam, some one may inquire. Hốc nemỗ dixerit, no one would say this. Ego cēnseam, I should think, or I am inclined to think.

2. Sometimes by the English *Indicative*, especially by the Future forms with *shall* and *will*:

Huic cēdāmus, shall we yield to this one? Quid dies ferat incertum est, what a day will bring forth is uncertain. Quaesivit sī licēret, he inquired whether it was lawful.

¹ For the Gender, Number and Case of the Latin Pronoun, see 107, Rule XXXV., and 16, Rule V.

² For the *Imperative Mood*, see p. 13, 196, III.

3. Sometimes by the *Imperative*, especially in prohibitions:

Në transieris Hiberum, po not cross the Ebro.

4. Sometimes by the English Infinitive:

Contendit ut vincat, he strives to conquer. Missi sunt qui consulerent Apollinem, they were sent to consult Apollo.

112. Examples. — Indicative Mood.

- 1. Galli ea loca incolunt. The Gauls inhabit those places.
- 2. Hostes urbem mūniebant. The enemy were fortifying the city.

Note. - Observe in these examples that the verbs incolunt, 'inhabit,' and mūniēbant, 'were fortifying,' relate to facts. They are in the Indicative Mood, in accordance with the Latin usage,² expressed in the following

RULE XXXVII. - Indicative.

474. The Indicative is used in treating of facts:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, $God\ made\ (built)\ the\ world$. Cic. Nonne expulsus est patriā, $was\ he\ not\ banished\ from\ his\ country\ ?$ Cic. Hốc féci dum licuit, $I\ did\ this\ as\ long\ as\ it\ was\ permitted$. Cic.

113. Certain Forms of the Subjunctive and Imperative.

I. In the Verb Sum, Iam.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PRESENT.	PLURAL.
sim,	may I be,	sīmus,	let us be, be ye, may you be, let them be.
sīs,	mayst thou be,	sītis,	
sit,	let him be, may he	s be; sint,	

¹ Observe, however, that the Infinitive here is not the translation of the Subjunctive alone, but of the Subjunctive with its subject and connective: ut vincat, to conquer (lit., that he may conquer); qui consulerent, to consult (lit., who should or would consult).

² All the verbs in the preceding Lessons are in the *Indicative Mood*, and are illustrations of this usage.

IMPERFECT.

I should be, es**sem**, es**sēs**.

thou wouldst be. he would be:

es**sēmus**, essētis,

we should be, you would be,

esset.

amem,

amēs,

amet,

essemt,

they would be.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. es. be thou, este,

be ye.

II. In the First Conjugation.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.

may I love, may you love, let him love;

PRESENT. am**ēmus**. am**ētis**,

ament,

PLURAL. let us love. may you love, let them love.

IMPERFECT.

amārem, am**ārēs**, amāret,

I should love, you would love. he would love :

am**ārēmus**, amārētis, amärent,

we should love, you would love, they would love.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. ama,

love thou;

| amāte,

love ye.

III. In the Second Conjugation.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

May I advise, let him advise.

SINGULAR. moneam moneās

moneat

PLURAL.

moneāmus mon**eātis** moneant

IMPERFECT.

I should advise, he would advise.

monērem mon**ērēs** mon**ēret**

monērēmus monērētis monërent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres, mone,

advise thou:

| monēte,

advise ye,

LESSON XXXIX.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE ACTIVE IN CONJUGATIONS I. AND II., AND IN THE VERB Sum. — RULES XXXVIII. AND XL. — EXERCISES.

114. Examples. - Subjunctive and Imperative.

Amēmus patriam.
 Nē audeant.
 Sint beātī.
 Jūstitiam cole.
 Perge, Catilīna.
 LET THEM not DARE.
 MAY THEY BE happy.
 Go, Catiline.

NOTE 1.—In the first three of these examples, observe that the verbs $am\bar{e}mus$, audeant, and sint all express or imply a desire or wish on the part of the speaker. These verbs are all in the Subjunctive, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XXXVIII. - Subjunctive of Desire, Command.

483. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS DESIRED:

Valeant cīvēs, may the citizens be well. Cic. $Am\bar{e}mus$ patriam, let us love our country. Cic. \bar{A} nōbīs $d\bar{\imath}lig\bar{a}tur$, let him be loved by us. Cic. Scribere nē $pigr\bar{e}re$, do not neglect to write. Cic.

1. The Subjunctive of Desire is often accompanied by utinam, and sometimes, especially in the poets, by ut, $s\bar{\imath}$, \bar{o} $s\bar{\imath}$:

Utinam cōnāta efficere possim, may I be able to accomplish my endeavors. Cic. Ut illum dī perdant, would that the gods would destroy him. Ter.

2. Force of Tenses. — The Present and Perfect imply that the wish may be fulfilled; the Imperfect and Pluperfect, that it cannot be fulfilled:

Sint beātī, may they be happy. Cic. Nē trānsierīs Hibērum, do not cross the Ebro. Liv. Utinam possem, utinam potuissem, would that I were able, would that I had been able. Cic.

3. Negatives. — With the Subjunctive of Desire, the negative is $n\bar{e}$, rarely $n\bar{o}n$; with a connective, $n\bar{e}ve$, neu, rarely neque:

Në audeant, let them not dare. Cic. Non recëdamus, let us not recede. Cic. Nëve minor neu sit productior, let it be neither shorter nor longer. Hor.

Note 2.—In the fourth and fifth of the examples at the head of this lesson, observe that the verbs *cole* and *perge* both denote a command. They are in the *Imperative*, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XL. - Imperative.

487. The Imperative is used in COMMANDS, EXHORTATIONS, and ENTREATIES:

Jūstitiam cole, practise justice. Cic. Tū ne cede malis, do not yield to misfortunes. Verg. Sī quid in te peccāvī, īgnosce, if I have sinned against you, pardon me. Cic.

1. The Present Imperative corresponds to the Imperative in English:

Jūstitiam cole, $practise\ justice.$ Cic. Perge, Catilina, go, Catiline. Cic.

115. Vocabulary.

mind, heart, soul. Animus, \bar{i} , m. redoubt. Castellum, i, n. Casticus, a chief of the Sequani. Casticus, i, m., he strengthens, assures, establishes. Confirmat, he conspires. Conjūrat, productive, fertile. Ferāx, ācis, pertaining to grain; res frumentaria, Frūmentārius, a, um, he aids, helps, assists. [grain, supplies. Juvat, broad, wide, extensive. Lātus, a, um, Līber, lībera, līberum, free. mind, intellect. Mēns, mentis, f. Parātus, a, um, prepared, ready. peace. $P\bar{a}x$, $p\bar{a}cis$, f. he disturbs. Perturbat, nearer; sup. proximus, a, um, nearest, Propior, propius, [next, adjacent. 86, 166. Quis, quae, quid or quod, one, any one, anything. indef. pron. kingdom, regal power. Rēgnum, ī, n. suspicion. Suspīciō, ōnis, f.

O that!

he avoids, shuns.

Utinam, interj.

Vita+.

116. Translate into English.

- 1. Patriam amēmus. 2. Prō patriā pūgnēmus. 3. In cōnspectū imperātōris fortiter pūgnēmus. 4. Mīlitēs in cōnspectū imperātōris fortiter pūgnent. 5. Mīlitēs fortēs sint; fortēs sīmus. 6. Lēgibus¹ pāreāmus. 7. Cīvēs omnēs lēgibus pāreant. 8. Patriam amāte; lēgibus pārēte. 9. Illam urbem oppūgnāte. 10. Hanc urbem oppūgnēmus. 11. Nē² Helvētiōs juvēmus. 12. Nē quis Helvētiōs juvet. 13. Suspīcionem vītēmus. 14. Timōris suspīcionem vītēs. 15. Omnēs suspīcionēs vītā. 16. In³ reliquum tempus omnēs suspīcionēs vītēmus. 17. Mīlitēs castellum oppūgnent.
- 18. Cum hīs cīvitātibus ⁴ amīcitiam cōnfirmēmus. 19. Cum prōximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāte. 20. In hōc locō adventum hostium exspectēmus. 21. Hostēs in hōc locō adventum Caesaris exspectent. 22. Utinam parātus ad ⁵ omnia perīcula sīs. ⁶ 23. Utinam mīlitēs omnēs fortēs essent. ⁶ 24. Casticus rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupet. 25. Hostium impetum sustineāmus. 26. Utinam timor hostium mentēs animōsque perturbet. 27. Lātōs ferācēsque agrōs occupēmus. 28. Rem frūmentāriam comparēmus. 29. Lībera sit Gallia. 30. Nē contrā patriam conjūrēmus.

117. Translate into Latin.

1. Let us praise the brave soldiers. 2. May they all fight bravely for themselves and for their country. 3. Let not fear take possession of our army. 4. Let not fear disturb our minds. 5. Let us await the arrival of our army. 6. Let the soldiers obey the commander. 7. Let them not fear the enemy. 8. Let us not fear the enemy. 9. Let us await them in this place.

¹ For Case, see 54, Rule XII.

² For the use of $n\bar{e}$ rather than $n\bar{o}n$, see 114, 483, 3.

⁸ Literally into; render for.

⁴ In accordance with Suggestion XI., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of civitatibus?

⁵ Laterally to; render For. ⁶ For the force of Tenses, see 114, 483, 2.

10. Let us aid our friends. 11. Do not aid the enemy. 12. May all the citizens love their country. 13. May they obey all the laws. 14. Let us establish friendship with the Romans. 15. Let the Romans establish peace with the Gauls. 16. Let not the soldiers conspire against the king.

LESSON XL.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE, AND PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE, IN CONJUGATIONS III. AND IV.—RULES XLI. AND XLII.

118. Certain Forms of the Subjunctive and Imperative

I. In the Third Conjugation.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I rule, let him rule.

SINGULAR. PLURAL. regām regāmus regāts

regat

IMPERFECT.

I should rule, he would rule.

regerem regerēs regeret reg**erēmus** reg**erētis** reg**erent**

regant

IMPERATIVE.

Pres rege, rule thou;

regi**te**,

rule y**e.**

II. In the Fourth Conjugation.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

May I hear, let him hear.

SINGULAR. audiam audiās audiat PLURAL. audi**āmus** aud**iātis** aud**iant**

IMPEREECT

I should hear, he would hear,

audīrem audīrēs audīret.

audīrēmus audīrētis and Trent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. audī. hear thou: laudīte. hear ve.

119. Examples. — Sequence of Tenses. — Subjunctive of Purpose.

1. Nititur ut vincat.

He strives to conquer.

Nītēbātur ut vinceret.

He was striving to conquer.

3. Mittuntur quī (= ut iī) cōn- They are sent to consult (who sulant Apollinem.

may consult) Apollo.

4. Missī sunt quī consulerent They were sent to consult Apollo. Apollinem.

Note 1. — In these examples observe that after a present tense, as nītitur, mittuntur, the verb of the subordinate clause 1 is also Present, as vincat, consulant, while after a past tense, as nitebatur, missi sunt. the verb in the subordinate clause is in the Imperfect, as vinceret, consulerent.² This adjustment of the tense in the subordinate clause to the tense in the Principal clause 1 is in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XLI. - Sequence of Tenses.

491. Principal tenses depend upon principal tenses; historical upon historical:3

Nītitur ut vincat, he strives to conquer.4 Cic. Nēmō erit quī cēnseat, there will be no one who will think. 4 Cic. Quaesieras nonne

¹ For Principal and Subordinate Clauses, see p. 11, 348, foot note.

² If the verb in the Subordinate Clause denotes completed action, it must be in the Perfect after a Present tense, and in the Pluperfect after a Past tense. See 492, 2, and 493, 2.

³ For Principal and Historical Tenses, see p. 13, 198.

⁴ The Present Subjunctive generally denotes present time in relation to the principal verb. Accordingly, vincat depending upon the present, nititur, denotes present time, while censeat depending upon the future, erit, denotes future time.

putārem, you had asked whether I did not think. Cic. Ut honore dīgnus essem labōrāvī, I strove to be worthy of honor. Cic.

- 492. In accordance with this rule, the Subjunctive dependent upon a principal tense, present, future, future perfect, is put—
 - 1. In the Present, to denote incomplete action:

Quaeritur cūr dissentiant, the question is asked, why they disagree. Cic. Nēmō erit quī cēnseat, there will be no one who will think. Cic.

2. In the Perfect, to denote completed action:

Quaerāmus quae vitia fuerint, let us inquire what faults there were. Cic. Rogitābit mē ubĭ fuerim, he will ask me where I have been. Ter.

- 493. The Subjunctive dependent upon an historical tense, imperfect, historical perfect, pluperfect, is put—
 - 1. In the Imperfect, to denote incomplete action:

Timēbam në ëvenīrent ea, I was fearing that those things would take place (i.e. at some future time). Cic. Quaesierās nonne putārem, you had inquired whether I did not think (i.e. at that time). Cic.

2. In the Pluperfect, to denote completed action:

Themistocles, cum Graeciam liberasset, expulsus est, Themistocles was banished, though he had liberated Greece. Cic.

Note 2.—In the examples given above, observe that the verbs in the Subordinate clauses, vincat, vinceret, consulant, consulerent, all express the purpose of the leading action. He strives (for what purpose?) that he may conquer or to conquer. They are sent (for what purpose?) that they may consult Apollo or to consult Apollo. These verbs are all in the Subjunctive, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XLII. - Purpose.

- 497. The Subjunctive is used to denote Purpose:
- I. With the relative qui, and with relative adverbs, as ubi, unde, etc.:

Missī sunt quī (=ut iī) consulerent Apollinem, they were sent to consult Apollo (who should, or that they should). Nep. Missī sunt dēlēctī quī Thermopylās occupārent, picked men were sent to take possession of Thermopylae. Nep. Domum, ubĭ habitāret, lēgit, he selected a house where he might dwell (that he might dwell in it). Cic.

II. With ut, nē, quō, quōminus:

Enītitur ut vincat, he strives that HE MAY CONQUER. Cic. Pūnit nē peccētur, he punishes that crime MAY not BE COMMITTED. Sen. Lēgum idcircō servī sumus, ut liberī esse possīmus, we are servants of the law for this reason, that we may be free. Cic. Medicō dare quō sit studiōsior, to give to the physician, that (by this means) he may be more attentive. Cic. Nōn recūsāvit quōminus poenam subīret, he did not refuse to submit to punishment. Nep.

498. Clauses of Purpose readily pass into Object Clauses, but they still retain the Subjunctive.

Optō ut id audiātis, I desire (pray) that you may hear this. Cic. Servīs imperat ut filiam dēfendant, he commands his servants to defend his daughter. Cic. Contendit ut vincat, he strives to conquer. Cic.

LESSON XLI.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE ACTIVE IN CONJUGA-TIONS III. AND IV. — EXERCISES.

120. Vocabulary.

Addūcit, he leads to. Cōgnōscit, he ascertains.

Colloquium, ii, n. conversation, conference, interview.

Dēdūcit, he leads forth, conducts. Equitātus, ūs, m. cavalry.

Imperat, w. dative. he orders, gives orders to.

Implorat, he implores.
Intellegit, he understands.

Mulier, eris, f. woman.

Nūntius, iī, m. messenger; tidings.

Obses, idis, m. and f. hostage.

Pedes, itis, m. foot-soldier; pl. foot-soldiers, infantry.
Pedius, ii, m. Pedius, a lieutenant in Caesar's army.

Populus, ī, m. people.

¹ An Object Clause is one which has become virtually the object of a verb. Thus, in 'optō ut id audiātis,' the clause ut id audiātis has become the object of optō, 'I desire.'

he demands. Postulat.

he gives back, returns. Reddit,

he remains. Remanet. he asks. Rogat, Roman. Romanus, a, um,

he gives up, surrenders. Trādit.

121. Translate into English.

1. Mīlitēs timōris suspīcionem vītent. 2. Mīlitēs ut timōris suspīcionem vītent in acie remanent. 3. Ut timoris suspīcionem vītārent remanēbant. 4. Suam urbem vallo fossāque mūniant. 5. Hunc locum altissimō 2 mūrō mūnīte. 6. Helvētiī proximās cīvitātēs rogant ut sē juvent.³ 7. Rogābant ut sē juvārent.3 8. Noster equitātus hostium impetum sustineat. 9. Caesar equitātum, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. 10. Haec intellegātis. 11. Haec ut intellegātis, audīte Rōmānōs mīlitēs. 12. Cum populō Römānö pācem confirment.

14. Mīlitibus imperāvit ut 13. Castra vallo mūnīte. castra vallo münirent.⁵ 15. Lēgātī haec dīcant. 16. Gallī lēgātōs mittent quī haec dīcant. 17. Haec cōgnōscite. Gallīs imperābat ut haec cōgnōscerent. 19. Mulierēs patrēs suōs implōrābant nē sē Rōmānīs trāderent. Caesar në quem peditem ad colloquium addücat. (21. Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar adduceret.⁶ 22. Caesar postulāvit ut Ariovistus obsidēs redderet. 23. Caesar duās legionēs conscrīpsit, et Pedium mīsit quī eās in Galliam dēdūceret.⁷

¹ Subjunctive of Purpose. See 119, Rule XLII.

² In accordance with Suggestion XI., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of altissimo? See 86, 162.

³ Why juvent in one case, and juvarent in the other? See 119, 492 and 493.

⁴ See Suggestion XVII., 3; mīsit, sent, the perfect of mittit.

⁵ Ut . . . munirent, an Object Clause. See 119, 498.

⁶ $N\bar{e}$. . . $add\bar{u}ceret$. See 119, 498.

⁷ For Mood, see 119, 497, I.; for Translation, see Suggestion XVII., 3.

122. Translate into Latin.

- 1. Let us fortify this city with a high wall. 2. Fortify your cities with moats and walls. 3. He implores you to fortify 2 the city with a very high wall. 4. Let us hear the words of the lieutenant. 5. The soldiers will remain to hear 2 the words of the lieutenant. 6. Let the soldiers remain to hear the words of the king. 7. The soldiers remained 3 to hear the words of Caesar. 8. Let us lead the army back into camp. 9. Let us enrol three legions in Gaul. 10. The commander will send five legions to withstand 4 the attacks of the enemy.
- 11. He sent three legions to withstand the attack of the enemy. 12. Let him not announce our plans to the enemy. 13. Will he not send a messenger to announce these things to Caesar? 14. Listen to me (hear me) that you may understand these things. 15. Caesar demanded that the Germans should not remain in Gaul. 16. The soldiers remained in the city that they might fortify it. 17. He asked us to help you. 18. They demand that you listen to our words. 19. Ariovistus demanded that Caesar should not help the Gauls. 20. They asked Caesar not to give them up to the Germans.

LESSON XLII.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE. —
RULE XLIII.

- 123. Examples. Subjunctive in Clauses of Result.
- Non is sum qui (= ut ego) I am not such a one As to use his ūtar.
- 2. Ita vīxit ut esset cārissimus. He so lived that HE WAS most dear.

¹ In Latin, use the Ablative of Means. See 78, Rule XXV.

² Use ut with the Subjunctive.

⁸ Or were remaining; use the imperfect.

⁴ Use the Relative with the Subjunctive.

⁵ That . . . in Gaul, an Object Clause; see 119 498.

Note. — In these examples observe that the Subordinate verbs, $\bar{u}tar$, esset, express the Result of what is stated in the principal clause. They are in the Subjunctive in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XLIII. - Result.

500. The Subjunctive is used to denote RESULT:

I. With the relative qui, and with relative adverbs, as ubi, unde, cur, etc.:

Non is sum qui (= ut ego) his ūtar, I am not such a one as TO USE these things. Cic. Innocentia est adfectio talis animi, quae (= ut ea) noceat nēmini, innocence is such a state of mind as injures no one. Cic.

II. With ut, ut non, quin:

Ita vīxit ut Athēniensibus esset cārissimus, he so lived that HE WAS very dear to the Athenians. Nep. Ita laudo, ut non pertimēscam, I so praise as not to fear.² Cic.

501. Clauses of Result readily pass into Substantive Clauses, but they still retain the Subjunctive. Thus the Subjunctive is used—

I. In Subject Clauses:

Fit ut quisque délectetur, it happens that every one is delighted. Cic. Sequitur ut falsum sit, it follows that it is false. Cic.

II. In Object Clauses:

Sol efficit ut omnia floreant, the sun causes all things to bloom (i. e., produces that result). Cic.

503. The Subjunctive is used in Relative Clauses to characterize an Indefinite or General Antecedent:

Quid est quod të delectăre possit, what is there which can delight you? Cic. Sunt qui putent, there are some who think. Cic. Nemo est qui non cupiat, there is no one who does not desire. Cic.

¹ Is qui, literally, he who = 'such that I.' Talis quae, literally, such which = 'such that it.'

² Or that I do not fear.

124. Vocabulary.

Barbarus, a, um,
Commovet,
Compellit,
Compellit,
Complūrēs, plura or plūria,
Condōnat,
Contendit, 134, foot-note 2. he hastens, goes in haste.
Continet,
Eques, itis, m.
Finis, is, m. and f. 1
Injūria, ae, f.
Ita, adv.
Littera, ae, f.

Barbarus, rude.
he moves, disturbs.
he drives.
very many, many, severo
he condones, pardons, fo
he contends, fights.
he restrains, retains, con
horseman; pl. horsemen
end, limit; fīnēs, pl. m.
injūry, wrong.
letter, letter of the alphat
pl. letters; a letter, ep

Perīculum, ī, n.
Prohibet,
Scit, 4,
Silva, ae, f.
Tam, adv.
Tantus, a, um,
Tempestās, ātis, f.

barbarous, rude. he moves, disturbs. he drives. very many, many, several. he condones, pardons, forgives. he contends, fights. he restrains, retains, confines, keeps. horseman; pl. horsemen, cavalry. end, limit; fīnēs, pl. m. boundaries, [territory. injury, wrong. so, in such a way. letter, letter of the alphabet; litterae, pl. letters; a letter, epistle. peril, danger. he prohibits, checks, prevents, keeps. he knows. wood, forest. so, to such an extent. so great. weather; tempest, storm.

125. Translate into English.

1. Mīlitēs omnēs fortissimē pūgnābant. 2. Tanta mīlitum virtūs fuit ut omnēs fortissimē pūgnārent. 3. Timor māgnus omnem exercitum occupāvit. 4. Timor māgnus mentēs mīlitum omnium perturbābat. 5. Omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāvit. 6. Tantus timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. 7. Caesar nōn is fuit quī hostēs timēret. 2. 8. Erant tempestātēs quae nostrōs 3 in castrīs continērent. 9. Tempestātēs hostem ā pūgnā prohibuērunt. 10. Erant complūrēs diēs 4 tempestātēs quae hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent.

11. Ariovistus non tam barbarus fuit ut haec non sciret.12. Hī nūntiī Caesarem ita commovent ut castra vallo fos-

³ Lit., our, ours; render our men; a Possessive used substantively.

⁴ Accusative of Duration of Time. See 98, Rule IX.

sāque mūniat. 13. Hī nūntiī litteraeque Caesarem ita commovent ut in fīnēs Belgārum contendat. 14. Equitēs hostium cum equitātū nostrō ita cōnflīgunt ut nostrī¹ eōs in silvās compellant. 15. Tanta Divitiacī apud Caesarem grātia fuit ut injūriam condōnāret. 16. Utinam in reliquum tempus timōris suspīciōnem vītētis. 17. Imperātor sex legiōnēs mīsit quae hanc urbem oppūgnārent. 18. Utinam hae cīvitātēs in armīs essent. 19. Utinam omnēs mīlitēs nostrī fortiter pūgnārent.

126. Translate into Latin.

1. Our soldiers fought so bravely that they conquered² the enemy. 2. The courage of our soldiers is so great that they always fight bravely, and withstand all the attacks of the enemy. 3. They are not so barbarous as not to help (that they do not help) their friends. 4. He is not one who (that one who) would announce our counsels to the enemy. 5. So great fear took possession of the commander that he led the army back into camp. 6. So great fear took possession of the Gauls that they fortified their camp with a most and a rampart.

7. The fear of the enemy was so great that they gave up the hostages. 8. The soldiers of the tenth legion were so brave that they did not fear the enemy. 9. Our soldiers are so brave that they are prepared for 3 all dangers. 10. Fear so disturbs your minds that you do not listen to (hear) me. 11. For 4 the future let us avoid all suspicions. 12, For the future our soldiers will fight so bravely that they will avoid suspicion of fear. 13. Would that all our citizens were in arms. 14. The enemy sent a large army to assault our city.

¹ See foot-note 2, page 104.

² What Mood will you use in Latin? See 123, Rule XLIII.

³ Use ad. See 116, foot-note on ad.

⁴ Use in. See 116, foot-note on in.

LESSON XLIII.

AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE. --PRESENT RULE LV.

127. Examples. — Indirect Questions.

1. Quaeris cūr dissentiant.

You ask WHY THEY DISAGREE.

2. Quaesivit salvusne esset clipeus. He asked whether his shield

WAS SAFE.

Note. - In these examples observe that the Subordinate clauses cūr dissentiant, 'why they disagree,' 1 and salvusne esset clipeus, 'whether the (his) shield was safe,' i involve questions without directly asking them. Such clauses are called Indirect Questions. The verbs in these Indirect Questions are in the Subjunctive, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE LV. - Moods in Indirect Clauses.

529. The Subjunctive is used —

I. In indirect questions:

Quaeritur, cūr doctissimī hominės dissentiant, it is a question, why the most learned men disagree. Cic. Quaesieras, nonne putarem, you had asked whether I did not think. Cic. Qualis sit animus, animus nescit, the soul knows not what the soul is. Cic. Quid dies ferat incertum est, what a day will bring forth is uncertain. Cic.

II. Often in clauses dependent upon an Infinitive or upon another Subjunctive:

Nihil indīgnius est quam eum quī culpā careat supplicio non carere, nothing is more shameful than that he who is free from fault should not be exempt from punishment. Cic. Vereor nē, dum minuere velim laborem, augeam, I fear that while I wish to diminish the labor, I shall increase it. Cic.

3. Indirect double questions are generally introduced by the same interrogative particles as are direct double questions (106, 353).

¹ The Indirect question, cūr dissentiant, involves the Direct question, Cur dissentiunt? 'why do they disagree?' Salvusne esset clipeus involves the Direct question: Salvusne est clipeus? 'is the shield safe?'

Thus they generally take utrum or -ne in the first member, and an in the second:

Quaeritur virtūs suamne propter dignitātem an propter frūctūs aliquos expetātur, it is asked whether virtue is sought for its own worth, or for certain advantages. Cic.

128. Vocabulary.

the Arar, a river in southeastern Gaul, Arar, aris, m. [the modern Saône. Atque, conj. and. Captivus, i, m. captive. Conducit, he leads together, brings together. he contends, struggles, fights. Decertat, Fluit. it flows. Gerit, he carries on, does, wages. Igitur, conj. therefore. Interior,2 us. interior, inner. Jūdicat, he judges. Ob, prep. w. acc. on account of, for. Officium, ii, n. duty. Proelium, ii, n. battle, engagement. Pudor, óris, m. shame, respect. Quaerit, he inquires, asks, seeks. Quantus, a, um, how great. Quot, indeclinable, how manu. Rēmī, ŏrum, m. pl. The Remi, a tribe of northern Gaul. Uter, tra, trum, 45, 151. which (of two). [ence. he avails, prevails, has force or influ-Valet.

129. Translate into English.

1. Quae cīvitātēs in armīs sunt? Ab hīs lēgātīs quaerit quae cīvitātēs in armīs sint.³ 2. Quae cīvitātēs quantaeque ⁴ in armīs sunt? Ab hīs quaerēbat quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent. 3. Quid dīcit Ariovistus? Quid dīcat Ariovistus cōgnōscite. Hīs lēgātīs imperāvit ut, quid dīceret

¹ Accusative Ararem or Ararim, Ablative Arare or Arari.

² See 86, 166.

³ Quae . . . sint, an Indirect Question. What would be the Direct Question? For Translation, see Suggestion XVII ., 2.

⁴ Quantaeque, composed of quantae and the conjunction que, 'and.'

Ariovistus, cōgnōscerent. 4. In utram partem¹ fluit Arar? In utram partem fluat Arar jūdicēmus.

5. Quam ob rem¹Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertat? Caesar ex captīvīs quaerēbat quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret. 6. Omnem exercitum in ūnum locum condūcāmus. 7. Nōnne pudor apud vōs valet? Num apud vōs timor valet? Utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor valet? Intellegāmus utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor valeat. 8. Quid gerunt Belgae? 9. Quid gerēbant Belgae? Imperātor sciēbat quid gererent Belgae. 10. Trēs legiōnēs igitur in interiōrem Galliam mittat.

130. Translate into Latin.

- 1. For what reason are the Gauls fortifying their cities? Let us ascertain for what reason the Gauls are fortifying their camp. 2. Let us inquire of the ambassadors how many Germans there are in Gaul. 3. Caesar knew how many Germans there were in Gaul. 4. Let us inquire of the captives how many states of Gaul are in arms. 5. Did Caesar know how many states of Gaul were in arms? He knew which states were in arms. 6. Inquire in which direction the Rhine flows.
- 7. Caesar knew how large the states of Gaul were. Did he then know how brave the Belgians were? He knew who were the bravest of all the Gauls. 8. The Gauls did ⁵ not understand who their enemies were. So great fear took possession of the Gauls that they did not understand who their enemies were. 9. He inquired of the captives into what place Ariovistus was leading his army. ⁵

² What Mood will you use in Latin? See 127, 529, I.

¹ Partem, lit. part; render direction; rem, lit. thing; render reason.

³ Or from; render by ab. This preposition has the form ab before vowels and h; the form \bar{a} or ab before the other letters.

⁴ What Tense will you use? See 129, 9.

⁵ Did not understand, continued action like sciebat in 129,9; inquired, i. e., repeatedly = was inquiring, as in 129, 2.

⁶ For Moods, see 123, Rule XLIII., and 127, Rule LV.

LESSON XLIV.

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE. -- RULE LVI.

131. The Present Infinitive of the verb Sum is esse, 'to be.' In the four conjugations, the Present Infinitive Active has the following

ENDINGS.

Conj. I. Conj. II. Conj. III. Conj. IV. āre, ēre, ere, īre.

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE.

First conjugation, Second conjugation, Third conjugation, Fourth conjugation, Verb sum, amāre, to love. monēre, to advise. regere, to rule. audīre, to hear. esse. to be.

132. Examples. — Infinitive.

1. Haec vītāre cupit.

He desires to Avoid these things.

2. Vincere scit.

He knows how to conquer.

3. Gestiunt scīre omnia.

They long to know all things.

Note. —In these examples observe that $v\bar{\imath}t\bar{\alpha}re$ depends upon the verb *cupit*, 'he desires to avoid,' *vincere* upon *scit*, and *scire* upon *gestiunt*. They are all in the infinitive, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE LVI. - Infinitive.

533. Many verbs admit an Infinitive to complete or qualify their meaning:

Audeō dicere, I dare say (I venture to say). Cic. Haec vītāre cupimus, we desire to avoid these things. Cic. Cōnstituit nōn prōgredī, he decided not to advance. Caes. Crēdulī esse coepērunt, they began to be credulous. Cic. Vincere scīs, you know how to conquer (you know to conquer). Liv. Vīctōriā ūtī nescīs, you do not know how to use victory. Liv.

¹ For the Infinitive, see p. 14, 200, I.

133. In the Irregular verb *Possum*, 'I am able,' a compound of *Sum*,¹ the THIRD PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *present*, *imperfect*, *future*, and *perfect* of the *indica- ive* has the following forms:

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Pres. potest, he is able; Imp. poterat, he was able; Fut. poterit, he will be able; Perf. potuit, he has been able; possunt, they are able.
poterant, they were able.
poterant, they will be able.
potuerunt, they have been able.

134. Vocabulary.

Altitūdō, inis, f. Autem, conj., foot-note p. 316. Citerior, ius, 86, 166,

but.

height, depth.

termined.

Cōgit,

nearer; citerior Gallia, Cisalpine Gaul, Gaul south of the Alps. he drives together, brings together,

Comportat, Constituit, pres. and perfect,² he drives together, orings together, collects; he forces, compels. he brings together, gathers. he determines, has determined, de-

Diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, adv. Dubitat, Expūgnat, for a long time.
he hesitates, doubts.
he takes by storm.

Frümentum, \bar{i} , n.

Ib \bar{i} , adv. \bar{i} talia, ae, f.

L \bar{a} tit \bar{u} d \bar{o} , inis, f.

there.
Italy.

grain.

Mātūrat, with infinitive,

width, thickness.
he hastens.

Pēs, pedis, m.

foot.

Potest, Propter, prep. w. acc.

he is able, can. on account of.

Renovat, Vastat, he renews. he lays waste.

Venetia, ae, f. Vērō, adv.

Venetia, the country of the Veneti. in truth, indeed; as conj., but.

¹ Compounded of potis, 'able,' and sum, 'I am.'

² In a few verbs the third person singular has the same form in the perfect as in the present. Thus constituit in the present tense means he determines; in the perfect, he has determined, or he determined. Contendit, 124, is also either present or perfect.

³ Thus dicere mātūrat, he hastens to write.

135. Translate into English.

1. Caesar hõc oppidum propter lätitüdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem expūgnāre nõn poterat. 2. Hostēs impetum nostrõrum mīlitum diūtius sustinēre nõn poterant. 3. Gallī adventum Rōmānōrum ibī exspectāre cōnstituērunt. 4. Mīlitēs omnia impedīmenta sēcum¹ portāre dēbent. 5. Mīlitēs sēsē² diūtius sustinēre nõn poterant. 6. Caesar autem castra in altitūdinem pedum³ duodecim vallō mūnīre cōnstituit. 7. Imperātor hanc urbem māgnam oppūgnāre nōn dubitāvit.

8. Imperātor hunc locum altissimō mūrō mūnīre dēbet. 9. Venetī cōnstituērunt oppida mūnīre, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportāre, nāvēs in Venetiam cōgere. 10. Tum vērō Caesar manūs⁴ māgnās cōgere cōnstituit. 11. Gallī multīs dē causīs bellum renovāre cōnstituērunt. 12. Rōmānī agrōs nostrōs vastāre nōn dēbent. 13. Imperātor duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā cōnscrībere mātūrāvit. 14. Hostēs omnem exercitum in ūnum locum condūcere mātūrāvērunt.

136. Translate into Latin.

1. Are the enemy able to take our city by storm? They can (are able to) attack the city, but on account of the valor of the citizens, and the height of the wall, they cannot take it by storm. 2. Caesar hastened to fortify his camp. 3. The soldiers determined to remain and avoid suspicion of fear. 4. The Romans determined to fortify their camp with a rampart. 5. They determined to enrol five legions in Italy. 6. Were the Helvetii able to take their grain with them. They were not able to take all their grain with them.

¹ Observe that the preposition *cum* is appended to the pronoun *sē*. See 102.184.6.

² Reduplicated form of the pronoun. See 102, 184, 4.

³ Construe with vallō. 4 See **94**, and 102, 184, 6.

7. The enemy are so brave that they do not hesitate¹ to renew the war. 8. Ought not the commander to ascertain what states are in arms?² He has not been able to ascertain what states are in arms. 9. The enemy will not be able to sustain the attacks of our soldiers. 10. The citizens did not hesitate to remain in Italy. 11. Let not the commander hesitate to fortify the city with a high wall. 12. The soldiers ought not to hesitate to remain in line, that they may avoid suspicion of fear.

LESSON XLV.

READING AT SIGHT. - DIRECTIONS. -- EXERCISE.

137. Directions for Reading at Sight.

- I. Read at Sight in the Latin, slowly and attentively, the entire passage that is assigned for the exercise. In this reading
- 1. Remember that the full and exact meaning of an inflected word contains two distinct elements.
- 1) The general meaning of the word, without reference to case, number, mood, tense, etc., that is, the meaning of the STEM. See 11, 46.
- 2) The meaning of the endings which mark case, number, mood, tense, etc., that is, the meaning of the suffixes.
- 2. Recall as vividly as possible the exact meaning of all the words which you recognize.
- 3. Notice carefully the *ending* of each word, and thus determine which words are nouns, which verbs, etc.
- 4. Determine from these endings case, number, voice, mood, tense, etc., and endeavor to recall the exact force of each.

¹ What Mood will you use in rendering into Latin? See 123, 500, IL

² By what Mood will you render are? See 127, 529, I.

5. In Complex and Compound Sentences, observe carefully the relation of the clauses to one another, and determine which are principal, and which are subordinate. Remember that a clause introduced by a conjunction meaning and, or, but, therefore, adds a new thought, while a clause introduced by a conjunction meaning when, since, etc., only ex-

plains or modifies some other clause.

II. Having by this first reading acquired a good general idea of the entire passage, read a second time with the same care. If in this reading any word should appear unfamiliar, endeavor to recall some passage in which you have previously met it. Be not hasty in turning to the passage, but use the knowledge which you already possess. As a last resort, if you fail to recall the word, turn to the vocabulary for it, and make yourself so familiar with it, that you will always recognize it in future.

III. Having by these two readings thoroughly mastered the entire passage, read the Latin aloud two or three times, for the important purpose of appreciating and enjoying the thought in its original form. By this practice the Latin will become, in time, a second vernacular, and you will enjoy reading a fine passage in Latin as you would enjoy reading

one in English.

IV. After having thus read and examined the Latin, write a translation ² of the passage in good idiomatic English.

138. Read at sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.

Omnēs ferē Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāvērunt. Caesar igitur duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā cōn-

¹On Principal and Subordinate Clauses, see p. 11, 348, notes.

² On Translation, see Suggestions XII, to XIX.

³ It is hoped that the pupil will enter upon this exercise with the determination to master it without help from any source. He has already had in previous lessons every word and every construction contained in it. The

scrīpsit et in interiorem Galliam quī dēdūceret Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse posteā ad exercitum contendit et Gallīs imperāvit ut quid Belgae gererent cōgnōscerent. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt: "Belgae manūs māgnās cōgunt, et omnem exercitum in ūnum locum condūcunt." Tum vērō Caesar rem frūmentāriam comparāvit et ad fīnēs Belgārum contendit. Rēmī autem quī nōn in armīs erant, ad eum lēgātōs mīsērunt quī cum populō Rōmānō pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmārent, et dīcerent: "Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armìs sunt."

139. Translate into Latin.

1. The Remi did not conspire against the Roman people. All the rest of the Belgae did not hesitate to conspire against the Romans. 2. Caesar enrolled many legions in Italy and Gaul. He determined to send a lieutenant to conduct two legions into the interior of Gaul. 3. The Remi hastened to establish peace and friendship with the Roman people. They will announce to the Romans what the rest of the Belgae are doing.

4. Caesar determined to hasten to the army and to ascertain what the Gauls were doing. 5. The tidings so disturbed the commander that he hastened to enrol soldiers and to fortify his camp. 6. Let us prepare supplies of grain and hasten toward the territory of the enemy. 7. Caesar ordered Pedius, the lieutenant, to conduct the legions into Gaul. 8. The Belgae determined to collect large bands of men. 9. The commander determined to send five legions to withstand the attack of the enemy.

important point is, not that he should translate it absolutely at sight, but that he should master it entirely by means of his own resources. These exercises in Reading at Sight are intended to encourage independent work, to promote self-reliance in study, and to give facility in reading and appreciating Latin.

¹ What Mood should be used in rendering into Latin? See 119, 497, L

² For the choice of words, see 124 and 134.

LESSON XLVI.

VERB Sum IN FULL.

140. Lesson from the Grammar.

CONJUGATION.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations. These Four Conjugations are distinguished from one another by the stem characteristics or by the endings of the Infinitive, as follows:

	CHARACTERISTICS.	INFINITIVE ENDINGS.
Conj. I.	ā	ā-re
II.	ē	ē-re
III.	е	e-re
IV.	ĩ	ī-re

202. PRINCIPAL PARTS.—The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine are called from their importance, the *Principal Parts* of the verb.

203. The Entire Conjugation of any regular verb may be readily formed from the Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.¹

1. Sum, I am, is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly, its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset. The Principal Parts are—

PRES. INDIC.	Pres. Infin.	PERF. INDIC.
Sum, Iam,	esse, to be,	fuī, I have been.

¹ In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings which distinguish the various forms are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed. In the principal tenses each ending contains the characteristic vowel.

PRES. IND.

sum.

fuit,

204. Sum, I am.—Stems, es, fu.

PRES. INF.

esse.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PERF. IND.

fuï.

SUPINE.

they have been.

D'anna,	•===		•	
	I	NDICATIVE :	Mood.	
	SINGULAR.	PRESENT TE	INSE. PL	URAL.
sum,2	I am,	1	sumus,	we are,
es,	thou art,3		es tis ,	you are,
es t ,	he is ;		sunt,	they are.
		IMPERFEC	T.	
eram,	I was,	1	er āmus ,	we were,
erās,	thou wast,3		er ātis ,	you were,
erat,	he was ;		er ant ,	they were.
		FUTURE	G.	
er ō ,4	I shall be,5	1	er imus ,	we shall be,
er is ,	thou wilt be,	1	er itis ,	you will be,
er it ,	he will be;		er unt ,	they will be.
		PERFEC	г.	
fuï,	I have been,5	1	fu imus ,	we have been,
fuistī.	thou hast been,		fu istis ,	you have been,

PLUPERFECT.

fu**ëre.**

fueram.	I had been,	fu erām	us, we had been,
fu erās ,	thou hadst been, he had been;		s, you had been, t, they had been.

EUTURE PERFECT.

	1.010101	T MIN MONT	
fu er ŏ.	I shall have been,	fuerīmus,	we shall have been,
fu erĭs ,	thou wilt have been,	,	you will have been,
fu erit ,	he will have been;	fu erint ,	they will have been

¹ The Supine is wanting.

he has been;

² Sum is for esum, eram for esam. Whenever s of the stem es comes between two vowels, e is dropped, as in sum, sunt, or s is changed to r, as in eram, ero; see p. 3,31 The pupil will observe that the endings which are added to the roots es and fu are distinguished by the type.

³ Or you are, and in the Imperfect, you were; thou is confined mostly to solemn discourse.

⁴ In verbs, final o, marked ŏ, is generally long.

⁶ Or, Future, I will be; Perfect, I was.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	SINGULAR. PRES	SENT.	LURAL.
sim,	may I be,1	s īmus ,	let us be,
sīs,	mayst thou be,2	•	be ye, may you be,
sit,	let him be, may he be;		let them be.
	IMPER	RFECT.	
essem,	I should be,1		we should be,
essēs,		es sētis , es sent ,	you would be,
es set ,		es sent ,	they would be.
	PER	FECT.	
fuerim	I may have been,1	fu erīmus ,	we may have been,
	thou mayst have been,	fuerītis,	you may have been,
	he may have been;		they may have been.
	PLUPE	RFECT.	
fuisser	n, I should have been,	fuissēmus,	we should have been,
	thou wouldst have been,		you would have been,
	, he would have been;		they would have been.
	Imper	ATIVE.	
Pres. es,	be thou,	es te ,	be ye.
Fut. est	, thou shalt be,3	es tōte ,	ye shall be,
	he shall be; 3	suntō,	
	Infinitive.	ı Paf	RTICIPLE.
Pres. ess	e. to be.		
	sse, to have been.		
	ūrus esse,4 to be about		
	be.		s,4 about to be.

- 1. In the Paradigm all the forms beginning with e or s are from the stem es; all others from the stem fu.5
- 2. RARE FORMS:—forem, fores, foret, forent, fore, for essem, essest, essent, futurus esse; siem, siès, siet, sient, or fuam, fuās, fuat, fuant, for sim, sis, sit, sint.

¹ On the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196, and remember that it is often best rendered by the Indicative. Thus, sim may often be rendered I am, and fuerim, I have been.

² Or be thou, or may you be.

³ The Fut. may also be rendered like the Pres., or with let: be thou; let him be.

⁴ Futūrus is declined like bonus. So in the Infinitive: futūrus, a, um esse.

⁵ Es and fu are roots as well as stems. As the basis of this paradigm they are properly stems, but as they are not derived from more primitive forms, they are in themegelves roots.

LESSON XLVII.

VERB SUM. — RULE XIV. — EXERCISES.

141. Examples. — Dative with Adjectives.

Patria omnibus cāra est. Native country is dear to all. Pāx nōbīs grāta fuit. Peace was acceptable to us.

Note. — Observe in these examples that omnibus, limiting the meaning of $c\bar{a}ra$, 'dear,' and $n\bar{o}bis$ that of $gr\bar{a}ta$, 'acceptable,' are both in the Dative. This Latin usage is expressed in the following

RULE XIV. - Dative with Adjectives.

391. With adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative:

Patriae sõlum omnibus cārum est, the soil of their country is dear to all. Cic. Id aptum est temporī, this is adapted to the time. Cic. Canis similis lupō est, a dog is similar to a wolf. Cic.

142. Vocabulary.

continually, incessantly. Continenter, adv. Divico, an Helvetian chieftain. Divicō, ōnis, m. stream, river. Flūmen, inis, n. embassy. Lēgātiŏ, ōnis, f. by far, far, long. Longē, adv. noble, of high birth. Nobilis, e, in all, only. Omnīnō, adv. Orgetorix, an Helvetian chieftain. Orgetorix, igis, m. equal, a match for. Pār, paris,1 bridge. Pons, pontis, m. the Rhone. Rhodanus, i, m. Sequanian, of the Sequani; see 211. Sēguanus, a, um, witness. Testis, is, m. and f. 1 [Gaul.3 all, the whole of. Tōtus,2 a, um,

1 Decline testis like hostis; par like audāx, i. e., with the same case endings.
2 See 45, 151, and 86, 166.

Ulterior, us, 2 adj. comp. farther; Gallia ulterior, Transalpine

⁸ That is, Gaul beyond the Alps from Rome, Gaul west of the Alps.

143. Translate into English.

1. Belgae, quī Gallōrum¹ omnium fortissimī erant, cum Germānīs continenter bellum gerēbant. 2. Helvētiī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt, cūjus² lēgātiōnis Divicō prīnceps fuit. 3. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix. 4. Fuerat omnīnō in Galliā ūlteriōre legiŏ ūna. 5. Ad bellum parātī sīmus. 6. Legiōnēs multās cōnscrīpsit ut ad bellum parātus esset.³

7. Hūjus ret populus Romānus sit testis. 8. Ager Sequanus erat optimus totīus Galliae. 9. Ariovistus, rex Germānorum, tertiam partem agrī Sequanī occupāvit. 10. In 4 eo flūmine pons erat. 11. Mīlitēs omnēs fortes esse debent. 12. Hostes pares esse nostro exercituī non poterant.

144. Translate into Latin.

- 1. You shall be chief of the embassy which the citizens are sending to the enemy. 2. You are the bravest of all the soldiers. 3. Who will be braver than this soldier? 4. Let us all be brave. 5. Did he not say: "All the Gauls were in arms"? He says: "All the Gauls will be in arms." 6. Caesar was in Italy, but his legions were in Gaul. 7. The Helvetii said: "We are the bravest of the Gauls."
- 8. The Gauls had always been prepared for war. 9. Shall you be prepared to withstand the attack of the enemy? 10. Let us be brave, that we may be prepared to withstand the attacks of the enemy. 11. Were the Gauls a match for the Romans? They were not a match for the Roman soldiers.

 2 $C\bar{u}jus$ is here an adjective, agreeing with $l\bar{e}g\bar{a}ti\bar{o}nis$, according to Rule XXXIV.; see 40.

¹ Gallōrum is a Partitive Genitive, governed by fortissimī used substantively, according to Rule XVI.; see 28, 397.

³ Why in the Subjunctive, and why in the Imperfect? See 119, Rules XLI. and XLII.

⁴ Render over, and observe the difference of idiom between the Latin and the English. 5 Why in the Dative? See 141, Rule XIV.

LESSON XLVIII.

FIRST CONJUGATION - INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

145. Lesson from the Grammar.

In the verb $Am\bar{o}$ learn the Indicative Mood of the Active voice. See page 124.

LESSON XLIX.

FIRST CONJUGATION.—INDICATIVE ACTIVE.— EXERCISES.

146. Vocabulary.

Acceptus, a, um,

Aeduī, \bar{o} rum, m. pl.

Amīcus, a, um, Auxilium, ii. n.

Divitiacus, $\bar{\imath}$, m. Dumnorix, igis, m.

Educit, Fīnitimus, a, um,

Graecia, ae, f. Graviter, adv.

Hiberna, ōrum, n. pl. Jam. adv.

Māximē, sup. adv. Mons, montis, m.

Plēbs, plēbis, f.

Profectio, onis, f.

Senātus, ūs, m.

Trāns, prep. w. acc. Trēverī, ōrum, m. pl. acceptable.

the Aedui, Aeduans, a tribe of friendly. [central Gaul.

aid.

Colloco, are, avi, atum, to place, station.

Divitiacus, an Aeduan chieftain. Dumnorix, an Aeduan chieftain.

he leads out. neighboring. Greece.

severely. winter quarters.

already.

most, very greatly. mountain.

the common people, populace.

departure, starting.

senate.

across, beyond. the Treveri, a tribe of northeastern

[Gaul.

147. Translate into English.

1. Caesar exercitum in hībernīs collocāvit. 2. Helvētiī in tertium annum¹ profectionem lege² confirmant. 3. Cum

¹ In tertium annum, lit. 'into the third year'; render for or upon the ² See **78**, Rule XXV. third year.

multīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāverant. 4. Caesar Aeduōrum prīncipēs, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, graviter accūsāvit. 5. Fugitīvī hostibus eam rem nūntiāvērunt. 6. Omnēs auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrābant. 7. Divitiacus Aeduus māximē plēbī acceptus erat. 8. Belgae prōximī sunt Germānīs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt. 9. Trēverī prōximī flūminī Rhēnō fuērunt.

10. Caesar trēs legiōnēs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hībernīs ēdūxit.¹ 11. Tum in Galliā hiemābāmus. 12. Auxilium ā Caesare implorāverāmus. 13. Num nostra consilia hostibus nūntiāvistī? Non vestra consilia hostibus nūntiāvī. 14. Prīncipēs Aeduōrum graviter accūsāvistis. 15. Prō patriā fortiter pūgnābimus. 16. Nonne timoris suspīcionem vītābis? In reliquum tempus omnēs suspīcionēs vītābō. 17. Helvētiī frūmentum sēcum² portābunt. 18. Helvētiī jam agrōs vastāverant et oppida expūgnābant.

148. Translate into Latin.

1. Will this judge be acceptable to you? He will be acceptable to me and to all the citizens. 2. Have you announced this battle to the consul? I have announced it to the consul and to the senate. 3. Shall you pass the winter in Italy? We shall pass the winter in Greece. 4. The commander will place his whole army in winter quarters in Gaul, and pass the the winter himself in Italy.

5. We hastened to establish peace and friendship with the neighboring states. 6. Did you not implore aid from your friends? We implored aid from all our friends. 7. You have severely censured the commander himself. 8. The Remi were friendly to the Romans. 9. Of all the Gauls the Helvetii were the nearest to the Germans, with whom 4 they were continually waging war.

¹ For $\bar{e}d\bar{u}c$ -sit, the perfect of $\bar{e}d\bar{u}cit$. 2 See 102, 184, 6,

³ For the proper construction, see 54, Rule XII.

⁴ With whom. See 106, 187, 2.

LESSON L.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE. — REVIEW OF DECLENSIONS I. AND II.—RULE XXXI.

149. Vocabulary.

Absum, abesse, āfuī, Collis, is, m, like $\bar{i}gnis$. Convocō, āre, āvī, ātum, Fuga, ae, f.

Movet, Nox, noctis, f.

Occultō, āre, āvī, ātum, Praesidium, iī, n. Septimus, a, um,

Subdūcit, Tentō, āre, āvī, atum, to be absent, distant.

hill.

to call together, assemble.

flight.
he moves.
night.
to hide.
garrison.
seventh.

he withdraws, leads off.

to try.

150. Translate into English.

- 1. Rōmānī Helvētiōs superābunt. 2. Eō tempore¹ Helvētiī adventum Caesaris exspectābant. 3. Aeduī bellī fortūnam tentāvērunt. 4. Nox fugam hostium nōn occultāvit. 5. Ariovistus eās omnēs cōpiās ūnō proeliō superāvit. 6. Prōximō diē Caesar ē castrīs cōpiās ēdūxit. 7. Nōnne hōc proelium imperātōrī nūntiāvistī? 8. Hōc proelium imperātōrī nūntiābō. 9. Num bellum renovābitis? Multīs dē causīs² bellum renovābimus.
- 10. Caesar prīncipēs Aeduōrum convocāvit et graviter eōs accūsāvit. 11. Septimō diē Ariovistī cōpiae ā nōbīs nōn longē aberant. 12. Prōximā nocte castra movēbāmus. 13. Imperātor castra movet ut intellegat³ utrum apud mīlitēs pudor atque officium an timor valeat.³ 14. Caesar hŏc

¹ For construction, see 93, Rule XXXI.

² Literally, from or out of many causes; render for many reasons.

³ Explain Mood; 119 and 127, Rules XLII. and LV.

oppidum occupāvit et ibī praesidium collocāvit. 15. Suās cōpiās in prōximum collem subdūcit.

151. Translate into Latin.

1. Caesar was at that time praising the soldiers of the tenth legion. 2. He had often praised the valor of that legion. 3. On what day did you renew the war? We renewed the war on the tenth day. 4. On which day did the ambassadors announce to you the flight of the enemy? They announced it to us on the same day. 5. Caesar had called together the chiefs of the Aedui, that he might upbraid¹ them. 6. Have you called us together at this time, that you may upbraid us? I have called you together that I may praise your valor, and that I may announce to you the approach of the enemy.

7. For what reason 2 did you renew the war at that time? We renewed the war that we might conquer the enemy. 8. At that time we were awaiting the arrival of the general. 9. On the next night the Gauls seized the town. 10. We shall conquer in a single battle 3 all the forces of the enemy. 11. On the seventh day we shall have placed a garrison in the town, and on the next day we shall try the fortune of war.

LESSON LI.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE IN FULL. — REVIEW OF DECLENSION III.

152. Lesson from the Grammar.

In the verb $Am\bar{o}$, learn the Active voice in full. See the following page.

¹ For Mood and Tense, see 119, Rules XLI. and XLII.

² For what reason; see note on multis $d\bar{e}$ causis, 150.

³ In a single battle; Latin idiom, by a single battle.

FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

205. ACTIVE VOICE.—Amő, I love.

VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, amā.1

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

	T T	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
PRES. IND.	Pres. Inf.		
am ō ,	am āre ,	am āvī ,	am ātum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PRESENT TENSE.	PLURAL.
am ŏ ,¹ am ās , am at ,	I love, ² you love, ³ he loves;	am āmus , am ātis , am ant ,	we love, you love, they love.
		IMPERFECT.	

am ābam ,	I was loving,	amābāmus,	we were loving,
am ābās ,	you were loving,	am ābātis ,	you were loving,
am ābat ,	$he\ was\ loving$;	am ābant ,	they were loving.

FUTURE.

am āb ō, am ābis , am ābit ,	I shall love,4 you will love, he will love;	l	am ābimus, am ābitis, am ābunt,	we shall love, you will love, they will love.
		-		

PERFECT.

amāvī,	I have loved,5	amävimus, we have loved,
amāv ist ī.	you have loved,	amävistis, you have loved,
`amāv it ,	he has loved;	amāvērunt, ēre, they have loved

PLUPERFECT.

amāveram,	I had loved,		amāv erāmus	, we had loved,
amāv erās ,	you had loved,	į	amäv erātis ,	you had loved,
amāv erat ,	he had loved;	l	amäv erant ,	they had loved.

FUTURE PERFECT.

amāv er ō.	I shall have loved,4	amāv erīmus ,	we shall have loved,
amāv erīs .	you will have loved,	amāv erītis ,	you will have loved,
	he will have loved;		they will have loved.
allo Cine,	100 0000 1000	•	•

¹ The final \tilde{a} of the stem disappears in $am\tilde{o}$ for $ama-\tilde{o}$, amem, $am\tilde{e}s$, etc., for $ama-\tilde{o}s$ Im, ama-is, etc. Also in the Pass in amor for ama-or, amer, etc., for ama-ir, etc. Final o, marked \check{o} , is generally long.

² Or I am loving, I do love. So in the Imperfect, I loved, I was loving, I did love. 3 Or thou lovest. So in the other tenses, thou wast loving, thou wilt love, etc.

⁴ Or I will love. So in the Future Perfect, I shall have loved or I will have loved.

⁵ Or I loved.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

amem. amēs. amet.

SINGULAR. may I love,1 may you love, let him love :

am**ēmus**. amētis, ament.

let us love. may you love, let them love.

PLURAL.

IMPERFECT.

amārem, am**ārēs**, amäret.

I should love. you would love. he would love:

am**ārēmus**. am**ārētis.** amārent.

we should love, you would love, they would love.

PERFECT.

amāv**erim.** amāverīs, amāv**erit**,

I may have loved,2 you may have loved, he may have loved:

amāverīmus, we may have loved, amāverītis, you may have loved, amāv**erimt.** they may have loved.

PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem, I should have loved, amāv**issēs**, amävisset.

amāviissēmus, we should have loved, you would have loved, amavissetis, you would have loved, he would have loved; amavissent, they would have loved.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. ama,

love thou :

amāte.

love ye.

Fut. amāto, thou shalt love. amātō. he shall love ;

amātōte, amantō.

ye shall love. they shall love.

INFINITIVE.

to love.

Pres. amare.

Perf. amāvisse, to have loved. Fut. amātūrus 3 esse, to be about

to love.

Participle.

Pres. amāns.4

Fut. amātūrus,3 about to love.

GERUND.

Gen. amandī, of loving. Dat. amandō, for loving. Acc. amandum, loving,

Abl. amandō, bu loving.

SUPINE.

Acc. amātum.

to love.

Abl. amātū. to love, be loved.

¹ On the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196.

² Often best rendered I have loved. So in the Pluperfect, I had loved.

³ Decline like bonus, 39, 148.

⁴ For declension, see 86, 157.

LESSON LII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE. — REVIEW OF DECLENSION III. — RULE VI. — EXERCISES.

153. Examples. — Two Accusatives.

1. Platēnem Homērum philosophērum appellant.

They call Plato the Homer of philosophers.

2. Urbem Rōmam vocāvit.

He called THE CITY ROME.

Note.—In these examples observe that appellant, 'they call,' takes two Accusatives, Platōnem and Homērum, both referring to the same person, and that vocāvit, 'he called,' also takes two Accusatives, urbem and Rōmam, both referring to the same city. This Latin usage is expressed in the following

RULE VI. - Two Accusatives - Same Person.

373. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing:

Hamilcarem imperātōrem fēcērunt, they made Hamilcar com-MANDER. Nep. Ancum rēgem populus creāvit, the people elected Ancus King. Liv. Summum cōnsilium appellārunt Senātum, they called their highest council SENATE. Cic.

1. PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE. — One of the two Accusatives is the Direct Object, and the other an essential part of the Predicate. The latter may be called a Predicate Accusative; see 59, Rule I.

154. Vocabulary.

the Allobroges, a tribe of southeast-Allobrogës, um, m. pl.ern Gaul; sing. Allobrox, ogis. Appellō, āre, āvī, ātum, to call. the Boii, a tribe of central Gaul. Boii, ōrum, m. pl. spouse, husband, wife. Conjūnx, conjugis, m. and f. Conservo, are, avi, atum, to preserve. farmy. son. Fīlius, $i\bar{i}$, m. Galba, a lieutenant in Caesar's Galba, ae, m.

¹ In the singular, the *Genitive* and *Vocative* are generally contracted to fili. See **32**, 51, 5.

Gēns, gentis, f, like cliēns.
Līberī, ōrum, m. pl.¹
Mārcus, ī, m.
Nōmen, inis, n.
Nōminō, āre, āvī, ātum,
Nūtrīx, icis, f.
Octōdūrus, ī, m.
Prōpulsō, āre, āvī, ātum,
Recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum,
Rōma, ae, f.
Sicilia, ae, f.
Veragrī, ōrum, m. pl.
Vergobretus, ī, m.

race, tribe, nation.
children.
Marcus, a Roman name.
name.
to name, call.
nurse.
Octodurus, a town of the Veragri,
to repulse. [now Martigny.
to reject.
Rome.
Sicily. [Gaul.
the Veragri, a tribe of eastern

Vergobretus, the title of the chief

magistrate of the Aedui.

155. Translate into English.

1. Senātus Rōmānus Aeduōs frātrēs appellāvit. 2. Senātus Ariovistum rēgem et amīcum appellāverat. 3. Senātus patrem Casticī populī Promānī amīcum appellat. 4. Galba in vīcō Veragrōrum hiemābat. 5. Gallī hunc vīcum Octōdūrum appellant. 6. Mārcus Catŏ nūtrīcem plēbis Rōmānae Siciliam nōminābat. 7. Gallī omnēs auxilium ā populō Romānō implōrent. 8. Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum incolunt, auxilium ā Caesare implōrāre cōnstituērunt.

9. Boiī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, hanc urbem oppūgnāre constituērunt. 10. Conservāte vos, conjugēs, līberos, fortūnāsque vestrās. 11. Ariovistus cum Romānīs dēcertāre parātus erat. 12. Nē 3 timor exercitum Romānum occupet. 13. Utinam 4 timor omnem hostium exercitum occupāvisset. 4 14. Nē populī Romānī amīcitiam recūsēmus. 15. Pro patriā fortiter pūgnēmus et hostēs propulsēmus. 16. Ariovistus partem suārum copiārum quae castra Romāna oppūgnāret 5 mīsit.

^{&#}x27; Not used in the singular.

² Construe with amicum.

³ Why is $n\bar{e}$ rather than $n\bar{o}n$ used? See 114, 483, 3.

⁴ For utinam and for the force of the Pluperfect, see 114, 483, 1 and 2.

⁶ For the use of Mood, see Rule XLII.

156. Translate into Latin.

1. They called the city Rome. 2. The Aedui called their chief Vergobretus. 3. Will you call us brothers? We shall call you all brothers. 4. The Romans call us Gauls. 5. At that time we called Ariovistus king. 6. Did not the consul name his son Marcus? Cicero the consul named his son Marcus. 7. The citizens called Marcus Cato wise. 8. The enemy had determined to call the bravest of their leaders general.

9. Galba determined to winter with the legion in a village which the Gauls call Octodurus. 10. Do you call Ariovistus a friend or an enemy? I call him the enemy of the Roman people. 11. He inquired whether you called him a friend or an enemy. 12. Ariovistus, whom the Germans called king, was prepared to try the fortune of war. 13. The Gauls implored aid of the Romans, in order that they might repulse the

enemy.

LESSON LIII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE PASSIVE. — REVIEW OF DECLENSIONS IV. AND V. — RULE XXII.

157. Lesson from the Grammar.

In the verb $Am\bar{o}$, learn the Indicative Mood of the Passive voice. See page 136.

158. Examples. — Ablative.

1. Caedem ā vobīs depellit. He wards off slaughter from you.

2. Statua ex aere facta.

A statue made OF BRONZE.

3. Expulsus est patriā.

He was banished from his country.

4. Ars ūtilitāte laudātur.

An art is praised BECAUSE OF ITS USEFULNESS.

1 For the construction of Double or Disjunctive Questions, see 106, 353

² Or was inquiring, imperfect.

⁸ For the construction, see 127, 529, 3.

NOTE.—In these examples $v\bar{v}b\bar{v}s$ (\bar{u} $v\bar{v}b\bar{v}s$), 'from you,' aere (exaere), 'of bronze,' patria, 'from his country,' and $\bar{u}tilit\bar{u}te$, 'because of its usefulness,' are all in the Ablative, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XXII. - Separation, Source, Cause.

413. Separation, Source, and Cause are denoted by the Ablative with or without a preposition:

Separation.— Caedem ā võbīs dēpellē, I ward off slaughter from You. Cic. Expulsus est patriā, he was banished from his country Cic. Urbem commeātā prīvāvit, he deprived the city of supplies. Nep. Cōnātā dēstitērunt, they desisted from the attempt. Caes.

Source.—Hōc audīvī dē parente meō, I heard this from my father. Cic. Oriundi ab Sabīnīs, descended from the Sabines.

Liv. Statua ex aere facta, a statue made of bronze. Cic.

CAUSE.— Ars ūtilitāte laudātur, an art is praised BECAUSE OF ITS
TORNAL NESS. Cic. Rogātū vēneram. I had come by request. Cic. Ex

USEFULNESS. Cic. Rogātū vēneram, I had come by request. Cic. Exvulnere aeger, ill in consequence of his wound. Cic.

415. The Ablative of Source more commonly takes a preposition; see examples under 413. It includes agency, parentage, material, etc.

I. The agent or author of an action is designated by the Ablative with \bar{a} or ab:

Occīsus est ā Thēbānis, he was slain by the Thebans. Nep.

NOTE 1.—The Accusative with per may be used of the person through whose agency the action is effected:

Ab Oppianico per Fabricios factum est, it was accomplished by Oppianicus through the agency of the Fabricii. Cic.

LESSON LIV.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE PASSIVE. — RULE XXII. — EXERCISES.

159. Vocabulary.

Conventus, ūs, m. Ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, Etiam, adv.

assembly, meeting, council, convention. to report, disclose, announce. also, even. Lingua, ae, f.
Liscus, ī, m.
Meritō, adv.
Paulātim, adv.
Per, prep. w. acc.
Provincia, ae, f.
Santonēs, um, m. pl.
Sed, conj.

tongue, language.

Liscus, the chief magistrate of the deservedly. [Aedui. little by little, by degrees, gradually. through, by, over. province. [of northwestern Gaul. the Santoni or Santones, a tribe but.

160. Translate into English.

1. Mīlitēs legiōnis decimae omnēs ā Caesare laudantur.

2. Eōdem tempore multae legiōnēs meritō laudābantur.

3. Semper laudāberis. 4. Ab omnibus meritō laudāminī.

5. Ab omnibus laudātus es. 6. Divitiacus ad Caesarem vocātus erat. 7. Haec omnia Ariovistō ēnūntiāta sunt. 8. Pater Casticī ā senātū amīcus ² appellātus erat. 9. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs ² hostibus nūntiātur. 10. Aeduī frātrēs ab senātū appellātī sunt.

11. Timor eōs, quī nōn māgnum in rē mīlitārī tūsum habēbant, occupāvit; hōrum timōre, paulātim etiam iī, quī māgnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, perturbābantur. 12. Prīncipēs Helvētiōrum ā Caesare convocātī sunt. 13. Fīnēs Santonum ā prōvinciā Rōmānā nōn longē absunt. 14. Liscus multās rēs illō diē in conventū dīxit. 15. Iī quī tertiam Galliae partem incolunt nostrā linguā Gallī appellantur. 16. Galba in vīcō quī appellātur Octōdūrus hiemābat.

161. Translate into Latin.

The brave soldiers will be praised by the general.
 You have been deservedly praised by Caesar himself.
 3.

¹ See 158.415, I., and observe that in the *Active* construction the *Author* or *Agent* of the action is denoted by the *Nominative*; in the Passive by the *Ablative* with \bar{a} or ab. Thus in this sentence the Active construction would be: $Caesar\ milites\ \dots\ laudat$.

² Predicate Nominative, see 59, Rule I.

³ See 158, 415, note 1.

⁴ Lit. in the military thing; render, in military affairs.

⁵ Ablative of Means; see 78, Rule XXV.

Was not Cicero the consul praised by the senate? He was deservedly praised by the Roman people. 4. Has not this citizen been accused by you? He has not been accused by me, but by the magistrate. 5. Will not all these things be announced to the commander?

6. By whom were our plans announced to the enemy? They have not been announced to the enemy. 7. What has been announced to Caesar? All these things have been announced to him. 8. The consul, with a large army, is not far from the city. 9. At that time the enemy were not far from the village which is called Octodurus. 10. The Aedui, who had been called brothers by the senate, implored aid from Caesar.

LESSON LV.

FIRST CONJUGATION.—INDICATIVE PASSIVE.—REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES OF DECLENSIONS I. AND II.

162. Vocabulary.

Ac, conj. Alpës, ium, f. pl. Arvernī, ōrum, m. pl. Celeriter, adv. Centurio, onis, m. Excito, are, avi, atum, Fabius, ii, m. Harūdēs, um, m. pl. Nüper, adv. Obsigno, are, avi, atum, Paene, adv. Paro, āre, āvi, ātum, Quintus, i, m. Sēdēs, is, f, like $n\bar{u}b\bar{e}s$. Testāmentum, i, n: Trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātum,

Vulgō, adv.

and.the Alps. the Arverni, a tribe of southern Gaul. quickly. centurion. to excite, arouse. Fabius, a celebrated Roman general. the Harudes, a tribe of southwestern recently, of late. Germany. to seal, sign and seal. almost, well nigh, nearly. to prepare. Quintus, a Roman praenomen. seat, abode; locus ac sedes, place of will. abode. to transport, carry over, take over, [universally. bring over.

commonly, as a general thing,

163. Translate into English.

- 1. Oppida Aeduōrum paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī expūgnāta sunt. 2. Rēs frūmentāria¹ māgnō cum perīculō comparāta erat. 3. Eōdem tempore agrī Aeduōrum vastābantur. 4. Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, amīcus ā senātū appellātus erat. 5. Māgnae Gallōrum cōpiae ab Ariovistō ūnō proeliō² superātae sunt. 6. Timor exercitum populī Rōmānī occupāvit; etiam centuriōnēs quī māgnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant perturbābantur; vulgō in castrīs testāmenta obsīgnābantur.
- 7. Omnēs ferē Gallī ad bellum celeriter excitantur. 8. Aeduī bellī fortūnam tentāvērunt et superātī sunt. 9. Harūdēs nūper in Galliam trānsportātī sunt.³ Hīs locus āc sēdēs parābuntur. 10. Imperātor in ūlteriorem Galliam per Alpēs cum quīnque legionibus contendit.⁴ 11. Multae gentēs ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur. 12. Arvernī ab Quīntō Fabiō bellō superātī sunt.

164. Translate into Latin.

1. Our fields have been devastated by the enemy. 2. Many towns had been taken by storm.⁵ 3. Large forces of the enemy will be conquered by our commander. 4. The Gauls had been conquered by Caesar in many battles.⁶ 5. Many chiefs had been called together by Caesar. 6. The chiefs who had been called together said many things in the council. 7. Many Germans were carried over into Gaul by Ariovistus. For these Germans places of abode had been

² Observe the difference of construction between expressions of Agency, Authorship, ab Ariovistō, and Means, proeliō.

¹ Res frumentaria, lit. the thing relating to corn or grain, the affair of the grain; render 'grain' or 'supplies.'

³ That is, across the Rhine. ⁴ See 134, foot-note 2.

 $^{^{5}}$ By storm is not to be rendered by a separate word, but is involved in the meaning of the Latin verb.

⁶ In many battles; Latin idiom, BY many battles.

prepared in Gaul. 8. These legions were wintering in Gaul with great peril.

9. We are not quickly aroused to war. 10. Many nations had already been aroused to war. 11. The fortune of war has been tried by the Gauls, and they will all be conquered. 12. Those who have large experience in military affairs, will not be quickly aroused to war. 13. Were all kings called friends of the Roman people? Many kings were called friends by the senate. 14. The lands of the Gauls were often devastated by the Germans. 15. The town in which our army wintered was not attacked by the Gauls.

LESSON LVI.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE. — REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES. — RULE LIX.

165. Lesson from the Grammar.

In the verb $Am\bar{o}$, learn the Subjunctive Mood of the Passive voice. See page 137.

166. Examples. - Supine.

- 1. Ad Caesarem congrātulātum They came to Caesar to Congratuconvēnērunt. LATE him.
- 2. Vēnērunt rēs repetītum. They came to DEMAND restitution.

Note. —In these examples the supines $congr\bar{a}tul\bar{a}tum$ and repetitum are employed to denote the purpose of the leading action, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE LIX. - Supine in Um.

546. The Supine in *um* is used with verbs of motion to express PURPOSE:

Lēgātī vēnērunt rēs repetītum, deputies came to demand restitution. Liv. Ad Caesarem congrātulātum convēnērunt, they came to Caesar to congratulate him. Caes.

LESSON LVII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE. — RULE LIX. — EXERCISES.

167. Vocabulary.

Cāsus, ūs, m. accident, occurrence, emergency.

Commeātus, ūs, m. supplies.

Dēditiō, ōnis, f. surrender.

Iter, itineris, n. march, journey; māgna itinera, forced

jūdicium, iī, n. judgment, decision. [marches.]

Observō, āre, āvī, ātum, to observe, keep, comply with.

Sōcratēs, is, m. Socrates, the celebrated Greek philosopher.

Sublevō, āre, āvī, ātum, to assist, support.

168. Translate into English.

1. Adventus hostium Caesarī nūntiētur. 2. Utinam ea rēs imperātōrī nūntiāta esset.¹ 3. Utinam haec cōnsilia Helvētīs nūntientur.¹ 4. Nē nostra cōnsilia per fugitīvōs hostibus nūntientur. 5. Jūdicium senātūs observētur. 6. Utinam omnia senātūs jūdicia observāta essent. 7. Ab hīs lēgātīs quaerit quantae Galliae cīvitātēs superātae sint.² 8. Ab hīs quaerēbat quae urbēs expūgnātae essent. 9. Quaerunt quam ob rem commeātūs nōn ad Caesarem portātī sint. 10. Eōdem tempore ille mōns ā Labiēnō occupētur.

11. Ab prīncipibus Aeduōrum quaerēbat quam ob rem exercitus populī Rōmānī ab iīs nōn sublevārētur. 12. Caesar ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. 13. Sōcratēs omnium sapientissimus fuit. 14. Imperātor in citeriōrem Galliam māgnīs itineribus contendit. 15. Hae nāvēs lātiōrēs erant quam reliquae. 16. Prīncipēs Gallōrum lēgātōs ad senātum Romānum mittēbant. 17. Hostēs lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē

¹ Show the force of Tenses; see 114, 483, 2.

² See 127, Rule LV., and Suggestion XVII., 2.

³ Partitive Genitive.

⁴ Lit. with large journeys; render with forced marches.

169. Translate into Latin.

dēditione i mittunt. 18. Aeduī lēgātos ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium.

1. What towns have been taken by storm? 2. Let us ascertain what towns have been taken by storm. 3. Let not our fields be devastated in sight of your army. 4. Let us inquire for what reason these Germans have been brought over into Gaul. 5. May the laws be observed by us and by all the citizens. 6. May you all be wise. 7. Would that these boys were wiser. 8. Would that this mountain had

been occupied by our army.

9. Let supplies be brought to our army by the Aedui. 10. Caesar was hastening with forced marches into Gaul. 11. Would that all the forces of the enemy had been conquered. 12. May our towns never be stormed by the enemy. 13. What towns of the Gauls were stormed by the Germans? 14. Let us inquire of the ambassadors what towns have been stormed and what fields have been devastated. 15. Let not these things be announced to the Germans. 16. Would that these towns were all occupied by our friends. Let us send ambassadors to the senate to ask 4 aid.

LESSON LVIII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. — REVIEW OF PRONOUNS. — RULES LVII. AND LVIII.

170. Lesson from the Grammar.

In the verb $Am\bar{o}$, learn the Passive voice in full. See the following page.

¹ Lit. concerning a surrender; render to treat for a capitulation, or to capitulate.

² To ask; see 166, Rule LIX.

⁸ See 114, 483, 2.

⁴ See 166, Rule LIX.

FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

206. PASSIVE VOICE.—Amor, I am loved.

VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, amā

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

Pres. Inf.

Perf. Ind. amātus sum

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. I am loved.

singular.
amor
amāris, or re

PLURAL. am**āmur** am**āminī** am**antur**

IMPERFECT.

I was loved.

am**ābar** am**ābāris**, *or* re am**ābātur** am**ābāmur** am**ābāminī** am**ābantur**

FUTURE.

amābor amāberis, *or* re amābitur amābimur amābiminī amābuntur

PERFECT.

I have been loved or I was loved.

amātus sum ¹ amātus es amātus es**t** amātī sumus amātī estis amātī sunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had been loved.

amātus eram ¹ amātus erās amātus era**t** amātī erāmus amātī erātis amātī erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been loved.

amātus erō¹ amātus eris amātus erit amātī erimus amātī eritis amātī erunt

¹ Fui, fuisti, etc., are sometimes used for sum, es, etc.: amātus fui for amātus sum. Bo fuerum, fuerūs, etc., for eram, etc.: also fuero, etc., for ero, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be loved, let him be loved.1

Singular. amer ameris, or re

amētur

Plura**l.** am**ēinur** am**ēmin**ī am**entur**

IMPERFECT.

I should be loved, he would be loved.1

amārer amārēris, or re amārētur amārēmur amārēminī amārentur

PERFECT.

I may have been loved, or I have been loved.1

amātus sim² amātus sīs amātus sit amātī sīmus amātī sītis amātī simt

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been loved, he would have been loved.1

amātus essem 2 amātus essēs amātus esset amātī essēmus amātī essētis amātī essent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. amare, be thou loved;

Fut. amator, thou shalt be loved, amator, he shall be loved;

am**āminī**, be ye loved.

amantor, they shall be loved

INFINITIVE.

Pres. amari, to be loved.

Perf. amātus esse,2 to have been

Fut. amatum iri, to be about to be loved.

PARTICIPLE.

Perf. amatus, having been loved.

Ger. 3 amandus, to be loved, deserving to be loved.

¹ But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196.

² Fuerim, fueris, etc., are sometimes used for sim, sis, etc.—So also fuissem, fuisses, etc., for essem, esses, etc.: rarely fuisse for esse.

³ Ger. = Gerundive; see p. 14, 200, IV., note.

171. Examples. — Infinitive with Subject.

- 1. Pontem jubet rescindi. He orders the bridge to be broken down.
- 2. Sentīmus calēre ignem. We perceive that fire is hot.

NOTE 1.—The Latin usage illustrated in these examples by the Accusative and the Infinitive is expressed in the following

RULE LVII. - Accusative and Infinitive.

534. Many transitive verbs admit both an Accusative and an Infinitive:

Të sapere docet, he teaches you to be wise. Cic. Eòs suum adventum exspectare jussit, he ordered them to await his approach. Caes. Pontem jubet rescindi, he orders the bridge to be broken down. Caes.

Note 2.—In the second of the above examples, the Accusative ignem may be regarded as the Subject of the Infinitive $cal\bar{e}re$, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE LVIII. - Subject of Infinitive.

536. The Infinitive sometimes takes an Accusative as its subject:

Sentīmus calēre ignem, we perceive that fire is hot. Cic. Platōnem Tarentum vēnisse reperiō, I find that Plato came to Tarentum. Cic.

172. Vocabulary.

flat, level.

Accommodatus, a, um, Carīna, ae, f. Concursus, ūs, m.

Extrā, prep. w. acc.
Flūctus, ūs, m.
Fremitus, ūs, m.
Jubet,
Māgnitūdō, inis, f.
Modus, ī, m.
Nātiō, ōnis, f.
Nūdō, āre, āvī, ātum,
Paulum, adv.
Plānus, a, um,

fitted, adapted.
keel, bottom (of a vessel).
running together; running about, run
ning to and fro, agitation.
beyond, outside of.
wave.
din, noise.
he orders, commands.
size.
measure, manner.
nation.
to bare, expose.
a little, somewhat.

Prior, us, sup. prīmus, a, um, 86, 166, Prōra, ae, f. Scientia, ae, f. Segusiānī, ōrum, m. pl. Sīgnificō, āre, āvī, ātum, Superus, a, um, comp. superior, us, sup. suprēmus and summus, a, um, Tardō, āre, āvī, ātum,

former, first.
prow.
knowledge.
the Segusiani, a tribe of southeastern
to signify, indicate. [Gaul.

upper; summus, highest, greatest. to retard, check, hinder, impede.

173. Translate into English.

1. Castra ab ūnā parte¹ nūdāta sunt. 2. Nē tōta castra nūdentur. 3. Caesaris adventū paulum hostium impetus tardātus est. 4. Omnēs in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in summō perīculō fortiter pūgnābant. 5. Agrī nostrī vastārī² nōn dēbent. 6. Oppida Aeduōrum paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī expūgnārī nōn dēbent. 7. Timor hostium fremitū et concursū sīgnificābātur. 8. Māximae nātiōnēs ā Rōmānīs superātae sunt. 9. Intellegunt māximās nātiōnēs superātās esse.³

10. Ducēs hostium summam scientiam rĕī mīlitāris habēre exīstimābantur. 11. Caesar duās legiōnēs in prōximō monte collocārī jubet. 12. Fugitīvī dīcunt montem ā Labiēnō occupārī.³ 13. Segusiānī sunt extrā prōvinciam Rōmānam trāns Rhodanum prīmī. 14. Nāvēs hostium ad hunc modum aedificātae sunt; carīnae plāniōrēs sunt quam nostrārum nāvium,⁴ prōrae ad māgnitūdinem flūctuum accommodātae.

174. Translate into Latin.

1. They say that supplies have not been brought to Caesar by the Aedui. 2. He says that our fields have been devastated by the Gauls. 3. How many vessels have been

¹ Ab una parte; Latin idiom, from one part; render, on one side.

² See 132, Rule LVI.

³ See Suggestion XVIII., 1.

⁴ Nāvium depends upon carīnae understood.

⁵ See 171, Rule LVIII.

built by the Gauls? Let us ascertain how many vessels have been built by them. 4. Deserters say that ten vessels have been built by the Gauls. 5. They say that many cities were stormed by the Romans. 6. Deserters say that the camp of the enemy is exposed on (from) one side. 7. Let not our camp be exposed. 8. Our camp ought not to be exposed.

9. Will you not fight bravely in sight of your general?
10. We ought to fight bravely for our country. 11. Caesar orders this city to be occupied by our army. 12. An ambassador announced that the cities of our friends were occupied by the enemy. 13. The Germans ought not to lay waste the fields of the Gauls. 14. The arrival of Caesar checked the attack of the enemy. 15. They say that one legion was stationed in the city. 16. In what part of Gaul were the legions wintering? 17. Let us ask in what part of Gaul the legions are wintering. 18. Caesar said that the legions were wintering among the Belgae.

LESSON LIX.

FIRST CONJUGATION IN FULL. — EXERCISE IN READ-ING AT SIGHT.

175. Read at Sight, examine carefully, and Translate into English.¹

Helvētiī per agrum Aeduōrum in Santonum fīnēs contendēbant, quī nōn longē ā prōvinciā Rōmānā absunt. Ob eās causās Caesar in Ĭtaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit, duāsque ibī legiōnēs cōnscrīpsit, et trēs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hībernīs ēdūxit, et in ūlteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus contendit. Ab citeriōre prōvinciā² in Segusiānōs exercitum dūxit. Hī sunt extrā prō-

¹ See Directions for Reading at Sight, 137.

² Citerior prövincia is the Roman province of Citerior or Cisalpine Gaul, while ülterior prövincia is the province of Ulterior or Transalpine Gaul.

vinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī. Helvētiī jam Aeduōrum agrōs vastābant et oppida expūgnābant. Tum vērō tantus timor Aeduōs occupāvit ut omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Lēgātōs igitur ad Caesarem mīsērunt. Eōdem tempore multae Galliae cīvitātēs auxilium ā Caesare implōrāvērunt.

176. Translate into Latin.

- 1. Caesar says that nearly all the Belgae conspired against the Roman people. The Gauls, whom Caesar had commanded to ascertain what the Belgae were doing, announced that the enemy were collecting large forces (bands of men), and bringing them together in (into) one place. 2. How many legions did Caesar enrol in Italy? At that time he enrolled two legions there. How many legions will winter in the vicinity of this town (around this town)? The general says that three legions will winter in the vicinity of this town.
- 3. By whom have the lands of the Aedui been devastated? He inquired by whom the lands of the Aedui had been devastated. Ambassadors announced that the lands of the Aedui had been devastated by the Helvetii. 4. The general ought to lead all his forces out of winter quarters.

LESSON LX.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

177. Lesson from the Grammar.

In the verb *Moneō*, learn the Indicative Mood of the Active voice. See page 144.

¹ Literally to whom Caesar had given orders that they should ascertain; see 120 and 119, 498.

² See 135, 10.

³ Use conducit as in 135, 14, not comportat, which Caesar employs in speaking of bringing together things but not men; see 135, 9.

178. Vocabulary.

Ãgmen, inis, n.

Aliquamdiū, adv.
Armō, āre, āvī, ātum,
Dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum,
Exterus, a, um, comp. exterior,
us, sup. extrēmus and extimus, a, um,
Habeō, ēre, uī, itum,
Inermus, a, um,
Moneō, ēre, uĭ, itum,
Nōnne, interrog. part.,
Sine, prep. w. abl.
Sustineō, ēre, tīnuī, tentum,
Timeō, ēre, uī,

army on the march, line of march, line; extremum agmen, the extremity of the line, the rear. for a time.
to arm.
to owe; ought.

[the extremity of. outward; extremus, the outermost, to have, hold; to regard, regard as. unarmed. to advise, warn. not? 106, 351, 1, note 2. without. to sustain, withstand, resist. to fear.

179. Translate into English.

- 1. Num hostēs timētis? Non hostēs timēmus. 2. Timōris suspīcionem vītāre dēbētis. 3. Nonne omnēs suspīcionēs vītāre dēbēmus? 4. Non sine causā hostēs timuimus. 5. Vobīs omnia dēbeo. 6. Aeduī populo Romāno multum dēbēbant. 7. Id Caesarī nūntiāre dēbēmus. 8. Nostra oppida expūgnāre non dēbētis. 9. Centurionēs māgnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant. 10. Nonne māgnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbas? Non māgnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbam. 11. Caesar Divitiacum fīdum semper habēbat. 12. Vos fīdos semper habēbimus. 13. Nonne mē fīdum habēs? Tē fīdum habēo.
- 14. Caesar Dumnorigem ad sē vocāvit; monuit ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītāret. 15. Vōs moneō ut in reliquum tempus hās suspīciōnēs vītētis. 16. Ariovistus Caesarem nōn prō amīcō,¹ sed prō hoste habēbit. 17. Tē prō amīcō semper habuī. 18. Num mē prō hoste habētis? Tē nōn prō hoste sed prō amīcō habēmus. 19. Impetum

¹ Render pro As, lit. for.

hostium fortiter sustinuerāmus. 20. Hostēs ab extrēmō āgmine¹ fortiter impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinēbant. 21. Quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timuerāmus, hōs posteā armātōs superāvimus.

180. Translate into Latin.

1. At that time the Gauls feared the Germans, who dwelt beyond (across) the Rhine. 2. Nearly all the Gauls feared Ariovistus, the king of the Germans. 3. Shall you, who have large experience in military affairs, fear the Gauls? We have not large experience in military affairs, but we do not fear this army. 4. These boys owe much to their father. 5. We all owe much to our fathers. 6. Ought we not to attack that town? We ought to take it by storm. 7. Our soldiers always withstand the attacks of the enemy.

8. We shall always regard you all as our friends. 9. Caesar regarded the Germans not as friends, but as enemies. 10. Do you not regard your general as faithful? We all regard him as faithful. 11. Whom do these boys regard as faithful? They regard you as faithful. 12. Did I not warn you not to announce these things to the Germans? You warned us not to announce your plans to the enemy. 13. Did you not fear Ariovistus at that time? I feared him, and regarded him as an enemy.

LESSON LXI.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE IN FULL.

181. Lesson from the Grammar.

In the verb *Moneō*, learn the Active voice in full. See the following page.

¹ Render ab, on, lit. from. See note on ab ūnā parte, 173.

² Not to announce = that you should not announce, ne with Subjunctive; 119, 497.

³ As our friends; Latin idiom, for our friends.

SECOND CONJUGATION: E VERBS.

207. ACTIVE VOICE.—Moneo, I advise.

VERB STEM, mon, moni; PRESENT STEM, monë.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind. Pres. Inf. Perf. Ind. moneo, moner, monui,

Supine. mon**ituu**n,

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. I advise.

SINGULAR moneō monēs monet PLURAL. mon**ēmus** mon**ētis** mon**ent**

IMPERFECT.

I was advising, or I advised.

mon**ēbam** mon**ēbās** mon**ēbat** mon**ēbāmus** mon**ēbātis** mon**ēbant**

FUTURE.

I shall or will advise.

monēbās monēbis monēbit monē**bimus** mon**ēbitis** mon**ēbunt**

PERFECT.

I have advised, or I advised.

monuisti monuisti monuit monu**imus** monuistis

monu**ērumt, or ērc**

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised.

monueram monueras monueras monu**erāmus** monu**erātis** monu**erant**

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have advised.

monuerăs monuerit monu**erīmus** monu**erītis** monu**erīnt**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I advise, let him advise.1

singular. mon**eam** PLURAL.
moneāmus
moneātis
moneant

mon**eās** mon**eat**

IMPERFECT.

I should advise, he would advise.

mon**ērem** mon**ērēs** mon**ēret** mon**ērēmus** mon**ērētis** mon**ērent**

PERFECT.

I may have advised, or I have advised.1

monu**erim** monu**eris** monu**erit** monuerimus monueritis monuerint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have advised, he would have advised.

monuissem monuissēs monuisset monuissēmus monuissētis monuissent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres monē, advise thou;
Fut. monētē, thou shalt advise,
monētē. he shall advise;

| mon**ēte**, advise ye. | mon**ētōte**, ye shall advise, | mon**entō**, they shall advise.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. mon**ēre**, to advise.

Perf. monu**isse**, to have advised.

Fut. monit**ūrus** esse, to be about to advise.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. monēns, advising.

Fut. moniturus, about to advise.

GERUND.

Gen. monendi, of advising,
Dat. monendi, for advising,
Acc. monendum, advising,
Abl. monendi, by advising.

SUPINE.

Acc. monitum, to advise, Abl. monitu, to advise, be advised.

¹ But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196.

² The Pluperfect, like the Perfect, is often rendered by the Indicative: I had advised, you had advised, etc.

LESSON LXII.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE. — EXERCISES.

182. Vocabulary.

memory, recollection. Memoria, ae, f. new; novae res, new things, a change Novus, a, um, of affairs, revolution. Pareō, ēre, uī, itum, ancient, pristine. Pristinus, a, um, Retineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum, to retain, keep. to desire. Studeo, ēre, uī, desire. Studium, ii, n. to be silent, keep silent, remain silent.

Taceō, ēre, uī, itum, to hold, keep. Teneō, ēre, uī, tentum,

183. Translate into English.

1. Nē hostēs sine causā timeāmus. 2. Germānos timēre non dēbēmus. 3. Hos agros armīs teneāmus. 4. Mīlitēs dīcēbant sē hostēs non timēre. 5. Hīc centurio dīcit sē hostēs non timuisse. 6. Hostium impetum fortiter sustineāmus. Eās rēs memoriā² teneāmus.
 Nonne eās rēs memoriā tenēre dēbēmus? 9. Mīlitēs suae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retineant. 10. Nostrae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retineāmus. 11. Tuae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retinēre dēbēs.

12. Vestrae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retinēte, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinēte. 13. Dīcunt Caesarem ūnam legionem sēcum³ habuisse.¹ 14. Dīcunt tē māgnum amīcōrum numerum habuisse.¹ 15. Dīcunt tē māgnum amīcōrum numerum habitūrum esse.¹ 16. Dīcunt võs māgnum amīcōrum numerum habitūrōs esse.¹ 17. Amīcōs habēns; cōnsul amīcos habens; amīcos habitūrus; consules amīcos habitūrī. 18. Ob eās causās Dumnorix novīs rēbus⁴ studēbat. Monendō, timendō, tenendī, causa tenendī, studium habendī.

¹ See Suggestion XVIII., 1.

² Memoria, literally, by the memory, Ablative of Means; render in memory.

³ See 102, 184, 6.

⁴ See 54, Rule XII.

20. Omnës ferë Galli novis rëbus student et ad bellum celeriter excitantur; omnës autem hominës libertati student.

184. Translate into Latin.

- 1. We shall always retain the recollection of these things.
 2. May you ever retain the recollection of this day.
 3. The consul says that he shall always retain the recollection of your friendship.
 4. For what reason did the Gauls desire a revolution at that time?
 5. Does not Caesar say that the Gauls always desire a revolution? He says that all men desire liberty.
 6. Let us obey all the laws, and let us not desire a revolution.
 7. Obeying, about to obey; obeying the laws, about to obey the laws; by obeying the laws, of obeying the laws, the desire of obeying the laws.
- 8. By being silent 1 you avoided suspicion of fear. 9. Let us not fear the Germans without cause. 10. We ought not to regard them as enemies without cause. 11. Would that they had not feared 3 us without cause. 12. How many legions will our commander have with him in Italy? They say that he will have five legions with him. 13. The general says that he shall always regard us as his friends. 14. So great fear took possession of the Romans, that they did not retain 4 the recollection of their ancient courage.

LESSON LXIII.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. — ACTIVE VOICE. — RULE XXX.

185. Examples. — Place in which.

1. In nostrīs castrīs fuit.

He was in our CAMP.

2. Rōmae fuit.

He was AT ROME.

¹ Use the Ablative of the Gerund, as Ablative of Means.

 $^{^{2}\,\}mathrm{Remember}$ that the Gerund governs the same case as other parts of the verb.

³ For Mood and Tense, see 114, 483, 2.

⁴ See 123, 500, II.

Note. — The Latin usage illustrated in the Locative Ablative $castr\bar{s}s$, and in the Locative $R\bar{o}mae$, is expressed in the following

RULE XXX. - Place in which.

425. The Place in which is denoted—

I. Generally by the Locative Ablative with the preposition in:

Hannibal in Ĭtaliā fuit, Hannibal was IN ITALY. Nep. In nostrīs castrīs, in our camp. Caes. In Appiā viā, on the Appian way. Cic.

II. In Names of Towns by the *Locative*,² if such a form exists, otherwise by the *Locative Ablative*:

Rōmae fuit, he was at Rome. Cic. Corinthī puerōs docēbat, he taught boys at Corinth. Cic. Athēnīs fuit, he was at Athens. Cic.

1. In the names of places which are not towns, the LOCATIVE ABLATIVE is often used without a preposition, when the idea of means, manner, or cause is combined with that of place:

Castrīs sē tenuit, he kept himself in camp. Caes. Aliquem $tect\bar{o}$ recipere, to receive any one in one's own house. Cic. Proeli \bar{o} cadere, to fall in battle. Caes.

2. The Ablatives $loc\bar{o}$, $loc\bar{i}s$, parte, partibus, $dextr\bar{a}$, $laev\bar{a}$, $sinistr\bar{a}$, $terr\bar{a}$, and $mar\bar{i}$, especially when qualified by an adjective, and other Ablatives, when qualified by $t\bar{o}tus$, are generally used without the preposition:

Aliquid $loc\bar{o}$ pōnere, to put anything in its place. Cic. Terrā marīque, on land and sea. Liv. Tōtā Graeciā, in all Greece. Nep.

426. LIKE NAMES OF TOWNS are used -

1. Many Names of Islands:

Lesbī vīxit, he lived in Lesbos. Nep. Conon Cyprī vīxit, Conon lived in Cyprus. Nep.

2. The LOCATIVES **domī**, rūrī, humī, mīlitiae, and bellī: Domī mīlitiaeque, at home and in the field. Cic. Rūrī agere vītam, to spend life in the country. Liv.

² See 11, 48, 4; 32, 51, 8; 63, 66, 4. The Locative was the original con-

struction in all names of places.

¹ The Locative Ablative does not differ in form from any other Ablative. It is simply the Ablative used with the force of the original Locative, i.e. to designate the place of the action.

186. Vocabulary.

Agedincum, i, n.

Alesia, ae, f. Apertus, a, um, Avus, \bar{i} , m. Bibrax, actis, n. Contineo, ere, tinui, tentum,

Designo, are, avi, atum, Dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum, Difficultās, ātis, f. Domus, $\bar{u}s, f$. Genāva, ae, f. Improbus, a, um, Karthāgō, inis, f. Largiter, adv.

Mare, is, n. Multitūdō, inis, f. Obtineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum, Sēditiosus, a, um, Servitūs, ūtis, f. Sõlum, adv. Vir, virī, m.

Agedincum, a town of the Senones in central Gaul.

Alesia, a town in central Gaul.

open. grandfather.

Bibrax, a town of the Remi.

to retain, keep, confine, restrain; to enclose, surround.

to designate, indicate.

to deter.

difficulty. house, home; domi, at home.

Geneva.

wicked, unprincipled.

Carthage.

largely, widely, extensively; largiter potest, he has extensive influence.

multitude; the multitude, common people. to obtain, hold.

seditious.

servitude, slavery.

only. man.

187. Translate into English.

1. Caesar eō tempore in citeriōre Galliā erat. 2. Eōdem tempore exercitus noster in Galliā hiemābat. 3. Dīcunt imperātōrem in Galliā in hībernīs fuisse. 4. Germānī ${f A}$ eduōs in servitūte tenēre non debent. 5. Ariovistus, rex Germānorum, eō diē exercitum castrīs¹ continuit. 6. Apertō marī² tempestātēs timēbāmus. 7. Summa erat apertō marī difficultās nāvigan-8. Allobrogēs lēgātōs ad senātum mīsērunt rogātum aux- Dumnorix māgnum numerum equitātūs habēbat. ilium.

² See 185, 425, II., 2.

¹ Ablative of Place, involving the idea of Means.

⁸ Nāvigandī, Genitive of the Gerund, depending upon difficultās. Observe that the Genitive of the Gerund is here treated as any other Genitive would be treated in the same situation. See 28, Rule XVI.

10. Liscus dīcit Dumnorigem, Divitiacī frātrem, māgnum numerum equitātūs semper circum sē habēre. Is nōn sōlum domī,¹ sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter poterat.²

11. Caesar duās legiōnēs Agedincī¹ collocāverat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōnstituit. 12. Cōnsul eō tempore Rōmae¹ erat. 13. Timor hostēs Alesiae occupāvit. 14. Avus hūjus Gallī, virī fortissimī, amīcus ab senātū nostrō appellātus erat. 15. Avus hūjus Gallī in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat, amīcus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. 16. Dīcunt hāc ōrātiōne Dumnorigem dēsīgnātum esse. 17. Sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrētis nē frūmentum comportent.³

188. Translate into Latin.

1. They say that you have been in Italy. We were in winter quarters in Italy. 2. Ought we not to place our army in winter quarters in Gaul? The army ought to be placed in winter quarters in the vicinity of (around) Geneva. The general has already decided to station three legions at Geneva.⁴ 3. Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, was not at home,⁴ but was laying waste the lands of the Gauls. 4. Messengers announced that the consul at that time was at Carthage.

5. You ought not to hold the deserters in servitude. We shall keep them in camp. 5 6. How many Gauls did Ariovistus hold in servitude? They announced that Ariovistus always held a very large number of Gauls in servitude. 7. Was Caesar at that time in Italy, or in Gaul? 6 He was at Rome, and he had with him a large number of friends. 8. Was there not at Geneva a bridge across the Rhone? 7 Caesar says that at Geneva there was a bridge across the Rhone.

¹ See 185, 425, 426, II.

² Largiter poterat, literally, was largely able; render, was very powerful, or had great influence.

⁸ See 119, 497, II.

⁴ What Case will you use in rendering at Geneva, at home? See 185, 425; 426, 2.

⁵ In camp; see 185, 425, 1. ⁶ For Double Question, see 106, 353.

⁷ Across the Rhone; Latin idiom, IN the Rhone.

LESSON LXIV.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—INDICATIVE PASSIVE.—RULE IV.—REVIEW OF RULES I., II., AND III.

189. Lesson from the Grammar.

In the verb *Moneō*, learn the Indicative Mood of the Passive voice. See page 154.

190. Examples. — Vocative.

1. Tuum est, Servī, rēgnum.

The kingdom is yours, Servius.

2. Quid est, Catilina? Why is it, CATILINE?

Note. —In these examples the names of the persons addressed, Servī and Catilina, are in the Vocative, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE IV. - Case of Address.

369. The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative:

Perge, Laelī, proceed, Laelius. Cic. Quid est, Catilina? Why is it, Catiline? Cic. Ō diī immortālēs, O immortal gods. Cic.

LESSON LXV.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE PASSIVE. — RULE
IV. — REVIEW OF RULES I., II., AND III. — EXERCISES.

191. Vocabulary.

Alter, era, erum, 45, 151.
Anteā, adv.
Ascendit,
Bellicōsus, a, um,
Clāmor, ōris, m.
Cōnsultō, āre, āvī, ātum,
Dēmum, adv.
Dētineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum,
Ferus, a, um,

other (of two), second.
before.
he ascends.
warlike.
shout.
to consult.
at length.
to detain.
fierce, savage.

Impendeō, ēre,
Inter, prep. w. acc.
Jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussum,
Jūra, ae, m.
Lūx, lūcis, f.

Mūnītiŏ, ōnis, f.
Nerviī, ōrum, m. pl.
Obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessum,
Salūs, ūtis, f.
Sapienter, adv.
Suēbī, ōrum, m. pl.
Summus, a, um, sup. of sup
Terreō, ēre, uī, itum,

to overhang.

among.
to order. [Gaul.
Jura, a mountain range in eastern
light; prima lūx, the beginning of
light, daybreak, early dawn.1
fortification.
the Nervii, a tribe of northern Gaul.

to besiege. safety.

Sapienter, adv. wisely. [powerful German tribe. Suēbī, ōrum, m. pl. the Suebi, Suevi, or Suabians, a Summus, a, um, sup. of superus, highest; highest part of, top of. Terreō ēre, uī, itum.

192. Translate into English.

1. Nonne ab amīcīs monitī estis? Ā vobīs, amīcī, monitī sumus. 2. Nunc, mīlitēs, sapienter monēmur. 3. Prīmā lūce summus mons ā Labieno tenēbātur. 4. Nonne hoc oppidum ab hostibus tenētur? Ab hostibus tenētur. 5. Vīcus quī appellātur Octodūrus altissimīs montibus² continētur. 6. Montēs quī impendēbant ā māximā multitūdine hostium tenēbantur. 7. Nerviī māximē ferī inter Belgās habentur. 8. Helvētīī undique locī nātūrā continentur, ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēno, alterā ex parte monte² Jūrā. 9. Omnēs hostium impetūs fortiter sustinēbantur.

10. Hostēs quī Alesiae obsidēbantur dē salūte consultābant. 11. Iī quī mūnītionibus continentur clāmore suorum animos confirmābant. 12. Suēborum gēns est longē māxima et bellicosissima Germānorum omnium. 13. Romānae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur. 14. Caesar Labiēnum cum duābus legionibus montem ascendere jubet. 15. Caesar prīncipēs convocāvit, in hīs Liscum, magistrātum quī Ver-

¹ Certain adjectives often designate a PARTICULAR PART of an object: prīma nox, 'the first part of the night;' mediā aestāte, 'in the middle of summer;' summus mēns, 'the top (highest part) of the mountain.' The adjectives thus used are prīmus, medius, ūltimus, extrēmus, postrēmus, intimus, summus, īnfimus, īmus, suprēmus, reliquus, cētera, etc.

² Ablative of Means.

⁸ Object of convocāvit.

gobretus appellātur. 16. Tum dēmum, quod anteā tacueram, ēnūntiāvī.

193. Translate into Latin.

- 1. Many Gauls were held in slavery by Ariovistus, the king of the Germans. 2. On that day the Germans were kept in camp by their commander. 3. Brave soldiers, you have been kept in camp by your commander. 4. Judges, you have been regarded by Caesar as friends. 5. Galba, the lieutenant, was ordered to winter in a village which is called Octodurus. 6. You will always be regarded by us as friends. 7. This mountain was held on that day by the Romans. 8. Was not Labienus, the lieutenant, commanded by Caesar to ascend this mountain? He was commanded to ascend this mountain, and to hold it.
- 9. The difficulty of navigation 2 on the open sea is great, and our vessels will be detained by the storms. 10. Was not Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, warned by Caesar? He was warned by Caesar to avoid all suspicion in future. 11. We have been warned not to attack this town, on account of the width of the moat and the height of the wall. 12. We have been ordered to fortify our camp with a rampart. 13. The Suebi were regarded by the Romans as very warlike.

LESSON LXVI.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. — REVIEW OF RULES XXXVII., XXXVIII, AND XL.

194. Lesson from the Grammar.

In the verb *Moneō*, learn the Passive voice in full. See the following page.

 $^{^{\}rm 1}$ Remember the Latin idiom, for friends.

² Use the Gerund.

SECOND CONJUGATION: E VERBS.

208. PASSIVE VOICE.—Moneor, I am advised.

VERB STEM, mon, moni; PRESENT STEM, monē.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

Pres. Inf. mon**ëri**. Perf. Ind. monitus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

I am advised.

PLURAL.

mon**eor** mon**ēris**, *or* re mon**ētur** mon**ēmur** mon**ēminī** mon**entur**

IMPERFECT.

I was advised.

monēbaris, or re monēbātur mon**ēbāmur** mon**ēbāminī** mon**ēbantur**

FUTURE.

I shall or will be advised.

monēbor monēberis, or re monēbitur monēbimur monēbiminī monēbuntur

PERFECT.

I have been advised, I was advised.

monitus sum 1
monitus es
monitus est

monitī sumus monitī estis monitī sunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had been advised.

monitus eram ¹
monitus eras
monitus erat

monitī **erāmus** monit**ī erātis** monit**ī erant**

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been advised.

monitus erõ l monitu erimus
monitus eris monitu eritis
monitus erit monitu erunt

¹ See 170, 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

SINGULAR.

monear moneāris, or re moneatur

PLURAL.

moneāmur moneaminī moneantur

IMPERFECT.

I should be advised, he would be advised.

mon**ërer** mon**ërëris**, or re

monērētur

mon**ërëmur** mon**ërëmin**i mon**ërentur**

PERFECT.

I may have been advised, or I have been advised.

monitus sim 1 monitus sīs monitus sit

monitī sīmus monitī sītis monitī sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been advised, he would have been advised.2

monitus essem 1 monitus essēs monitus esset

monit**ī essēmus** monit**ī essētis** monitī essent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. monere, be thou advised;

monemini, be ye advised.

Fut. monetor, thou shalt be advised,

monetor, he shall be advised; monentor, they shall be advised.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. moneri, to be advised.

Perf. monitus esse,1 to have been advised.

Fut. monitum Iri, to be about to be advised.

PARTICIPLE.

Perf. monitus, advised.

Ger. monendus, to be advised, deserving to be advised.

¹ See 177.

² Or I had been advised, you had been advised, etc.

LESSON LXVII.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE. — REVIEW OF RULES XXXVII., XXXVIII., AND XL. — EXERCISES.

195. Vocabulary.

Amor, \bar{o} ris, m. Annuus, a, um, Auctoritas, atis, f. Considius, ii, m. Creo, āre, āvi, ātum, Falsus, a, um, Imperitus, a, um, Mors, mortis, f. Nex. necis. f. Nonnulli, ae, a, pl. Perterreō, ēre, uī, itum, Plūs, comp. adv., pos. multum, Potestās, ātis, f. Pūblius, ii, m. Renuntio, are, avi, atum, Rūmor, öris, m. Sēsē, Temerārius, a, um, Valeō, ēre, uī, itum,

love. annual, annually, for a year. authority, influence. Considius, an officer in Caesar's to create, appoint, elect. [army. false. unskilful, ignorant. death. death, putting to death. to terrify greatly, terrify, frighten. more. power. Publius, a Roman praenomen. to report. rumor, report. reduplicated form of sē. See [**102**, 184, 4. to avail, prevail.

196. Translate into English.

1. Omnēs collēs ā nōbīs tenentur. 2. Omnia loca superiōra ā nōbīs tenēbuntur. 3. Omnēs collēs āc loca superiōra ab exercitū tenēbantur. 4. Nē falsīs rūmōribus terreāmur. 5. Nē hīs rūmōribus terreantur. 6. Utinam omnēs hostēs hōc rūmōre terreantur. 7. Dīcunt vōs hīs rūmōribus terrērī. 8. Hominēs temerāriī atque imperītī saepe falsīs rūmōribus terrentur. 9. Imperātor dīcit hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs saepe falsīs rūmōribus terrērī. 10. Pūblius Cōnsīdius timōre perterritus renūntiāvit montem ab hostibus tenērī. 11. Sunt nōnnūllī quī multitūdinem dēterrent nē frūmentum comportent.

12. Nonnullī prīncipēs adventu nostrī exercitus perterritī erant. Hī prīncipēs, adventu nostrī exercitus perterritī, lēgātos ad Caesarem mittēbant. 13. Liscus in conventu dīxit sēsē ob eam causam diu tacuisse. 14. Non is sum quī gravissimē mortis perīculo terrear. 15. Mīlitēs mortis perīculo terrerī non dēbent. 16. Vergobretus, quī creātur annuus, vītae necisque in suos 2 habet potestātem. 17. Auctoritās Dumnorigis apud plēbem plūs valēbat quam ipsīus magistrātūs. 3

197. Translate into Latin.

1. Have not your vessels been detained by storms? Messengers have announced to us that our vessels have been detained by storms. 2. May we always be regarded by you as friends. 3. They say that the Aedui were always regarded by Caesar as friends. 4. Many towns were besieged by the Germans. 5. Messengers announce that many towns have been besieged by the Germans. Let us ascertain which towns have been besieged by them. 6. We are advised by our friends, who have large experience in military affairs, to remain (keep ourselves) in camp. 7. The ambassadors were so terrified that they remained silent for a long time.

8. You ought not to be terrified by these rumors. 9. Would that we had not been terrified by false rumors? 10. Were not the Gauls often terrified by false rumors? Caesar said that the Gauls were often terrified by false rumors. 11. By what rumors, my brave soldiers, have you been terrified? 12. With (among) you, Romans, the love of country ought to avail more than the fear of death. 13. Announce to the

¹ Subjunctive in a clause denoting Result. See 123, 500, I.; Suggestion XVII., 3.

² In suos, literally into or against his own, render over or among his subjects, or his countrymen. Adjectives in the plural are often used substantively in Latin, as in English. Suos is thus used.

³ Governed by auctoritas understood.

⁴ For Mood, see 119, Rule XLII.

general that this mountain is held by us. 14. Let us hold the mountain which we were ordered to occupy.

LESSON LXVIII.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.—PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL.—REVIEW OF RULES XLI., XLII., AND XLIII.

198. Vocabulary.

Adequitō, āre, āvī, ātum, Alius, a, ud, 45, 151, Cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātum, Gubernātor, ōris, m. Impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum, Liger, is, m.

Lingonës, um, m. pl.
Nauta, ae, m.
Nāvis longa,
Nēve, conj.
Sed, conj.
Triplex, icis,
Undique, adv.

other, another.
to save, preserve, spare.
pilot.
to obtain one's request.
the Liger, now the Loire, a river in southwestern Gaul.
the Lingones, a tribe of central Gaul.
sailor.
a long ship, ship of war.

a long ship, ship of a nor, and not. but. triple. on every side.

to ride toward, ride.

199. Translate into English.

1. Vīcus appellābātur Octōdūrus. 2. Dīcunt vīcum appellātum esse Octōdūrum. 3. Dīcēbant hunc vīcum altissimīs montibus undique continērī. 4. Nē ad bellum celeriter excitēmur. 5. Caesar dīcit omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum celeriter excitārī. 6. Dīxērunt sē tibī rem ēnūntiāsse,¹ sed intellegere quantō cum perīculō eam rem ēnūntiāssent.¹ 7. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē Helvētiōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē juvārent. 8. Dīcunt eam rem per fugitīvōs hostibus nūntiātam esse. 9. Tum dēmum Caesar partem suārum copiārum quae castra

¹ Contracted from enuntiavisse and enuntiavissent.

hostium oppügnäret¹ mīsit. 10. Triplicem aciem prō castrīs īnstruēbat.

11. Gallī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione mīsērunt, et impetrāvērunt ut conservārentur.² 12. Nē montēs quī vīco Octodūro impendent ab hostibus teneantur. 13. Nāvēs longae in flūmine Ligere aedificentur. 14. Caesar nāvēs longās in flūmine Ligere aedificārī jubet. 15. Nautae gubernātorēsque ex provinciā nostrā comparentur. 16. Caesar nautās gubernātorēsque ex provinciā nostrā compararī jubet. 17. Caesarī nūntiātum est³ equitēs Ariovistī ad nostros adequitāre.

200. Translate into Latin.

1. The village in which Galba wintered was surrounded by very high mountains. Did he understand with how great peril he was wintering in that village? He understood that he was wintering there with great peril. 2. Horsemen rode toward us to announce the words of the king. 3. The Aedui were so terrified, that they sent messengers to Caesar to implore help. 4. The general sent a part of his forces to fortify the town. 5. Caesar sent a lieutenant to order ships of war to be built. 6. Ten ships of war have been built on the Rhine. 7. The deserters obtained their request, not to be regarded (that they might not be regarded) as enemies.

8. Those who were ordered to withstand the attack of the enemy were so terrified, that they implored help from Caesar.
9. May our authority avail more with you than that 4 of our enemies. 10. The messengers said that their towns had been besieged by the enemy. 11. Brave soldiers will not be terrified by the fear of death. 12. The general says that his

¹ For Mood, see 119, 497, I.; see also Suggestion XVII., 3.

² Ut conservarentur. This is an Object Clause, depending upon impetraverunt, but it was developed out of a Clause of Result, and accordingly has the Subjunctive.

³ The Subject of nuntiatum est is the clause equites . . . adequiture. See Suggestion XVIII., 1.

⁴ Omit the pronoun in rendering into Latin.

soldiers are so brave that they are not terrified by the tear of death. 13. May that city always be held by our friends. 14. Would that these towns were held by our friends.

LESSON LXIX.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS IN FULL. — EXER-CISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

201. Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.¹

Caesar convocāvit prīncipēs, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Liscum, magistrātum Aeduōrum. Hīc magistrātus, quī Vergobretus appellātur, creātur annuus, et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem.

Caesar prīncipēs Aeduōrum graviter accusāvit. Tum dēmum Liscus, quod anteā tacuerat, ēnūntiāvit. Haec sunt verba: "Sunt nōnnūllī, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūs valet quam ipsōrum magistrātuum. Hī seditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrent nē frūmentum comportent. Ab iīsdem vestra cōnsilia hostibus ēnūntiantur." Posteā dīxit intellegere sēsē quantō cum perīculō Caesarī rem ēnūntiāsset, et ob eam causam diū tacuisse.

Hāc ōrātiōne Dumnorix, Divitiacī frāter, dēsīgnātus est. Is māgnum numerum equitātūs semper circum sē habēbat, et nōn sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs, largiter poterat.

202. Translate into Latin.

1. Liscus said that with the populace the authority of these citizens availed more, than that of the magistrate himself, and that they deterred the multitude from bringing (that they should not bring) grain. He also said that they announced to the enemy nearly all the plans of the Romans.

¹ See Directions for Reading at Sight, 137.

2. Who was Dumnorix? He was an Aeduan chief, the brother of Divitiacus, who was called the friend of Caesar

and the Roman people.

3. So great fear took possession of the Aedui, whose lands the Helvetii were devastating, that they sent ambassadors to Caesar to implore aid from him. 4. The general ought to lead his army through the lands (fields) of the Aedui into the territory of the Santones, who are not far from our province. 5. The general is hastening with forced marches into Italy; he will there enrol three legions, and lead out of winter quarters the five that are now wintering in the vicinity of Rome.

LESSON LXX.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE. — REVIEW OF RULES V., VI., AND IX.

203. Lesson from the Grammar.

In the verb $Reg\bar{o}$, learn the Indicative Mood of the Active Voice. See page 164.

204. Vocabulary.

Auxilia, orum, n. pl. Conscribo, ere, scripsi, scriptum, Constituo, ere, stitui, stitutum, Continuus, a, um, Dēlīberō, āre, āvī, ātum, Dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum, Edūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, Hiems, emis, f. Īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum, Interim, adv. Item, adv. Jugum, i, n. Maneo, ēre, mānsī, mānsum, Medius, a, um,

auxiliaries. [decide. to enrol, enlist. to station, place; to determine, continuous, successive. to deliberate. to say, speak. to lead out. winter. to draw up, arrange, array. meanwhile, in the meantime. also, likewise. ridge, height. to remain. middle; the middle of.1

¹ See foot-note on summus, 191.

Mittō, ere, mīsī, missum,
Prōdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum,
Prōximē, sup. adv.
Quattuor, indeclinable,
Redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum,
Sextus, a, um,
Subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum,
Sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum,
Veterānus, a, um,

to send.
to lead forth.
nearest, most recently, last.
four.
to lead back.
sixth.
to withdraw, lead off.
to take.
veteran.

205. Translate into English.

- 1. Caesar diem ad dēlīberandum¹ sūmpsit. 2. Nonne diem ad dēlīberandum sūmētis? Diem ad dēlīberandum sūmpsimus. 3. Hostēs diem ad dēlīberandum sūmpserant. 4. Quīnque legionēs quae sustineant² hostium impetum mittēmus. 5. Caesar copiās suās in proximum collem subdūxerat, equitātumque quī sustinēret² hostium impetum mīserat. Ipse interim in colle medio³ aciem īnstrūxit legionum quattuor veterānārum, sed in summo³ jugō duās legionēs, quās in Galliā citeriore proximē conscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia collocāvit. 6. Nonne haec in conventū dīxistī? Ea quae in conventū dīxī sunt vēra. 7. Quid Liscus dīxerat? Liscus in conventū dīxerat Dumnorigem, Divitiacī frātrem, novīs rēbus studēre.
- 8. Imperātor sõlis occāsū⁴ suās cōpiās in castra redūcet.
 9. Caesar ex eō diē diēs⁵ continuōs quīnque prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūxit. 10. Ipse cōnstituerat in Galliā hiemāre et tōtam hiemem ad ⁶ exercitum manēre. 11. Caesar sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēdūxerant. 12. Nōnne dīxistī

¹ Ad dēliberandum, 'for deliberation,' or 'to deliberate.' Dēliberandum is a Gerund in the Accusative depending upon ad. In Gerunds the Accusative always depends upon a preposition.

 $^{{\}bf ^2}$ See Suggestion XVII., ${\bf ^3}$

⁸ See foot-note on summus, 191.

⁴ Ablative of Time. See 93, Rule XXXI.

⁵ Duration of Time. See 98, Rule IX.

⁶ Near, in the vicinity of.

Aeduōs ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcōs appellātōs esse? Dīxī eōs ā senātū frātrēs appellātōs esse.

206. Translate into Latin.

- 1. What did you say in the convention? I said that nearly all the Gauls at that time desired a revolution. 2. Shall you not send ambassadors to the neighboring states to implore aid from them? We have already sent ambassadors to these states, and have established peace and friendship with them. 3. How many legions shall you enrol in Italy? We shall enrol five legions in Italy, and three in Gaul. 4. The general had placed his legions in line of battle before the camp. 5. Have you taken time for 1 deliberation? We have taken time for deliberation, and have decided to send ambassadors to the Belgae.
- 6. The enemy kept themselves in camp for five days,² but on the sixth day they led their forces out of the camp, and placed them in line of battle. 7. Caesar placed in winter quarters the legions that he had enrolled in Italy. 8. Have you decided to pass the winter in Italy? We have decided to remain in Gaul during the whole winter. 9. For many days the Romans had formed the line of battle in front of the camp. 10. Caesar says that he remained near the army the whole winter.

LESSON LXXI.

THIRD CONJUGATION. - ACTIVE VOICE IN FULL.

207. Lesson from the Grammar.

In the verb $Reg\bar{o}$, learn the Active Voice in full. See the following page.

¹ For, render by ad.

² For the Latin construction, see 98, Rule IX.

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

209. ACTIVE VOICE.—Rego, I rule.

VERB STEM, reg; PRESENT STEM, rege.1

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind. Pres. Inf. Perf. Ind. Supine.
rego, regere, rexi,2 rectum.2

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

singular. I rule. Plural.
rego regimus
regis regitis
regit regunt

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling, or I ruled.

regēbam regēbāmus regēbās regēbātis regēbat regēbant

FUTURE.

I shall or will rule.

regām regēmus regēs regētis regēt regent

PERFECT.

I have ruled, or I ruled.

rēxī rēximus rēxistī rēxistis rēxit rēxērunt, or ēre

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled.

rēxeram rēxerāmus rēxerās rēxeratis rēxerat rēxerant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have ruled.

rēzerō rēzerīmus rēzerīs rēzerītis rēzerīt rēzerint

The characteristic is a variable vowel—ŏ, u, e, i: regŏ, regunt, regere, regis; Curius calls it the thematic vowel; see Curtius, L, n. 199. but on ŏ, see also Meyer, 441.

² See p. 3, 30 33.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I rule, let him rule.1

SINGULAR. regam regās regat

PLURAL. regāmus reg**ātis** regant

IMPERFECT.

I should rule, he would rule.

regerem reg**erēs** regeret

reg**erēmus** reg**erētis** regerent

PERFECT.

I may have ruled, or I have ruled.

rëxerim rēxerĭs rēxerit

rēx**erīmus** rēx**erĭtis** rēxerint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have ruled, he would have ruled.

rēxissem rēx**issēs** réxisset

rēxissēmus rēxissētis rēxissent

IMPERATIVE.

rule thou; Pres. rege,

Fut. regito, thou shalt rule, regito, he shall rule :

rule ye. regite.

regitōte, ye shall rule, regunto, they shall rule.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. regere, to rule. Perf. rexisse, to have ruled.

Fut. recturus esse, to be about Fut. recturus, about to rule. to rule.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. regens, ruling.

GERUND.

of ruling. Gen. regendī, for ruling, Dat. regendō,

Acc. regendum, ruling,

by ruling. Abl. regendő,

SUPINE.

Acc. rēctum, to rule. to rule, be ruled. Abl. rēctū,

¹ But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196.

208. Vocabulary.

Addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, Arvernī, ōrum, m. pl.
Cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitum,
Conjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnetum,
Cōnsulō, ere, suluī, sultum,
Contendō, ere, tendī, tentum,
Dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēnsum,
Deinde, adv.
Genus, eris, n.
Inter sē,

Nondum, adv.
Nunc, adv.
Perīculosus, a, um,
Portus, ūs, m.
Potentātus, ūs, m.
Prīmum, sup. adv.
Tenuis, e,
Tribūnus, ī, m.

Unquam, adv.

to lead to, lead, bring. the Arverni, a tribe of southern to ascertain. to join, unite. to consult. to contend, strive; to hasten. to defend. then, in the next place. kind, class. among themselves; with each other, with one another, tonot yet. gether. now. perilous, dangerous. port, harbor. power, dominion, control. first. thin; feeble. tribune, one of the six principal officers of the legion.

ever, at any time.

209. Translate into English.

1. Nunc dē hōc perīculōsō bellō dīcam. 2. Prīmum dē genere bellī, deinde dē māgnitūdine¹ dīcāmus. 3. Dē salūte cīvium dīcere dēbētis. 4. Patriam dēfendere dēbēmus. 5. Quae cīvitās unquam anteā tam tenuis fuit quae nōn portūs suōs et agrōs dēfenderet?² 6. Cōnsulite vōbīs, cōnservāte vōs, conjagēs, līberōs, fortūnāsque vestrās, populī Rōmānī nōmen salūtemque dēfendite. 7. Ob eās causās quīnque legionēs in Galliā cōnscrībāmus.

8. Caesar dīcit sē in Ĭtaliam māgnīs itineribus contendisse, duāsque ibī legiōnēs conscrīpsisse. 9. Aeduī et Arvernī dē potentātū inter sē multos annos contendēbant. 10. Imperātor tribūnos mīlitum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legionēs conjungerent. 11. Mīlitēs castra dēfendant. 12.

¹ That is, de māgnitūdīne bellī.

² For Mood, see 123, 500, I.

Nonne castra defendetis? Castra defendemus. 13. Caesar Labienum legătum in Treveros cum equitatu misit. 14. Dicunt imperatorem suas copias in proximum collem subduxisse. 15. Postulamus ne quem militem ad colloquium adducatis. 16. Utinam Ariovistus suas copias in castra reducat.

210. Translate into Latin.

- 1. The general has decided to lead back his forces into camp. 2. Caesar says that the enemy led back their forces into camp at sunset. 3. Let us lead our forces out of the camp, and place them in line of battle. 4. Did you not say that the general placed his whole army in line of battle in front of the camp? We said that he led out six legions, and placed them in line of battle in front of the camp. 5. Would that the enemy would lead back their forces into camp. 6. Would that the general had led us back into camp.
- 7. Let us speak first of the Romans, then of the Gauls. 8. You have spoken of the valor of the soldiers; speak now of the safety of the citizens. 9. Let us defend the safety of our country. 10. Caesar said that these tribes were at that time contending with each other (among themselves). 11. We ought to consult, not for ourselves, but for our country. 12. The general says that he shall consult, not for himself, but for his country. 13. How many legions has the general enrolled in Gaul?

LESSON LXXII.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS. — ACTIVE VOICE. — REVIEW OF RULES XII. AND XIV.

211. Vocabulary.

Commeō, āre, āvī, ātum, Dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, Dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, Effēminō, āre, āvī, ātum, Excūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, to go back and forth, resort.
to lead from, conduct.
to lead.
to effeminate, enervate.
to excuse.

Gerō, ere, gessī, gestum, Importō, āre, āvī, ātum, Incolō, ere, coluī, cultum, Levitās, ātis, f. Mātrimōnium, iī, n.

Menapiī, ōrum, m. pl.
Mercātor, ōris, m.
Mātūrē, adv.
Nocturnus, a, um,
Perfringō, ere, frēgī, frāctum,
Pertineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum,
Phalanx, phalangis, f.
Praepōnō, ere, posuī, positum,
Regiō, ōnis, f.
Rīpa, ae, f.
Sēquanī, ōrum, m. pl.
Sub, prep. w. acc. and abl.
Succēdō, ere, cessī, cessum,
Uterque, utraque, utrumque,¹

to carry on, wage, do. to bring in, import. to inhabit, dwell. levity, fickleness, impulsiveness. marriage; in mātrimonium dūcere, to marry. the Menapii, a tribe of northern merchant, trader. [Gaul. promptly, early. nocturnal, by night. to break through. to pertain, tend. phalanx, line. to place over or in command of. direction; region, district. bank of a river. the Sequani or Sequanians, a tribe under; up to. of eastern Gaul. to come under, come up to, apeach; both. proach.

212. Translate into English.

- 1. Gallī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt quī sē excūsārent.
 2. Mercātörēs ad Belgās nōn saepe commeant.
 3. Mercātörēs ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs² pertinent, saepe important.
 4. Menapiī eās regiōnēs incolēbant, et ad utramque rīpam flūminis Rhēnī agrōs vīcōsque habēbant.
 5. Caesar mātūrius quam tempus annī postulābat in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs³ Labiēnum praeposuit.
 6. Gallī levitāte animī novīs rēbus stūdēbant.
 7. Belgae cum Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, bellum gerunt.
- 8. Lēgātī dīxērunt reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse. 9. Rēmī, quī prōximī Galliae sunt, lēgātōs ad Caesarem

¹ Declined like uter. See 45, 151.

² Ad effeminandos animos = ad effeminandum animos, which is a rare construction. In the second form animos depends upon the gerund effeminandum; in the first form it depends upon ad, and effeminandos agrees with it; 40, Rule XXXIV. Literally, to the souls to be enervated; render to enervate the soul.

³ For construction, see 54, 384, II.

misērunt, quī dīcerent, reliquōs Belgās in armīs esse. 10. Dumnorix Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorigis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat. 11. Hostēs sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt. 12. Hostium phalangem perfringāmus. 13. Galliae cīvitātēs nocturnōs conventūs habēbant.

213. Translate into Latin.

1. Who inhabit these regions? Deserters say that the Menapii inhabit these regions, and that they have many villages beyond the Rhine. 2. Were not these Gauls friendly to Caesar? They were not friendly to him; they feared the Romans and desired a revolution. 3. Will not the soldiers obey the lieutenant? He has ordered them to fortify the winter quarters. They will obey him, and they will fortify the winter quarters with a high rampart. 4. Let the citizens consult in regard to the war.

5. To whom was Dumnorix friendly? Caesar says that Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, was friendly to the Helvetii. 6. For this reason² the chiefs remained silent many days. 7. The Aedui were always friends to the Romans. 8. The general sent a lieutenant to lead the army out of winter quarters. 9. We advise you not to speak of this war. 10. We ought to ascertain how many legions Caesar enrolled in Gaul. 11. Let us lead back the soldiers into the camp that we may defend it.

LESSON LXXIII.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. — REVIEW OF RULES XVI., XXIII., AND XXV.

214. Lesson from the Grammar.

In the verb $Reg\bar{o}$, learn the Passive voice in full. See the following page.

¹ For Mood, see 119, 497, I. ² Latin idiom, on account of these causes.

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

210. PASSIVE VOICE.—Regor, I am ruled.

VERB STEM, reg; PRESENT STEM, rege.1

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND. regor,

PRES. INF.

PERF. IND. rēctus¹ sum. reg∎,

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am ruled. SINGULAR.

regor regeris, or re regitur

IMPERFECT. I was ruled.

regēbar reg**ēbāris**, *or* re regēbātur

reg**ēbāmur** regēbāminī regēbantur

PLURAL.

regimur

regiminī

reguntur

FUTURE. I shall or will be ruled.

regair regëris, or re reg**ëtur**

reg**ēmur** reg**ēmimī** regentur

PERFECT.

I have been ruled, or I was ruled.

rēctus sum² rēctus es rēctus est

rēctī sumus rēctī estis recti sunt

PLUPERFECT. I had been ruled.

rēctus eram? rēctus erās rēctus erat

rēctī erāmus rēctī erātis rēctī erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been ruled.

rēctus erŏ² rēctus eris rēctus erit

rēctī **erimus** rēctī eritis rēctī erunt

¹ See 207, 209, foot-notes.

² See 170 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be ruled, let him be ruled.

SINGULAR.

reg**ar** reg**āris**, *or* re reg**ātur** PLURAL.

reg**āmur** reg**āmimī** reg**antur**

IMPERFECT.

I should be ruled, he would be ruled.

regereris, or re regeretur reg**erēmur** reg**erēminī** reg**erentur**

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled, or I have been ruled.

rēctus sim¹ rēctus sīs rēctus sit rēctī sīmus rēctī sītis rēctī sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been ruled, he would have been ruled.

rēctus essem ¹ rēctus essēs rēctus esset rēctī essēmus rēctī essētis rēctī essent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. regere, be thou ruled;

Fut. regitor, thou shalt be ruled, regitor, he shall be ruled;

reginator, they shall be ruled.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. regī, to be ruled.

Perf. rēctus esse,¹ to have been ruled.

Fut. rectum Irī, to be about to be ruled.

Participle.

Perf. rectus, ruled.

Ger. regendus, to be ruled, do serving to be ruled.

¹ See 170, 206, foot-notes.

LESSON LXXIV.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. — REVIEW OF RULES XVI., XXIII., AND XXV. — EXERCISES.

215, Vocabulary.

Aedificium, ii, n. Aquilifer, erī, m. Cārus, a, um, Centum, indeclinable, Claudō, ere, clausī, clausum, Germānia, ae, f. Germānus, a, um, Incendo, ere, cendi, censum, Insula, ae, f. Irrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum, Nūnguam, adv. Occido, ere, cidi, cisum, Pāgus, i, m. Porta, ae, f. Premō, ere, pressī, pressum, Quoque, adv. Remaneo, ere, mansi, mansum, Repello, ere, reppuli, repulsum, Ubii, ōrum, m. pl. Usīpetēs, um, m. pl.

standard-bearer.
dear.
hundred.
to shut, close.
Germany.
German.
to set on fire, fire, burn.
island.

building, house.

island.
to break in, rush in.
never.

to kill, slay.
division, canton.
gate.

to press, press hard, distress.

to remain.

to repel, repulse. [many. the Ubii, a tribe of western Gerthe Usipetes, a tribe of northwestern Germany.

western Germany.

Vercingetorix, a Gallic chieftain.

Vercingetorix, igis, m.

216. Translate into English.

1. Aquilifer ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pūgnāns¹ occīdītur.
2. Multī mīlitēs fortissimē pūgnantēs occīsī sunt. 3. Nōnne omnēs māgnā multitūdine hostium premēmur? 4. Utinam hostēs omnēs nostrā virtūte repellantur. 5. Num ab hostibus eō tempore repulsī estis? Nūnquam ab hostibus repulsī sumus. 6. Quid apud Alesiam geritur? Gallī perterritī in oppidum irrumpunt; Vercingetorix imperātor jubet portās

¹ While fighting. See Suggestion XIII., 3.

laudī, nē castra nūdentur. 7. Omnia vīcī Octōdūrī aedificia mcēnsa sunt. 8. Nōnne multa oppida ab Helvētiīs incēnsa sunt? Post Orgetorigis mortem Helvētiī oppida sua omnia incendērunt.

9. Māgna Germāniae pars ā bellicōsissimīs nātiōnibus eō tempore incolēbātur. 10. Multae īnsulae ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incoluntur. 11. Caesar obsidēs ad sē addūcī jubet. 12. Usīpetēs Germānī ab Suēbīs multōs annōs premēbantur. Ubiī quoque graviter ab Suēbīs pressī erant. 13. Suēbī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur. 14. Omnium¹ quī Galliam incolunt fortissimī sunt Belgae. 15. Suēbī, quī bellicōsissimī Germānōrum omnium esse dīcuntur, ūnō in locō nōn longius annō² remanent. 16. Caesar mīlitum vītam suā salūte² cāriōrem habēbat.

217. Translate into Latin.

- 1. Were not the Belgae braver than the other Gauls? They are said to have been the bravest of all the Gauls. Did they not often wage war with the Germans who dwelt beyond the Rhine? They are said to have waged war continually with the neighboring states. 2. What is dearer than life? To brave soldiers liberty and country are dearer than life. Ought we not to hold (regard) liberty and country dearer than life itself? 3. This part of Gaul has always been inhabited by warlike nations. 4. Which part of Gaul was inhabited by the brave Belgae? 5. One part of Gaul is said to have been inhabited by the Celts.
- 6. The bravest and most warlike of the Gauls were conquered by the Romans. 7. By the valor of our soldiers the enemy have been repulsed. 8. The bravest of the soldiers were slain. 9. Let us not remain in this town longer than one day. 10. Did you not say that these islands were inhabited by fierce nations? These islands are said to have

¹ Partitive Genitive. See 28, 397. 2 For Case, see 88, Rule XXIII.

⁸ Render first with quam, and secondly without it.

been inhabited by barbarous nations. 11. Were not many towns burned by the enemy? Many towns are said to have been burned by them. 12. The general has ordered the army to be led back into camp, and the gates to be closed.

LESSON LXXV.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS. — PASSIVE VOICE. — REVIEW OF RULES XXX., XXXI., AND XXXIII.

218. Vocabulary.

Aquitānī, örum, m. pl.

the Aquitani or Aquitanians, the inhabitants of the southwestern di-

vision of Gaul.

Cabillonum, ī, n.

Cabillonum, a town of Eastern Gaul. certain, fixed, appointed.

Certus, a, um, Compleo, ere, evi, etum,

to fill, cover. hastily, speedily.

Confestim, adv. Cotta, ae, m.

Cotta, a lieutenant under Caesar.

Dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsum, Funda, ae, f.

to divide. sling. to appoint.

Indīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum, Inopia, ae, f.

lack, want, need. to commission, order; to entrust, con-

Mandō, āre, āvī, ātum,

sign, commit, betake. Matisco, a town in southeastern Gaul.

Matisco, onis, m. Novus, a, um, Sulpicius, $i\bar{i}$, m. Supplicatio, onis, f.

Vesper, erī, m.

Sulpicius, a lieutenant under Caesar.

thanksgiving. Tigurīnus, \tilde{i} , m.

Tigurinus, one of the four cantons of evening. [the Helvetii.

Viginti, indeclinable, Vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātum,

twenty. to wound.

219. Translate into English.

new.

1. Omnis cīvitās Helvētiōrum in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa Hörum ünus appellātur Tigurīnus. 2. Gallia est dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam Gallī. 3. Imperātor hōrā septimā vīcum hominibus i complērī jussit. 4. Ĉotta lēgātus fortissimē pūgnāns 2 fundā vulnerātus est. 5. Rōmae diērum vīgintī supplicātið indīcitur. 6. Caesar Ciceronem et Sulpicium Cabilloni et Matiscone in Aeduis collocavit.

7. Hostēs ad vesperum fortiter pūgnāvērunt; tum dēmum fugae sēsē mandāvērunt. 8. Litterae ad Caesarem confestim ab Cicerone mittuntur. 9. Ariovistus dīxit eās omnēs copiās ā sē ūno proelio superātās esse. 10. Multī omnium rērum inopiā adductī auxilium ā Caesare implōrābant. obsidēs imperāvit, eōsque ad certam4 diem addūcī jussit. 11. Multa ab Caesare in colloquiō dicta sunt. 12. Duae legiōnēs, quae in Galliā prōximē cōnscrīptae erant, fugae sēsē mandābant.

220. Translate into Latin.

1. The lands of the Gauls were often seized by the Ger-2. Many Gauls, distressed with want at home, implored aid from the neighboring towns. 3. At that time Caesar was enrolling new legions in Italy. 4. Many legions had already been enrolled in Gaul and Italy. 5. At Rome 5 Caesar is said to have been advised to hasten into Gaul. On the same day he was advised by Labienus to enlist a new legion. 6. A part of a legion had been placed in winter quarters at Octodurus. 7. At that time he is said to have ordered all the legions to be led out of winter quarters.

8. On that day the camp of the Romans was assaulted by the Gauls. 9. These brave soldiers were wounded while fighting 6 for their country. 10. Let us order them to remain

¹ For Case, see 78, Rule XVIII.

² See Suggestion XIII., 3.

³ Literally, of twenty days; render, for twenty days. The Accusative of Duration of Time could have been used.

⁵ See 185, 425, II. 4 See foot-note 1, page 234.

⁶ In rendering into Latin, omit while. See Suggestion XIII., 3.

in the province during the winter. 11. Into how many parts was Gaul divided? Caesar says that Gaul was divided into three parts. 12. Gaul is said to have been divided into three parts. 13. Into how many parts did you say that our country is divided? I said that it is divided into many parts. 14. He is said to have led his army back into camp about midday.

LESSON LXXVI.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS. — EXER-CISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

221. Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.²

Caesar cōpiās suās in prōximum collem subdūxit, equitātumque quī sustinēret³ hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō⁴ triplicem aeiem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum, sed in summō jugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre prōximē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī, āc tōtum montem hominibus complērī jussit. Helvētiī sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt, sed Rōmānī facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Hostēs ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum fortiter pūgnāvērunt. Diūtius nostrōrum impetūs sustinēre nōn poterant; multī vulnerātī erant; itaque timōre perterritī fugae sēsē mandāvērunt, atque in fīnēs Lingonum contendērunt. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē juvārent. Tum dēmum Helvētiī, omnium rērum inopiā adductī, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt.

¹ During the winter. Use the Accusative of Duration of Time. See 98, 379.

² See Directions for Reading at Sight, 137.

³ See Suggestion XVII., 3.

⁴ See foot-note on summus, 141.

222. Translate into Latin.

- 1. About midday the general led out all his forces, and placed them in line of battle before the camp. The enemy in sight of their commander fought bravely for many hours, but at length, repulsed by the valor of our soldiers, and overcome (terrified) by fear, they betook themselves to flight. The general was wounded, and many soldiers were slain.

 2. So great fear took possession of the Gauls, that they decided to fortify their cities, to bring grain into them from their lands, and to build a large number of ships.
- 3. The Gauls had filled this town with brave soldiers, and Caesar had been advised not to attack it on account of the valor of the men, the width of the moat, and the height of the wall. 4. At that time so great fear took possession of all the Aedui, whose lands the Helvetii were devastating, that they fortified their cities, and sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask aid.

LESSON LXXVII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE. — RE-VIEW OF RULES XXXIV., XXXV. AND XXXVI.

223. Lesson from the Grammar.

In the verb $Audi\bar{o}$ learn the Indicative Mood of the Active Voice. See page 180.

224. Vocabulary.

Aduātucī, ōrum, m. pl. Ante, adv. Audiō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum, Clēmentia, ae, f. Cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum, the Aduatuci, a tribe of northern
before. [Gaul.
to hear, hear of.
clemency, forbearance, mercy.
to drive together, bring together,
collect; to force, compel.

Convenio, ire, veni, ventum, to come together, assemble, meet [come. daily. Cotidianus, a, um, double. Duplex, icis, Helvetian. Helvētius, a, um, side. Latus, eris, n. Mūniō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum, to fortify. neither, nor; neque . . . neque, Neque, conj. [neither . . . nor. foot. Pēs, pedis, m. Scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, to write. to come. Venio, ire, veni, ventum, Video, ere, vidi, visum, to see.

225. Translate into English.

- 1. Nonne vocës militum auditis? Vocës omnium militum audīmus. 2. Tum vērō nostrī clāmōrem ab eā parte audīvērunt. 3. Nonne castra mūnietis? Castra vallo mūniemus. 4. Caesar castra in altitūdinem pedum¹ duodecim vallō mūnīverat. 5. Legiōnēs sex, quae prīmae vēnerant, castra mūniēbant. 6. Aduātucī, dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, ūnum oppidum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant.² 7. Eō tempore castra vallō fossāque mūniēbāmus. 8. Ob eās rēs Galba ūnam partem vīcī, quī appellātur Octōdūrus, vallō fossāque cōnfestim münïvit.
- 9. Flümen latus ünum caströrum müniēbat. 10. Venetī oppida mūniēbant, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportābant, nāvēs in Venetiam cōgēbant. 11. Rhēnus lātissimus atque altissimus agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit. 12. Aduātucī Caesaris clēmentiam ab aliīs audiēbant. 13. Tanta opera neque vīderant ante 8 Gallī neque audierant. 2 . 14. Eādem dē causā Helvētiī Celtārum omnium fortissimī sunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt. 15. Totīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem convēnērunt.

¹ Construe with vallo.

² $M\bar{u}nierant$, contracted from $m\bar{u}n\bar{v}erant$; audierant, from aud $\bar{v}erant$.

³ Observe that ante is sometimes an adverb, and sometimes a preposition.

226. Translate into Latin.

- 1. What did you hear at Rome? We heard that nearly all the Belgae had conspired against the Roman people. From whom did you hear this report? We heard it from many citizens and from the consuls themselves. 2. Judges, you have heard the words of many witnesses, and all these things which you have heard are true. 3. Have the enemy heard what we are doing? I hear that all our plans have been announced to them by deserters. 4. Have you heard what we have been doing at this time at Rome? We have heard of the many good things which you have done in that city.
- 5. Have you not fortified all these towns with high walls? We fortify our towns, not by walls and ramparts, but by the valor of our citizens. 6. I have never seen the cities of which 2 you write, but I have heard of them from others. 7. The legions that had been enrolled in Gaul were at that time fortifying the camp. 8. Have you not often heard that the Belgae incessantly wage war with the Germans? I have often heard that 3 from you. 9. You have all heard that many states sent ambassadors to Caesar at that time to ask aid.

LESSON LXXVIII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE IN FULL. — REVIEW OF RULES LV., LVI., AND LXI.

227. Lesson from the Grammar.

In the verb $Audi\bar{o}$, learn the Active Voice in full. See the following page.

¹ Omit of in rendering into Latin. See 225, sentence 13.

² Of which = concerning which.

⁸ When the antecedent is a clause, the pronoun must be neuter.

FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

211. ACTIVE VOICE.—Audiŏ, I hear.

VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, audī.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind. aud**i**ŏ. Pres. Inf.

PERF. IND.

Surine. aud**ītum**.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

singular. aud**iõ** audīs aud**it** I hear. PLURAL.
audīmus
audītis
audiunt

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing, or I heard.

audiēbam audiēbās audiēbat aud**iēbāmus** aud**iēbātis** aud**iēbant**

FUTURE.

I shall or will hear.

aud**iam** audi**ēs** aud**iet** aud**iēmus** aud**iētis** aud**ient**

PERFECT.

I have heard, or I heard.

audīvī audīvistī audīvit audīv**imus** audīv**istis** audīv**ērunt**, or **ēre**

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

audīv**eram** audīv**erās** audīv**erat** audīv**erāmus** audīv**erātis** audīv**erant**

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have heard.

audīv**erš** audīv**erīs** audīv**erit** audīv**erīmus** audīv**erītis** audīv**erint**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I hear, let him hear.1

singular. audi**am** audi**as** audiat

PLURAL. aud**iāmus** aud**iātis** aud**iant**

IMPERFECT.

I should hear, he would hear.

audīrem audīrēs audīret audīrēmus audīrētis audīrent

PERFECT.

I may have heard, or I have heard.

audīv**erim** audīv**erīs** audīv**erit** audīv**erīmus** audīv**erītis** audīv**erint**

PLUPERFECT.

I should have heard, he would have heard.

audīvissem audīvissēs audīvisset audīviss**ēmus** audīviss**ētis** audīviss**ent**

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. audī, hear thou;

Fut. audītō, thou shalt hear, audītō, he shall hear;

audīte, hear ye.

audītōte, ye shall hear, audīuntō, they shall hear.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. audīre, to hear.
Perf. audīvisse, to have heard.

Fut. audīt**ūrus esse**, to be about to hear.

Participle.

Pres. audiēns, hearing.

Fut. audītūrus, about to hear.

GERUND.

Gen. audiendī, of hearing, Dat. audiendō, for hearing,

Acc. audiendum, hearing,

Abl. audiendo, by hearing.

SUPINE.

Acc. audītum, to hear,

Abl. audītū, to hear, be heard.

¹ But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196, II.

228. Vocabulary.

Alō, ere, aluī, alitum and altum, to nourish, support, sustain. Intellego, ere, lexi, lectum, Pronuntio, are, avi, atum, Propterea, adv.

Quaerō, ere, quaesīvī or iī, ītum, Quisque, quaeque, quidque and quodque, Quod, conj. Sabīnus, ī, m. Scio, ire, ivi or ii, itum, Secundus, a, um, Serviō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum, Sincērē, adv. Sūmptus, $\bar{u}s$, m. Titūrius, iī, m. Üllus, a, um, 45,151, $\overline{\mathbf{U}}$ tilitās, ātis, f.

Vestiō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum,

Viātor, ōris, m.

to understand, know. to proclaim, declare. for this reason; proptereā quod, for the reason that, because. to seek, inquire, ask.

every, every one, each, each one. that; because. Sabinus, a lieutenant under to know. Caesar. [devote oneself to. second. to serve, subserve; to promote, truthfully. expense. Titurius, a Roman name. usefulness; interest, advantage. to clothe. traveller.

229. Translate into English.

- 1. Hŏc oppidum duplicī mūrō mūniāmus. 2. Hostēs suam urbem altissimō mūrō mūnīre parābant. 3. Imperātor nōs castra vallo mūnīre jubet. 4. Caesar Quīntum Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum castra in altitūdinem pedum duodecim vallō mūnīre jussit. 5. Utinam Caesar castra vallō fossāque mūnīvisset.¹ 6. Audiāmus Rōmānōs mīlitēs. 7. Haec ut intellegātis ā mē sincērē pronuntiārī, audīte Romanos mīlitēs. 8. Caesar prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra munire jussit.
- 9. Siciliam nūtrīcem plēbis Rōmānae nōminō, proptereā quod sine üllö sümptü noströ² māximōs exercitüs noströs vestīvit, aluit, armāvit. 10. Consules ūtilitātī salūtīque serviunt. 11. Salūtī cīvium omnium servīre dēbētis. 12. Dīcit

¹ For the force of the Tense, see 114, 483, 2.

² Sūmptū nostrō, literally, our expense; render, expense to us.

sē hōc ab aliīs audīvisse. 13. Dīcunt sex legionēs castra mūnītūrās esse. 14. Studium audiendī; mūniendō; mīles vocem audiens; nostrī clāmorem audientēs; mīlitēs castra munītūrī. 15. Gallī ab viātoribus quaerunt quid dē quāque rē audierint.

230. Translate into Latin.

- 1. Which legion was at that time fortifying the camp? The lieutenant said that the sixth legion was fortifying the camp. 2. The general says that he shall fortify the winter quarters with a high rampart. 3. We all know what you heard at Rome. 4. Let us now hear what you are doing and what you are seeing. 5. Lieutenants, fortify this city with a double wall; let not the enemy take it by storm.
- 6. Judges, hear now the words of these witnesses. 7. Would that you had all heard the words of these witnesses. 8. Hearing the shouts of the soldiers, the general ordered the lieutenants to lead out the whole army, and to place it in line of battle. 9. Have you heard which legions have been sent to sustain the attack of the enemy? We have heard that five legions have been sent to sustain the attack of the enemy, and that two remain in camp.

LESSON LXXIX.

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. — ACTIVE VOICE. — RULE XXIX. — REVIEW OF RULES LVII. AND LVIII.

231. Examples. — Ablative of Specification.

1. Nomine fuit rex.

He was king in name.

2. Claudus altero pede.

Lame IN one FOOT.

Note. — The Latin usage illustrated in the Ablatives nomine and pede is expressed in the following

¹ To sustain; render by a Relative Clause denoting Purpose.

RULE XXIX. - Specification.

424. A noun, adjective, or verb may take an Ablative to define its application:

Nōmine, nōn potestāte fuit rēx, He was king in name, not in power. Nep. Claudus alterō pede, lame in one foot. Nep. Reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, they surpass the other Gauls in courage. Caes.

232. Vocabulary.

Accurro, ere, cucurri or curri, cursum, Adamō, āre, āvī, ātum, Administro, āre, āvī, ātum, Angustus, a, um, Bellovaci, orum, m. pl. Cultus, $\bar{u}s$, m. Dēfēnsor, \bar{o} ris, m. Finio, îre, ivi or ii, itum, Fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxum, Imperium, ii, n. Īnfluō, ere, flūxī, flūxum, Instituo, ere, ui, ūtum, Lacus, ūs, m. Lemannus, \bar{i} , m. Minus, comp. adv.

Noviodūnum, ī, n.

Praecēdō, ere, cessī, cessum,
Superior, us, comp. of superus,
Vacuus, a, um,
vacant, e

to be greatly pleased with, like very to administer, manage, direct. narrow, limited. [Gaul. the Bellovaci, a tribe of northwestern culture, refinement, civilization. defender. to end; to bound, limit. to flow. empire, government. to flow into, empty, flow. to begin, proceed. Lake of Geneva. Lemannus, Leman; lacus Lemannus, less; minimē, sup., least, very little, not at all, by no means.

[much.

to run to, hasten to, run.

Noviodunum, a town in northwestern to surpass. [Gaul., superior. vacant, empty, deserted, abandoned.

233. Translate into English.

1. Eō tempore Rhēnus populī Rōmānī imperium ūnā ex parte fīniēbat. 2. Minimē ad Belgās mercātōrēs saepe commeant. 3. Helvētiī angustōs fīnēs habent, et ob eam rem minus facile cum fīnitimīs bellum gerere possunt. 4. Rhodanus inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum fluit. 5. Lacus Lemannus in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit. 6. Ducēs hostium castra mūnīre īnstituunt. 7. Caesar in fīnēs Suessiōnum exercitum dūxit, et māgnīs itineribus ad oppidum Noviodū-

num contendit; id vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audierat. 8. Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt.

9. Imperātor hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat. 10. Germānī, hominēs ferī āc barbarī, agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum adamābant. 11. Cōnsīdius ad Caesarem accurrit, et dīcit montem ab hostibus tenērī. 12. Bellovacī sē cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs¹ dīxērunt. 13. Vercingetorix bellum administrāre parābat.

234. Translate into Latin.

- 1. Caesar says that the warlike Germans were greatly pleased with (liked very much) the refinement of the Gauls.

 2. We all know that the river Rhone separated the territory of the Helvetii from the Roman province.

 3. The Romans are said to have surpassed the Gauls in valor.

 4. I have often heard that the Gauls at that time surpassed the Germans in refinement.

 5. I have heard from deserters that a brave lieutenant was slain in that battle.
- 6. They say that the enemy have fortified their towns, and that they will fight bravely for their country. 7. We have heard that you will remain in Italy the whole winter. 8. Have you not heard that many Gauls were held in servitude by Ariovistus. We have often heard that from the Gauls themselves. 9. The Aedui ought not to be held in servitude by barbarians. 10. At Geneva many friends were awaiting our arrival from Italy.

LESSON LXXX.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. -- PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL.

235. Lesson from the Grammar.

In the verb Audiō, learn the Passive Voice in full.

¹ In the compound forms of the Infinitive, esse is often thus omitted.

FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

212. PASSIVE VOICE.—Audior, I am heard.

VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, audī.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind. audior,

Pres. Inf. audī**rī**, Perf. Ind. audī**tus sum.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

audior audīris, or re audītur I am heard. PLURAL.

audīmur audīminī audimntur

IMPERFECT.

I was heard.

audi**ēbār**is, *or* re audi**ēbātur** audi**ēbāmur** aud**iēbāminī** aud**iēbantur**

FUTURE.

I shall or will be heard.

audiar audiēris, or re audiētur audi**ēmur** audi**ēminī** audi**entur**

PERFECT.

I have been heard, or I was heard,

audītus sum¹ audītus es audītus est audītī sumus audītī estis audītī sumt

Pluperfect. I had been heard.

audītus eram¹ audītus erās audītus erat audītī **erāmus** audītī **erātis** audītī **erant**

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been heard.

audītus erō ¹ audītī erimus audītus eris audītī eritis audītus erit audītī erunt

¹ See 170, 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be heard, let him be heard.

SINGULAR.

andiar audiāris, or re audiātur

PLURAL.

audiāmur aud**iāminī** audiantur

IMPEREECT.

I should be heard, he would be heard.

andirer audīrēris, or re audīrētur

aud**īrēmur** aud**īrēminī** audīremtur

PERFECT.

I may have been heard, or I have been heard.

andītus sim 1 audītus sīs audītus sit

audītī sīmus audītī sītis audītī sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been heard, he would have been heard.

audītus essem 1 audītus essēs audītus esset

audīt**ī essēmus** audītī essētis audīt**ī essent**

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. audire. be thou heard;

aud**īmin**ī, be ye heard.

Fut. audītor, thou shalt be heard,

auditor, he shall be heard; | audiuntor, they shall be heard.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. audīrī, to be heard.

Perf. audītus esse,1 to have been | Perf. audītus, heard.

Fut. auditum Irī, to be about to be heard.

PARTICIPLE.

Ger. audiendus, to be heard, deserving to be heard.

¹ See 170, 206, foot-notes.

LESSON LXXXI.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. — RULE XXVIII. — REVIEW OF RULE XXII. — EXERCISES.

236. Examples. — Ablative of Difference.

- 1. Ūnō $di\bar{e}$ longior mēnsis. A month one day longer (longer by one day).
- 2. Biduō mē antecessit. He preceded me by two days.

Note. — The Latin usage illustrated in the Ablatives $di\bar{e}$ and $bidu\bar{o}$ is expressed in the following

RULE XXVIII. - Ablative of Difference.

423. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative:

 $\bar{U}n\bar{o}$ $di\bar{e}$ longiorem mensem faciunt, they make the month one day longer (longer by one day). Cic. $Bidu\bar{o}$ me antecessit, he preceded me by two days. Cic. Sol multis partibus major est quam terra, the sun is very much (literally by many parts) larger than the earth. Cic.

237. Vocabulary.

Britanni, örum, m. pl. Cantium, ii, n. Cevenna, ae, f.

Ēgregiē, adv.
Existimō, āre, āvī, ātum,
Hūmānus, a, um,
Impediō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum,
Impedītus, a, um,
Mēnsis, is, m.
Oppūgnātiō, ōnis, f.
Paucī, ae, a,
Pellis, is, f.

Plērusque, raque, rumque, Praesēns, entis, like prūdēns, the Britons. Kent.

Cevenna, a mountain range in southern Gaul, now the Cé-excellently. [vennes.

to think. civilized.

to impede, hinder, embarrass.

entangled. month.

assault, attack.

jew. skin.

most.

the larger or greater part, the present; in praesentia (neut. plur.) for the present.

Prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum,
Rapīna, ae, f.
Reperiō, īre, repperī, repertum,
Satis, adv.
Tamen, adv.
Vesontiō, ōnis, m.
Vincō, ere, vīcī, vīctum,

to prohibit, check, prevent, keep. robbery, plundering, pillaging. to find. enough; satis habēre, to consider yet, nevertheless. [it sufficient. Vesontio, a town of eastern Gaul, to conquer. [now Besançon.

238. Translate into English.

1. Vesontiŏ, oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, nātūrā locī mūniēbātur. 2. Nostrum oppidum altissimō mūrō mūnīrī dēbet. 3. Nostra oppida ēgregiē mūniantur. 4. Hīe locus ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītus est. 5. Britannī silvam impedītam, vallō atque fossā mūnītam, oppidum vocant. 6. Caesar oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum repperit; tamen hŏc duābus ex partibus oppūgnāre contendit. 7. Iter agminis nostrī multīs rēbus impediēbātur. 8. Aduātucī, dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum comportābant.

9. Ex Britannīs¹ omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt; interiōrēs plērīque pellibus sunt vestītī.
10. Oppidōrum oppūgnātiō duābus rēbus impediēbātur. 11. Arvernī sē monte Cevennā mūnītōs esse exīstimābant. 12. Ex captīvīs quaerāmus quam ob rem hostēs castra nōn mūniant. 13. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, āc satis habēbat² in praesentia² hostem rapīnīs prohibēre. 14. Ariovistus paucīs mēnsibus³ ante Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerat.

239. Translate into Latin.

1. These cities are all excellently fortified by nature and art. 2. You will find that city excellently fortified with a double wall. 3. Did you say that the winter quarters of the

¹ Literally, out of the Britons; render, or the Britons. It has the force of a Partitive Genitive.

² See Vocabulary.

³ See 236, Rule XXVIII.

enemy are not fortified? I have heard from captives that the winter quarters of the Gauls are not fortified by art, but that they are enclosed on all sides by high mountains. 4. Those who inhabited a large part of this island were barbarians, and were clothed in skins. 5. Many islands were then inhabited by barbarians, who were clothed in skins.

6. Among barbarians an entangled forest, fortified with a rampart and a moat, is often called a town. 7. Our cities will all be fortified many days² before the arrival of the enemy. 8. From whom did you hear that the camp of the Britons is already fortified with a high rampart? I have heard that report from the captives, of whom I have written above. 9. Did you not say that this tower is higher than that? It is higher than that by many feet. 10. The deserters said that the town had been fortified two years before. 11. Would that your towns had been fortified before the arrival of the enemy.

LESSON LXXXII.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN FULL. — PASSIVE VOICE. — REVIEW OF RULE IV. — RULE XXXII.

240. Lesson from the Grammar.

RULE XXXII.3 - Ablative Absolute.4

431. A noun and a participle may be put in the Ablative to add to the predicate an attendant circumstance:

¹ On all sides; Latin idiom, FROM all sides; or render by a single adverb.

² Use the Ablative of Difference.

³ It seems to be no longer necessary to introduce Rules, as in previous lessons, by means of examples. The pupil has already learned the fact that a *Grammatical Rule* is nothing more than a *statement of the general usage of the language*. The introductory examples were intended chiefly to show him this fact.

⁴ This Ablative is called *absolute*, because it is not directly dependent for its construction upon any other word in the sentence.

Serviō rēgnante viguērunt, they flourished in the reign of Servius (Servius reigning).¹ Cic. Rēgibus exāctīs, cōnsulēs creātī sunt, after the banishment of the kings,² consuls were appointed. Liv. Equitātū praemissō, subsequēbātur, having sent forward his cavalry, he followed. Caes. Rēgnum haud satis prōsperum neglēctā rēligiōne, a reign not sufficiently prosperous because religion was neglected. Liv. Perditīs rēbus omnībus tamen virtūs sē sustentāre potest, though all things are lost, still virtue is able to sustain itself. Cic.

- 1. The Ablative Absolute, much more common than the English Nominative Absolute, generally expresses the *time*, cause, or some attendant circumstance of an action.
- 2. This Ablative is generally best rendered—(1) by a noun with a preposition—in, during, after, by, with, through, etc.; (2) by an active participle with its object; or (3) by a clause with when, while, because, if, though, etc.; 3 see examples above.
 - 3. A connective sometimes accompanies the Ablative: Nisi mūnitīs castrīs, unless the camp should be fortified. Caes.
- 4. A noun and an adjective, or even two nouns, may be in the Ab-lative Absolute: 4

Serēnō caelō, when the sky is clear. Sen. Canīniō cōnsule, in the consulship of Caninius. Cic.

241. Vocabulary.

Abstineō, ĕre, tinuī, tentum,
Acūtus, a, um,
Adhūc, adv.
Catēna, ae, f.
Culpa, ae, f.
Dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctum,
Latīnus, a, um,
Līberō, āre, āvī, ātum,
Ligārius, ii, m.
Nāvigium, iī, n.

to abstain, refrain.
sharpened, sharp.
hitherto, thus far, as yet.
chain.
fault, blame.
to choose, select, elect.
Latin.
to free, liberate.
Ligarius, a prominent Roman in
whose behalf Cicero pleaded be-

[fore Caesar.

1 Or, while Servius was reigning or was king.

2 Or, after the kings were banished.

3 The first method of translation comes nearer the original Latin conception, but the other methods generally accord better with the English idiom.

vessel, ship.

⁴ This construction is peculiar to the Latin. In the corresponding constructions in Sanskrit, Greek, and English, the present participle of the verb to be is used.

Nōbilitās, ātis, f.
Probō, āre, āvī, ātum,
Quārē, adv.
Relinquō, ere, līquī, lictum,
Spoliō, āre, āvī, ātum,
Sudēs, is, f.
Tamesis, is, m.
Trīnī, ae, a,
Vacō, āre, āvī, ātum,
Vinciō, īre, vinxī, vinctum.

nobility; the nobility, nobles.
to approve; to prove.
wherefore.
to leave.
to despoil, rob, deprive.
stake.
the Thames.
three-fold, triple.
to be without, be free from.

242. Translate into English.

to bind.

1. Labiēnus monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat, proeliōque abstinēbat. 2. Mūnītīs castrīs, Caesar duās ibī legiōnēs relīquit, quattuor reliquās in castra redūxit. 3. Ducēs iī¹ dēliguntur, quī summam scientiam rĕī mīlitāris habēre exīstimantur. 4. Caesar ad² flūmen Tamesim exercitum dūxit; ad² alteram flūminis rīpam māgnae cōpiae hostium erant īnstrūctae; rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus mūnīta. 5. Captīvī trīnīs catēnīs vinctī sunt. 6. Celtae Latīnā linguā Gallī appellantur.

7. Dumnorix, Divitiacī frāter, dīxit Galliam omnī nobilitāte spoliātam esse. 8. Helvētiī tertiā ex parte lacū Lemanno et flūmine Rhodano continentur. 9. Imperātor fortis servitūte Graeciam līberāvit. 10. Mūrus dēfēnsoribus nūdātus est. 11. Tuum, Brūte,³ jūdicium probō. 12. Adhūc, Caesar,³ Quīntus Ligārius omnī culpā vacat. 13. Quārē conservāte, jūdicēs,³ hunc hominem nobilissimum. 14. Caesar nāvigia, quae sēcum habēbat, mīlitibus complērī jussit, et lēgātōs tribūnosque mīlitum monuit, ut ad² tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs administrārentur.

1 Observe that ii is the subject, and duces a Predicate Noun.

² Observe that different English words must be used in rendering this preposition, according to the connection in which it occurs. Thus to the river, on or near the bank, at the (proper) time, or in time.

 $^{^3}$ The Vocative rarely stands at the beginning of a sentence. It usually follows an emphatic word.

243. Translate into Latin.

- 1. As the general had freed the citizens from servitude, he was called the father of his country. 2. May our country always be protected (fortified) by the valor of its citizens. 3. Having filled the ships with soldiers, Caesar prepared to hasten into Britain. 4. Soldiers, may you be called true friends of your country.
- 5. Having led his army to the Thames, Caesar was told that the enemy were on the other bank of the river. 6. General, we ask that your army be led back into camp. 7. On hearing our words, the general ordered his army to be led back into camp. 8. Citizens, this man is free from blame; let him be selected as leader. 9. The general, leaving one legion in camp, led the others toward the enemy.

LESSON LXXXIII.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN FULL. — EXERCISE IN READ-ING AT SIGHT.

244. Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.

Gallia est dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam Celtae, quī Latīnā linguā Gallī appellantur. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod minimē ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant, atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important, prōximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, qui-

¹ Be careful here and elsewhere not to render the English words by the corresponding Latin words, but consider by what idiom the thought should be expressed in Latin. Here the Ablative Absolute should be used, as if the English were the citizens having been freed, etc. In the first Sentence, the general will become the subject of the principal verb.

² On the position of the Vocative, see page 192, foot-note 3.

³ Latin idiom, it was told to Caesar.

buscum continenter bellum gerunt. Eādem dē causā Helvētiī reliquōs Celtās virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt.

Helvētiī undique locī nātūrā continentur; ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Jūrā, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam Rōmānam ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Ob eās rēs minus facile cum fīnitimīs bellum gerere possunt.

245. Translate into Latin.

- 1. War could not readily be waged by the Helvetii with their neighbors. 2. Lake Lemannus and the river Rhone, by which the Helvetii are separated from the Roman province, shut in the Helvetii on one side. 3. The rest of the Celts are surpassed in valor by the Helvetii. 4. Wars were incessantly waged by the Germans with the Helvetii.
- 5. The things which are imported by merchants frequently weaken the spirit of the Gauls. 6. Caesar says that Gaul is divided into three parts. By whom are these parts of Gaul inhabited? 7. Those whom the Romans named Gauls, called themselves Celts. 8. Who were the bravest of all those who inhabited Gaul?

LESSON LXXXIV.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — VERBS IN IO. — ACTIVE VOICE. — REVIEW OF RULE LIX. — RULE LX.

246. Lesson from the Grammar.

217. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in io, ior, like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth, wherever those endings have two successive vowels.

¹ Render was not able to be waged.

218. Active Voice. — Capiō, I take.

VERB STEM, cap; PRESENT STEM, cape.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND. PRES. INF. PERF. IND. SUPINE. capiō, capere, cēpī, captum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

singular.
capiō, capis, capit; | capimus, capitis, capiunt.

IMPERFECT.
capiēbam, -iēbās, -iēbat; | capiēbāmus, -iēbātis, -iēbant.

FUTURE.
capiam, -iēs, -iet; | capiēmus, -iētis, -ient.

PERFECT.

cēpī, -istī, -it; | cēpimus, -istis, -ērunt, or ēre.

PLUPERFECT.
cēperam, -erās, -erat; | cēperāmus, -erātis, -erant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

cēperô, -erĭs, -erit; | cēperīmus, -erǐtis, -erint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

capiam, -iās, -iat; | capiāmus, -iātis, -iant.

IMPERFECT.
caperem, -erēs, -eret; | cap

t; caperēmus, -erētis, -erent.

PERFECT.

cēperim, -erīs, -erit; | cēperimus, -erītis, -erint.

cēpissem, -issēs, -isset; | cēpissēmus, -issētis, -issent.

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.

Pres. cape; | capite.

Fut. capitō, | capitōte, capitōte; | capitote.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. capere.	Pres. capiens.
Perf. cepisse.	
Fut. captūrus esse.	Fut. captūrus.
GERUND.	SUPINE.
Gen. capiend \bar{i} ,	
$oldsymbol{Dat.}$ capiendō,	
Acc. capiendum,	Acc. captum,
Abl. capiendō.	Abl. captū.

RULE LX. - Supine in ū.

547. The Supine in \bar{u} is generally used as an Ablative of Specification (231, 424):

Quid est tam jūcundum audītū, what is so agreeable to hear (in hearing)? Cic. Difficile dictū est, it is difficult to tell. Cic. Dē genere mortis difficile dictū est, it is difficult to speak of the kind of death. Cic. Cīvitās incrēdibile memorātū est quantum crēverit, it is incredible to relate how much the state increased. Sall.

247. Vocabulary.	
Carrus, ī, m. Certus, a, um,	cart, wagon. certain; certiorem facere, to make more certain, to inform.
Coëmō, ere, ēmī, ēmptum, Cōnātum, ī, n. Conjūrātiō, ōnis, f. Cupiditās, ātis, f. Dō, dare, dedī, datum, Facilis, e, comp. facilior, sup.	to buy up, obtain by purchase. undertaking, attempt, purpose. conspiracy. desire. to give.
facillimus, Faciō, ere, fēcī, factum, Fidēs, ĕī, f. Indūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, Jumentum, ī, n. Mīlle,¹ indeclinable,	easy. to do, make. faith, confidence; assurance, to induce, lead on. [pledge. draught animal, beast of burden. a thousand.

¹ Mille as an adjective is indeclinable; as a substantive it is used in the Nominative and Accusative singular, but in the plural it is declined like the plural of mare (63, 63): milia, milium, milibus. With the substant

Parcō, ere, pepercī, parsum, Perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum, Permoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, Quam, adv.

Recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum, Sēmentis, is, f. Suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum, to spare. (Followed by the Dative.) to accomplish.

to move, induce, influence.

how; with a superlative, as . . . as possible; quam māximus, the largest possible, as large as possible

to retake, betake. sowing, planting. to take up, undertake.

248. Translate into English.

1. Caesar pācem cum Helvētiīs fēcit. 2. Pācem cum hostībus faciāmus. 3. Nōnne pācem cum Gallīs faciētis? Pācem cum iīs faciēmus. 4. Orgetorix sibī lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. Is rēgnī cupiditāte inductus conjūrātiōnem nōbilitātis Helvētiōrum fēcit. 5. Orgetorix facile esse factū Casticō et Dumnorigī probāvit cōnāta perficere. Iī hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem dedērunt.¹ 6. Nostrī mīlitēs sub occāsum sōlis sē in castra recēpērunt. 7. Helvētiī, auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī, cōnstituērunt jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coëmere, et sēmentēs quam māximās facere.

8. Hostēs posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent: idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor mīlium mittit, quī videant² quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. 9. Omnēs ūnō tempore in hostēs impetum faciēmus. 10. Utinam eō tempore in hostēs impetum fēcissētis. 11. Nūntīī Caesarem dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciēbant. 12. Dux Gallōrum māgnā manū ad castra nostra oppūgnātum venit. Hīs rēbus permōtus Quīntus Titūrius lēgātum ad Gallōs mittit rogātum ut sibǐ mīlitibusque ³ parcant.

tive mille, milia, the name of the objects enumerated is generally in the Genitive.

¹ Inter se dare, 'to give each other,' 'to exchange.'

² See Suggestion XVII., 3.

⁸ Indirect object; see 54, Rule XII.

249. Translate into Latin.

- 1. The Helvetii sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask peace.
 2. As hostages had been sent by the Helvetii,¹ Caesar said that he would make peace with them. 3. The Gauls hastened to the winter quarters of the legion to attack it. 4. Caesar understood that to conquer the Helvetii was not an easy thing to do. 5. An hour² before sunset we shall betake ourselves into our camp.
- 6. Which is the easier thing to do, to march into the forest or to remain in the camp? 7. Who will inform us in which direction the enemy marched? 8. The chiefs of the Gauls did not accomplish their purposes. 9. To accomplish the purposes of the Helvetii, Orgetorix had undertaken an embassy to the other states of Gaul.

LESSON LXXXV.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — VERBS IN 10. — PASSIVE VOICE.
RULE XLIV.

250. Lesson from the Grammar.

219. Passive Voice. — Capior, I am taken.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. 1ND. capior,

Pres. Inf.

PERF. IND.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

singular.
capior, caperis, capitur;

PLURAL.

| capimur, capiminī, capiuntur.

IMPERFECT.

capiēbar, -iēbāris, -iēbātur; | capiēbāmur, -iēbāminī, iēbantur.

¹ Use the Ablative Absolute.

² Ablative of Difference.

³ An Indirect Question. What mood must be used?

⁴ Remember that it is only after verbs of motion that the Supine is used to express purpose. Here a clause with ut should be used.

FUTURE.

capiar, -iēris, -iētur;

| capiemur, -iemini, -ientur.

PERFECT.

captus sum, es, est;

captī sumus, estis, sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

captus eram, eras, erat;

| captī erāmus, erātis, erant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

captus erō, eris, erit;

capti erimus, eritis, erunt.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

singular. capiar, -iāris, iātur; PLURAL. | capiāmur, -iāminī, -iantur.

IMPERFECT.

caperer, erēris, -erētur;

| caperemur, -eremini, -erentur.

PERFECT.

captus sim, sīs, sit;

| captī sīmus, sītis, sint.

PLUPERFECT.

captus essem, esses, esset;

| captī essēmus, essētis, essent.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. capere;

Fut. capitor,

capitor;

capiminī.

capiuntor.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. capi.

Perf. captus esse.

Fut. captum īrī.

Perf. captus.

Ger. capiendus.

50%. Every conditional sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or understood—the *Condition* and the *Conclusion*:

Sī negem, mentiar, if I should deny it, I should speak falsely. Cic.

¹ Here si negem is the condition, and mentiar, the conclusion.

RULE XLIV. — Conditional Sentences with sī, nisi, ni, sīn.

507. Conditional sentences with sī, nisi, nī, sīn, take—

I. The Indicative in both clauses to assume the supposed case:

Sī spīritum dūcit, vīvit, if he breathes, he is alive. Cic. Sī tot exempla virtūtis nōn movent, nihil unquam movēbit, if so many examples of valor do not move (you), nothing will ever move (you). Liv.

II. The Present or Perfect Subjunctive in both clauses to represent the supposed case as possible:

Diës deficiat, si velim causam defendere, the day would fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause. Cic. Improbe feceris, nisi monueris, you would do wrong, if you should not give warning. Cic.

III. The Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in both clauses to represent the supposed case as contrary to fact:

Plūribus verbīs ad tē scrīberem, sī rēs verba dēsīderāret, I should write to you more fully (with more words), if the case required words. Cic. Sī voluisset, dīmicāsset, if he had wished, he would have fought. Nep.

251. Vocabulary.

Admittō, ere, mīsī, missum, Biennium, iī, n. Cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum,

Contrōversia, ae, f.
Dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum,
Dēfessus, a, um,
Dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum,
Druidēs, um, m. pl.
Facinus, facinoris, n.
Hērēditās, ātis, f.
Interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum,
Jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum,
Labor, ōris, m.
Mōs, mōris, m.
Poena, ae, f.
Praecipitō, āre, āvī, ātum,

to admit. commit. two years, space of two years. to accomplish, complete, finish, bring to a close. controversy, dispute. to decide, decree. tired, exhausted, weary. to destroy. Druids, the priests of the Gauls. misdeed, crime. inheritance. to kill, slay, put to death. to throw. labor, toil, effort, exertion. usage, custom. penalty, punishment. to precipitate, throw, hurl.

Prīvātus, a, um, private, personal.
Prōditor, ōris, m. traitor.
Prōiciō,¹ ere, prōjēcī, jectum, to throw forward, throw down.
Pūblicus, a, um, public.
Sī, conj. if.
Vinculum, ī, n. fetter, bond, chain.

252. Translate into English.

- 1. Germānōrum² bellum celeriter cōnficiētur. 2. Bellum Helvētiōrum² jam cōnfectum erāt. 3. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō,³ totīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem convēnērunt. 4. Germānī suōs interficī vīdērunt; māgnō numerō interfectō,³ reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt. 5. Quid cōnficiētur? Eae rēs cōnficī dēbent. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās⁴ biennium nōbīs satis dūcimus. Quis ad eās rēs cōnficiendās⁴ dēligētur? Jam tū dēlēctus es. 6. Lapidēs undique in mūrum jaciuntur, mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātur. 7. In Galliā Druidēs ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt; sī quod est admissum facinus, poenās cōnstituāmus. 8. Sī quod esset admissum facinus, poenās cōnstituāmus. 9. Sī quod esset admissum facinus, poenās cōnstituāsēmus.
- 10. Ego hŏc cōnsilium probārem, sī nūllum perīculum vidērem. 11. Ego hŏc cōnsilium probāvissem, sī nūllum perīculum vīdissem. 12. Helvētiī, sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum iīs fēcissent, arma prōjēcissent. 13. Nisi tōtīus diēī labōre mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlētae essent. 14. Helvētiī mōribus suīs prōditōrem ex vinculīs dīcere coēgērunt.

 $^{^1}$ Pronounced as though spelled $pr\bar{o}jici\bar{o}.$

² English idiom, war with the Germans, etc.

⁸ See Suggestion XVI., (1).

⁴ See Suggestion XIII. 4.

⁵ In accordance with, etc. See 158, Rule XXII.

⁶ English idiom, IN chains.

⁷ In this connection dicere may be rendered plead.

253. Translate into Latin.

- 1. If stones had been thrown against the wall, it would have been stripped of soldiers. 2. Should stones be thrown against the wall, the town would be taken. 3. If the general were in the camp, the soldiers would not be daunted by fear. 4. If the general is in the camp, we ought not to fear danger. 5. If the war with the Helvetii should be finished, ambassadors would assemble from the rest of Gaul.
- 6. If any crime has been committed by these men, let the penalty be determined by the judge. 7. If our city had been fortified, we should not see these perils. 8. If we approved your plan, we should not have accomplished these things so successfully. 9. After these things were accomplished, peace was made with the enemy.

LESSON LXXXVI.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN FULL, INCLUDING VERBS IN IO. — RULE XLVI.

254. Lesson from the Grammar.

514. A concessive clause is one that concedes or admits something, generally introduced in English by though or although:

Quamquam itinere fessi erant, tamen procedunt, although they were weary with the journey, they still (yet) advanced. Sall.

¹ Observe that in 7, the condition refers to past time, and the conclusion to present time, while in 8 the condition refers to present time, and the conclusion to past time.

² Use the Ablative Absolute.

⁸ Concessive clauses bear a close resemblance to conditional clauses both in form and in use. Si optimum est, 'if it is best,' is a condition; etsi optimum est, 'even if (or though) it is best,' is a concession; the one assumes a supposed case, the other admits it.

RULE XLVI. - Moods in Concessive Clauses.

515. Concessive clauses take —

I. Generally the *Indicative* in the best prose, when introduced by quanquam:

Quamquam intellegunt, tamen nunquam dicunt, though they understand, they never speak. Cic. Quamquam festinas, non est mora longa, though you are in haste, the delay is not long. Hor.

- II. The *Indicative* or *Subjunctive*, when introduced by etsī, etiamsī, tametsī, or sī, like conditional clauses with $s\bar{\imath}$. Thus —
- 1. The *Indicative* is used to represent the supposed case as a fact: Gaudeo, etsī nihil scio quod gaudeam, I rejoice, though I know no reason why I should rejoice. Plaut.
- 2. The Present or Perfect Subjunctive, to represent the supposed case as possible:

Etsi nihil habeat in sē gloria, tamen virtūtem sequitur, though glory may not possess anything in itself, yet it follows virtue. Cic.

3. The Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, to represent the supposed case as contrary to fact:

Etiamsi mors oppetenda esset, domi mällem, even if death ought to be met, I should prefer to meet it at home. Cic.

III. The Subjunctive, when introduced by licet, quamvīs, ut, nē, cum, or the relative quī:

Licet irrīdeat, plūs tamen ratio valebit, though he may deride, reason will yet avail more. Cic. Non tū possīs, quamvīs excellās, you would not be able, although you excel. Cic. Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntās, though the strength fails, still the will should be approved. Ovid. Në sit summum malum dolor, malum certë est, though pain may not be the greatest evil, it is certainly an evil. Cic. Cum domī dīvitiae adfluerent, fuēre tamen cīvēs, etc., though wealth abounded at home, there were yet citizens, etc. Sall.

255. Vocabulary.

Aestās, ātis, f.

summer.

Concilio, are, avī, atum, Crēber, bra, brum,

Lircummūnio, īre, īvī, ītum, to wall around, encompass, surround to win, secure. frequent.

Cupiō, ere, īvī or iī, ītum, Cūrō, āre, āvī, ātum,

Etsi, conj. Excursio, onis, f. Exigō, ere, ēgī, āctum, Exiguus, a, um, Graecus, a, um, Ignōrō, āré, āvī, ātum, Indicium, iī, n. Juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum, Mātūrus, a, um, Orbis, is, m., like ignis, $\bar{\text{Ord}}$, inis, m. Perpetuus, a, um, Respicio, ere, spēxī, spectum, Tabula, ae, f. Terra, ae, f. Trānsdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, to lead across.

to desire. to care, care for; aliquid faciendum cūrāre, to have anything done. although. sally, sortie. to complete, finish, end. restricted, limited, scanty, small, [brief. Greek, Grecian. not to know, to be ignorant of. testimony, evidence. to aid. early. circle, circuit; orbis terrarum, the [earth, world. rank. perpetual, endless, uninterrupted. to regard, look upon. table, tablet; document, record. earth, land.

256. Translate into English.

1. Ea rēs Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiātur. 2. Caesar pontem in¹ Arare faciendum cūrāvit² atque ita exercitum trānsdūxit. 3. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt, litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae. 4. Orgetorix dīxit sē suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrum esse. Is sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū Casticō Dumnorigīque rēgna conciliātūrum esse cōnfirmābat. 5. Sī Lingonēs Helvētiōs frūmentō jūvissent, Caesar eōs prō hostibus habuisset. 6. Hostēs prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant; posteā vallō circummūnītī³ oppidō sēsē continēbant. 7. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta jam aestās erat, tamen in aliam gentem exercitum addūxit.

8. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā, Caesar, etsī in Galliā mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam contendit. 9.

¹ English idiom, over.

² Literally, cared for a bridge to be made, i.e. attended to the making of a bridge; render, had a bridge made.

³ That is, by our works.

Etsī nondum Britannorum consilia cognoverat, tamen perīculum vidēbat. 10. Cum ea ita sint, tamen vobīscum pācem faciēmus. 11. Cum prīmī ordinēs hostium interfectī essent, tamen reliquī fortiter pūgnābant. 12. Caesar sē prīncipem non solum urbis Romae, sed orbis terrārum esse cupiēbat. 13. Sī ea quae in aliīs nātionibus geruntur īgnorātis, respicite fīnitimam Galliam, quae perpetuā premitur servitūte.

257. Translate into Latin.

- 1. Although we see other lands distressed by slavery, our country is free. 2. Although these things have been announced to the enemy, they do not know what is done in our camp. 3. Although many very brave soldiers have been slain, we desire to make peace with the enemy. 4. Although a bridge has been made over the river, the army has not yet been led across.
- 5. What was found in the camp of the Helvetii? Caesar tells us what was found in their camp.² 6. Caesar regarded them as enemies, in order that other nations might not assist the Helvetii. 7. If a bridge had been made,¹ the army could have been led over. 8. Although they had made peace lew days before, they made frequent attacks upon the Roman camp.

LESSON LXXXVII.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS. — DEPONENT VERBS. — RULE XXVI.

258. Lesson from the Grammar.

DEPONENT VERBS.

231. Deponent Verbs have in general the forms of the Passive Voice with the signification of the Active. But—

¹ In all these sentences we may use the Ablative Absolute, but a finite verb with a conjunction expresses more clearly the concessive or conditional force of the clause.

² An Indirect Question. 3 Render, would have been able to be led.

- 1. They have also in the Active, the future infinitive, the participles, gerund, and supine.
- 2. The gerundive generally has the passive signification; sometimes also the perfect participle: hortandus, to be exhorted; expertus, tried.
- 3. The Future Infinitive of the Passive form is rare, as the Active form is generally used.

Note.—The synopsis of a single example will sufficiently illustrate the peculiarities of Deponent Verbs.

232. Hortor, I exhort.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

hortor.

hortārī.

hortātus sum.

2. Present System; Stem, hortā.

1	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres.	hortor 1	horter	hortāre	hortārī	hortāns
Imp.	hortābar	hortārer			
Fut.	hortābor		hortator		

Gerund, hortandi.

Gerundive, hortandus.

3. Supine System; Stem, hortat.

Perf. hortātus sum h	ortātus sim	hortātus esse	hortātus
Plup. hortātus eram h	ortātus essem		
F. P. hortātus erō			
Fut.	*	hortātūrus esse	hortātūrus

Supine, hortātum, hortātū.

RULE XXVI.—Ablative in Special Constructions.2

421. The Ablative is used—

I. With utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, and their compounds:

¹ The tenses are inflected regularly throughout: hortor, hortāris, hortātur; hortāmur, hortāminī, hortantur. All the forms in this synopsis have the active meaning, I exhort, I was exhorting, etc., except the Gerundive, which has the passive force, deserving to be exhorted, to be exhorted. The Gerundive, as it is passive in meaning, cannot be used in intransitive Deponent Verbs, except in an impersonal sense; see 281, 301, 1.

² This Ablative is readily explained as the Ablative of means: thus, ūtor, 'I use,' 'I serve myself by means of'; fruor, 'I enjoy,' 'I delight myself with'; vescor, 'I feed upon,' 'I feed myself with,' etc.

Plūrimīs rēbus fruimur et ūtimur, we enjoy and use VERY MANY THINGS. Cic. Māgnā est praedā potītus, he obtained GREAT BOOTY. Nep. Lacte et carne vescēbantur, they lived upon milk and flesh. Sall.

II. With Verbs and Adjectives of Plenty:

Villa abundat lacte, cāseō, melle, the villa abounds in Milk, cheese, and honey. Cic. Urbs referta copiīs, a city filled with supplies. Cic. Virtūte praeditus, endowed with virtue. Cic. Deus bonīs explēvit mundum, God has filled the world with blessings. Cic.

III. With dignus, indignus, and contentus:

Dīgnī sunt amīcitiā, they are worthy of friendship. Cic. Vir patre dīgnus, a man worthy of his father. Cic. Honore indīgnissimus, most unworthy of honor. Cic. Nātūra parvō contenta, nature content with little. Cic.

Note 1. — Transitive verbs of Plenty 2 take the Accusative and Ablative:

Armis naves onevat, he loads the ships with arms. Sall.

259. Vocabulary.

Abundō, āre, āvī, ātum,
Arbitror, āri, ātus sum,
Cōnfīdō, ere, fīsus sum,
Cōnor, ārī, ātus sum,
Contentus, a, um,
Indīgnus, a, um,
Interclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsum,
Nūllus, a, um, 45, 151,
Persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum,
Potior, īrī, ītus sum,

Prīvō, āre, āvī, ātum, Proficiscor, ī, profectus sum, to abound, to be well supplied to think. [with. to trust, have confidence in, rely to try, attempt. [upon. content, satisfied. unworthy. to cut off. not any, no, none. to persuade. to gain possession of, take possession of, obtain possession of. to deprive.

to start, set out.

¹ The nature of the Ablative with *dignus* and *indignus* is somewhat uncertain. On etymological grounds it is explained as *instrumental*; see Delbrück, p. 72; Corssen, 'Krit. Beitr.,' p. 47.

² Transitive verbs of plenty mean 'to fill,' 'to furnish with,' etc., as cumulō, compleō, impleō, imbuō, īnstruō, onerō, ōrnō, etc.

³ Cōnfīdō is a semi-deponent, i.e. in the tenses for completed action it has the forms of the passive voice, with the meaning of the active.

Trānō, āre, āvī, ātum, Tūtō, adv.
Tūtus, a, um,
Ūllus, a, um, 45, 151,
Ūtor, i, ūsus sum,
Versus, ūs, m.
Vis, vis, f.
Vulnus, eris, n.

to swim across.
safely.
safe.
any, any one.
to use.
verse.
force, violence; pl. vīrēs, vīrium,
wound.
[strength.

260. Translate into English.

- 1. Helvētiī dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs proficīscēbantur. 2. Orgetorix Casticō¹ persuādet ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupet, itemque² Dumnorigī ut idem cōnētur. 3. Prōditōrēs hanc urbem dēlēre cōnantur. 4. Prōditor nōs omnēs vītā prīvāre cōnātus est. 5. Tibī, Caesar, bonī virī grātiās agunt. 6. Bellō cōnfectō, omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt. 7. Eō tempore Druidēs Graecīs litterīs ūtēbantur. 8. Druidēs versūs suōs litterīs nōn mandant, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus Graecīs litterīs ūtantur.
- 9. Aeduī prō Bellovacīs rogābant ut Caesar suā clementiā in eōs ūterētur. 10. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus est. 11. Hostēs, commeātū interclūsō, sine ūllō vulnere vīctōriā potīrī cupiunt. Illī, etsī sē tūtō pūgnātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius³ esse arbitrābantur, commeātū interclūsō, sine ūllō vulnere vīctōriā potīrī. 12. Hostēs ad flūmen Rhēnum vēnērunt; ibī paucī vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt. 13. Vercingetorix equitātū abundābat. Is mīlitibus quōs anteā habuerat sē esse contentum dīxit. 14. Mīlitēs extrēmam famem sustinēbant, nūlla tamen vōx est ab 4 iīs audīta, populī Rōmānī glōriā et superiōribus vīctōriīs indīgna. 15. Gallī superiorem partem collis castrīs suīs complēvērunt.

¹ Indirect Object; the clause with ut is the Direct Object.

² Item modifies persuādet.

³ What determines the gender of this predicate adjective?

⁴ The context here shows that ab should be rendered from, not by.

261. Translate into Latin.

- 1. Although the Gauls were well supplied with grain, Caesar was cut off from supplies. 2. Gaul was filled with very warlike nations. 3. We shall not obtain possession of the camp of the enemy without receiving 1 many wounds.
- 4. Many words which we hear are unworthy of wise men.
 5. The Helvetii were not contented with their territory, but desired to obtain possession of the lands of their neighbors.
- 6. The general, relying on 2 the valor of his soldiers, has determined to assault the town. 7. We shall attempt to set out to-night. 3 8. Caesar thought that he should use the supplies of grain which were sent by the Aedui. 9. Do you understand for what reason the Druids used Greek letters? 4

LESSON LXXXVIII.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN FULL. - RULES LIII. AND LIV.

262. Lesson from the Grammar.

Indirect Discourse. — Örātiö Oblīqua.

522. When a writer or speaker expresses thoughts, whether his own or those of another, in any other form than in the original words of the author, he is said to use the Indirect Discourse — $\bar{O}r\bar{a}ti\check{o}$ $Obliqua:^5$

Platōnem ferunt in Italiam vēnisse, they say that Plato came into Italy. Cic. Respondeō tē dolōrem ferre moderātē, I reply that you bear the affliction with moderation. Cic. Utilem arbitror esse scientiam, I think that knowledge is useful. Cic.

¹ In rendering, omit receiving.

² See 260, sentence 12.

⁸ Render on this night.

⁴ What kind of a clause? See 127, 529.

⁵ Thus, in the first example, *Platōnem in Italiam vēnisse* is in the indirect discourse; in the direct, i.e. in the original words of those who made the statement, it would be *Platō in Italiam vēnīt*.

- 1. In distinction from the Indirect Discourse $\bar{O}r\bar{a}ti\bar{o}$ Oblique, the original words of the author are said to be in the Direct Discourse $\bar{O}r\bar{a}ti\bar{o}$ $R\bar{e}cta$.
- 2. Words quoted without change belong to the DIRECT DISCOURSE: Rex 'duumviros' inquit 'secundum legem facio,' the king said, 'I appoint duumvirs according to law.' Liv.

RULE LIII. - Moods in Principal Clauses.

- 523. The principal clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE on becoming Independent take the *Infinitive* or *Subjunctive* as follows:
- I. When DECLARATIVE, they take the *Infinitive with* a Subject Accusative.

Dicēbat animos esse dīvīnos, he was wont to say that souls are divine. Cic. Platonem Tarentum vēnisse reperio, I find that Plato came to Tarentum. Cic. Cato mīrārī sē āiēbat, Cato was wont to say that he wondered. Cic. Hippiās gloriātus est, ānulum sē suā manū confēcisse, Hippias boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand. Cic.

- II. When Interrogative, they take —
- 1. Generally the Subjunctive:

Ad postulāta Caesaris respondit, quid sibī vellet, cūr venīret, to the demands of Caesar he replied, what did he wish, why did he come? Caes.

2. Sometimes the *Infinitive with a Subject Accusative*, as in rhetorical questions:³

² In the direct discourse this example would read—quid tibī vīs? cūr

¹ In the direct discourse these examples would read—(1) animi sunt divini, (2) Platō Tarentum vēnit, (3) mīror, and (4) ānulum meā manā cōnfēcī. Observe that the pronominal subjects implied in mīror and cōnfēcī are expressed with the Infinitive, as mīrārī sē, sē cōnfēcīsse. But the subject is sometimes omitted when it can be readily supplied; see second example under II., 2, below.

³ A question used for rhetorical effect in place of an assertion is called a Rhetorical Question, as num potest, 'can he?' = non potest, 'he can not'; quid est turpius, 'what is baser?' = nihil est turpius, 'nothing is baser.'

Docēbant rem esse testimōniō, etc.; quid esse levius, etc., they showed that the fact was a proof (for a proof), etc.; what was more inconsiderate, etc.? Caes. Respondit, num memoriam dēpōnere posse, he replied, could he lay aside the recollection? Caes.

III. When IMPERATIVE, they take the Subjunctive:

Scribit Labiēnō cum legione veniat, he writes to Labienus to come (that he should come) with a legion. Caes. Redditur responsum, castrīs sē tenērent, the reply was returned, that they should keep themselves in camp. Liv. Mīlitēs certiōrēs facit, sē reficerent, he directed the soldiers to refresh themselves. Caes. Ōrābant ut sibī auxilium ferret, they prayed that he would bring them help. Caes. Nūntius vēnit, nē dubitāret, a message came that he should not hesitate. Nep.

RULE LIV. - Moods in Subordinate Clauses.

524. The subordinate clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE on becoming INDIRECT take the Subjunctive:

Respondit se id quod in Nerviis fecisset factürum, he replied that he would do what he had done in the case of the Nervii. Caes. Hippias gloriatus est, anulum quem haberet se sua manu confecisse, hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore. Cic.

526. In passing from the DIRECT DISCOURSE to the INDIRECT, pronouns of the first and second persons are generally changed to pronouns of the third person, 6 and the first and

Here belong many questions which in the direct form have the verb in the first or in the third person. As such questions are equivalent to declarative sentences, they take the same construction, the Infinitive with its subject.

1 Direct discourse—(1) quid est levius—nihil est levius, and (2) num memorium dépônere possum—memoriam dépônere non possum.

² Imperative sentences include those sentences which take the Subjunctive of Desire; see 114, 483.

3 In the direct discourse these examples would read—(1) cum legione veni, (2) castris vos tenēte, (3) vos reficite, (4) nobis auxilium fer, (5) noli dubitāre.

⁴ Direct, faciam id quod in Nerviis fēci.

5 Direct, anulum quem habeo mea manu confeci.

6 Thus—(1) ego is changed to suī, sibǐ, etc., or to ipse; meus and noster to suus; (2) tū to is or ille, sometimes to suī, etc.; tuus and vester to suus or to the Genitive of is; and (3) hīc and iste to ille.

second persons of verbs are generally changed to the third person:

Glöriātus est, ānulum sē suā manū cōnfēcisse,¹ he boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand. Cic. Redditur respōnsum, castrīs sē tenērent,² the reply was returned that they should keep themselves in camp. Liv. Respondit, sī obsidēs ab iīs sibĭ dentur, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum,³ he replied that if hostages were given to him by them, he would make peace with them. Caes.

263. Vocabulary.

Appetō, ere, petīvī or ii, ītum,
Artificium, iī, n.
Concilium, ii, n.
Creō, āre, āvī, ātum,
Discēdō, ere, cessī, cessum,
Polliceor, ērī, itus sum,
Prius, adv. comp., sup. prīmum,
Quisquam, quaequam, quicquam,
Respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsum,

to seek after, seek.
artifice.
council, meeting.
to create, elect, appoint.
to depart, withdraw, swerve.
to promise. [er than, before.
before, sooner; prius quam, soonanyone, anything.
to answer.

264. Translate into English.

1. Ariovistus respondit sē prius in Galliam vēnisse, quam populum Rōmānum.⁴ Dīxit omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs contrā sē castra habuisse,⁵ eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō superātās esse.⁴ 2. Posterō diē, conciliō convocātō, Vercingetorix dīxit nōn virtūte neque in aciē vīcisse Rōmānōs,⁴ sed artificiō quōdam et scientiā oppūgnātiōnis.⁶ 3. Aeduī summō in perīculō sunt. Aeduī dīcunt sē summō in perīculō esse.⁴ Dīxērunt sē summō esse in perīculō. 4. Aeduī summō in

¹ Direct, ānulum ego meā manū confēcī. Ego becomes sē, and meā, suā.
2 Direct, castrīs vos tenēte. Vos becomes sē, and tenēte, tenērent.

³ Direct, sī obsidēs ā võbīs mihī dabuntur, võbīscum pācem faciam. A võbīs becomes ab īīs; mihī becomes sibī; võbīscum, cum iīs; and the implied subject of faciam becomes sēsē, the subject of esse factūrum.

⁴ Give the Direct form corresponding to this Indirect Discourse.

⁵ Castra habere, literally, to have camp, may be rendered to encamp, to take the field.

⁶ English idiom, skill in assault.

perīculō erant. Aeduī dīcunt sē summō fuisse in perīculō.¹ Dīxērunt sē summō fuisse in perīculō.

- 5. Liscus magistrātum gerēbat. Hōc tempore duo magistrātum gerunt. Aeduī summō in perīculō sunt quod duo magistrātum gerunt. Aeduī dīcunt sē summō esse in perīculō, quod duo magistrātum gerant, et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creātum esse dīcat.¹ Dīxērunt sē summō esse in perīculō, quod duo magistrātum gererent, et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creātum esse dīceret.
- 6. Nonne Orgetorix suae cīvitātis imperium obtinēbit? Dīcit sē suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrum esse. 7. Imperātor cum hostibus pācem faciet. Dīcit sī obsidēs ab hostibus sibĭ dentur, utī eōs ea quae polliceantur factūros intellegat, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum. 8. Caesar dīxit Ariovistum sē cōnsule populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetisse; cūr hunc quisquam ab officiō discessūrum jūdicāret?

265. Translate into Latin.

1. Caesar says that Gaul was divided into three parts; that the Belgae inhabited one of these, the Aquitani another, and the Celts the third.⁴ 2. He said that a third part of Gaul was inhabited by those who called themselves Celts, but whom the Romans named Gauls.⁴ He said that the Helvetii were the bravest of the Gauls, and that they were nearest to the Germans, with whom they were continually waging war.⁴ 3. The Helvetii said that if the Romans made peace with them, they would remain where Caesar desired; but that if peace was not made, the Romans would be regarded by them as enemies.⁴ Although they had attempted to march through the province, they said that they wished to make peace.⁴

¹ Give the corresponding Direct form.

² What form of condition in Direct Discourse?

⁸ Ablative Absolute, he being consul; render, in his consulship.

⁴ Give the corresponding Direct form in English and in Latin.

LESSON LXXXIX.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — EXERCISE IN READ-ING AT SIGHT.

266. Lesson from the Grammar.

233. The Active Periphrastic Conjugation, formed by combining the Future Active Participle with *sum*, denotes an intended or future action:

Amātūrus sum, I am about to love.

	,	
INDICATIVE. Pres. amāturūs sum 1	subjunctive. amātūrus sim	infinitive. amātūrus esse
Imp. amātūrus eram	amātūrus essem	
Fut. amātūrus erō Perf. amātūrus fuī	amātūrus fuerim	amātūrus fuisse
Plup. amātūrus fueram F. P. amātūrus fuerō 1	amātūrus fuissem	
F. P. amaturus iuero		l .

234. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, formed by combining the Gerundive with *sum*, denotes *necessity* or *duty*.

Amandus sum, I must be loved.2

Pres. amandus sum Imp. amandus eram	amandus sim amandus essem	amandus esse
Fut. amandus erö Perf. amandus fui	amandus fuerim	amandus fuisse
Plup. amandus fueram F. P. amandus fuerō	amandus fuissem	

267. Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.

Helvētiī, auctoritāte Orgetorigis permotī, constituērunt dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus copiīs proficīscī, jūmentorum et carrorum quam māximum numerum coemere, sementes quam māximās facere, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam confirmāre. Ad eās rēs conficiendās biennium sibī satis esse

¹ The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly. The Future Perfect is exceedingly rare.

2 Or, I deserve (ought) to be loved.

dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectionem lēge confirmāvērunt. Ad eās rēs conficiendās Orgetorix dēlēctus est. Is sibī lēgātionem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eo itinere persuāsit Castico Sēquano, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret; itemque Dumnorigī Aeduo, ut idem conārētur persuāsit. Facile esse factū illīs probāvit conātūs perficere; sē suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrum esse, et suīs copiīs suoque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum confirmāvit. Hāc orātione adductī inter sē fidem dedērunt. Ea rēs est Helvētīs per indicium enūntiāta. Moribus suīs Orgetorigem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt.

268. Translate into Latin.

1. Orgetorix was intending to secure regal power in his state. 2. There were many things to be accomplished by the Helvetii, if they wished to set out from their territory.
3. In accordance with the customs of the Helvetii, Orgetorix, who was regarded by them as a traitor, was forced to plead his cause in chains. 4. It was announced to the Helvetii what Orgetorix was attempting to accomplish. 5. He had said that he would secure for these chieftains regal power in their states. To accomplish his attempt was not an easy thing to do. He had persuaded the Helvetii to set out from their territory with all their forces.

LESSON XC.

IRREGULAR VERBS.—Possum AND Ferō.

269. Lesson from the Grammar.

289. A few verbs which have special irregularities are called, by way of preëminence, *Irregular* or *Anomalous Verbs*.

¹ See 266, 233.

² See **266**, 234.

³ In accordance with, etc., use the Ablative, under 158, 413.

⁴ See 252, sentence 14.

290. Possum,1

posse,

potuī,

to be able.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.

Pres. possum, potes, potest;

PLURAL.
possumus, potestis, possunt

Imp. poteram; 2

poterāmus. poterimus.

Fut. potero;
Perf. potui;
Plup. potueram;
F. P. potuero;

potuimus.
potuerāmus.
potuerīmus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. possim, possis, possit;

possīmus, possītis, possint.

Imp. possem; Perf. potuerim; Plup. potuissem; possēmus. potuerīmus. potuissēmus.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. posse.

Pres. potens (as an adjective).

Perf. potuisse.

292. Ferō,³

ferre, tulī,

lātum,

to bear.

ACTIVE VOICE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL. ferimus, fertis,4 ferunt.

Pres. ferō, fers, fert; Imp. ferēbam;⁵ Fut. feram; Perf. tulī;

ferēbāmus. ferēmus.

Plup. tuleram; F. P. tulero;

tulimus. tulerāmus. tulerīmus.

2) That the Perfect is potui, not potfui.

 $^{^1}$ Possum is compounded of potis, 'able,' and sum, 'to be.' In possum observe —

¹⁾ That potis drops is, and that t is assimilated before s; possum for potsum.

³⁾ That the Infinitive posse and Subjunctive possem are shortened forms for potesse and potessem.

² Inflected regularly through the different persons: poteram, poterās, poterat, etc. So also in the other tenses: potui, potuistī, etc.

^{- 3} Ferō has forms derived from three independent stems, seen in ferō, tulī, lātum.

⁴ Fer-s, fer-t, fer-tis, instead of feris, ferit, feritis.

⁵ Inflect the several tenses in full: ferēbam, ferēbās, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. feram; ferāmus.

Imp. ferrem; ferrēmus.

Perf. tulerim; tulerīmus.

Plup. tulissēm; tulissēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. fer;² ferte.

Fut. fertō, fertōte, fertote, fertote.

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE.

Pres. ferre. 1 Pres. ferens.

Perf. tulisse.

Fut. lätūrus esse. Fut. lätūrus.

GERUND. SUPINE.

Gen. ferendī,

 Dat.
 ferendō,

 Acc.
 ferendum,
 Acc.
 lātum,

 Abl.
 ferendō.
 Abl.
 lātū.

Passive Voice.

feror, ferrī, lātus sum, to be borne.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. feror, ferris, fertur; ferimur, feriminī, feruntur. Imp. ferēbar; ferēbāmur.

PLURAL.

Fut.fereball,Fut.ferar;ferēmur.Perf.lātus sum;lātī sumus.Plup.lātus eram;lātī erāmus.F.P.lātus erō;lātī erimus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. ferārferāmur.Imp. ferrer;ferrēmur.Perf. lātus sim;lātī sīmus.Plup. lātūs essem;lātī essēmus.

¹ Ferrem, etc., for fererem, etc.; ferre for ferere (e dropped).

² Fer for fere; fertō, ferte, fertōte, for feritō, ferite, feritōte.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. ferre;

feriminĭ.

Fut. fertor, fertor:

feruntor.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. ferri.

Perf. lātus esse.

Perf. lātus. Ger. ferendus.

LESSON XCI.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — Possum and Ferō. — Exercises.

270. Vocabulary.

Arrogantia, ae, f.

Avāritia, ae, f. Clāssis, is, f.

Clāssis, is, f. Coërceō, ēre, uī, itum,

Dolor, \bar{o} ris, m.

Fero, ferre, tuli, latum, Juvenis, is, m.

Nihil, n. indeclinable,
Patienter, adv.

Praetor, ōris, m. Prīvātim, adv.

Sententia, ae, f. Statuō, ere, uī, ūtum,

arrogance. avarice.

fleet.

to restrain, control.

pain. [ferre, to propose a law. to bear, carry; to endure; legem

youth, a youth.

nothing. patiently.

praetor, a Roman magistrate. privately, in a private capacity.

thought, plan, opinion. to determine, decide.

271. Translate into English.

1. Hī cīvēs plūs possunt quam ipsī magistrātūs.¹ Liscus dīcit esse nōnnūllōs, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs; hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse. 2. Nōnne hī juvenēs arma ferre possunt? In Galliā arma ferunt. 3. In exercitū Caesaris erant multī quī arma in Ĭtaliā tulerant. 4.

¹ After a comparative, quam is followed by the same construction as that which precedes it. $Magistr\bar{a}t\bar{u}s$ is here the subject of possunt to be supplied.

Cīvēs Rōmānī avāritiam praetōris ferre nōn potuērunt. 5. Ea quae ferrī possunt ferenda sunt. 6. Ferimus ea quae sunt ferenda. 7. Nōnne imperātor fīnitimīs cīvitātibus auxilium feret? Iīs auxilium ferre nōn poterit. 8. Rhēnus per fīnēs Helvētiōrum fertur. 9. Haec lēx ferētur.

10. Bonae lēgēs ferantur. 11. Multae lēgēs lātae sunt. 12. Gallī nostrōrum mīlitum impetum sustinēre nōn potuērunt. 13. Liscus dīcit sē quam diū potuerit tacuisse. 14. Dolōrem patienter ferāmus. 15. Dolor patienter ferendus est. 16. Ariovistus tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur. 17. Nihil dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī hostēs timent. 18. Clāssis est exspectanda. Caesar statuit exspectandam esse clāssem. 19. Cum fīnitimīs cīvitātibus pācem factūrī sumus. 20. Hostēs suam urbem altissimō mūrō mūnītūrī sunt.

272. Translate into Latin.

1. We can fortify all our cities with walls and with moats. 2. If we are intending to bear² aid to our friends, our cities must be fortified.³ 3. We have decided that we must await, in this place, the arrival⁴ of our friends. 4. If you cannot endure pain, you must make peace⁴ with your enemies.

5. If you had to endure the arrogance of this general, you would not be silent. 6. They are intending to set out for Gaul, to carry against the Romans. 7. Those who propose good laws should be regarded as the friends of all the citizens. 8. To endure pain patiently is not an easy thing to do. The soldiers must be warned not to fear the enemy. 10. In our state no citizens have greater

¹ Tacuisse must here be rendered, that he has kept silent, not that he kept silent.

² See 266, 233. ³ See 266, 234.

⁴ Render as if the English were, the arrival must be awaited, peace must be made, arrogance had to be endured.

⁵ See 119, 497. ⁶ See 248, sentence 5.

293. Volă,2

power than the magistrates. 11. All of us can carry arms in defence of 1 our country.

LESSON XCII.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — $Vol\tilde{o}$, $N\tilde{o}l\tilde{o}$, And $M\tilde{a}l\tilde{o}$. — RULE VII.

273. Lesson from the Grammar. 2 velle. voluī. to b

to be willing.

200. 1 010,	, 0110,	, 010129			
$\mathbf{N}ar{\mathrm{o}}\mathrm{l}ar{\mathrm{o}},^{3}$	nōlle,	nōluī,	$to\ be\ unwilling$		
${f Mar a}$ lö, $^{f a}$	mālle,	māluī,	to prefer.		
	INDIC	CATIVE.			
Pres. volo,	nōlō.	. 1	mālō,		
vīs.	nōn		māvīs,		
vult;	non vult;		māvult;		
volumus,	nõlumus,		mālumus,		
vultis,	non vultis,		mävultis,		
volunt.	nõlu	, I	mälunt.		
Imp. volēbam.4	nōlēl	oam.	mālēbam.		
Fut. volam.	nõlai	n.	mälam.		
Perf. voluī.	nōluī.		māluī.		
Plup. volueram.	nōlueram.		mālueram.		
F. P. voluerō.	nōlue	erō.	\mathbf{m} ālue \mathbf{r} o.		
SUBJUNCTIVE.					
Pres. velim.5	nőlin	n. 1	mālim.		
Imp. vellem.6	nölle	i	mällem.		
Perf. voluerim.	nôlue	i	māluerim.		
Plup. voluissem.	1	ssem.	māluissem.		
-					

^{1 &#}x27;In defence of,' pro.

² The stem of volo is vol, with variable stem vowel, o, e, u.

³ Nõlõ is compounded of $n\bar{e}$ or $n\bar{o}n$ and $vol\tilde{o}$; $m\bar{a}$ Lõ, of magis and $vol\tilde{o}$.

⁴ Inflect the several tenses in full.

⁵ Velim is inflected like sim, and vellem like essem.

⁶ Vellem and velle are syncopated forms for velerem, velere; e is dropped and r assimilated; velerem, velrem, vellem; velere, velre, velle. So nöllem and nölle, for nölerem and nölere; mällem and mälle, for mälerem and mälere.

IMPERATIVE.

| Pres. nölī, nölīte. | Fut. nölītō, nölītōte, | nölītō, nöluntō.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. velle.
Perf. voluisse.

nölle. nõluisse. mälle. mäluisse.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. volēns.

nõlēns.

RULE VII. - Two Accusatives -- Person and Thing-

374. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING, admit two Accusatives — one of the person and the other of the thing:

Mē sententiam rogāvit, he asked me my opinion. Cic. Philosophia nōs rēs omnēs docuit, philosophy has taught us all things. Cic. Auxilia rēgem ōrābant, they asked auxiliaries from the king. Liv. Pācem tē poscimus, we demand peace of you. Verg. Nōn tē cēlāvī sermōnem, I did not conceal from you the conversation. Cic.

1. In the Passive the Person becomes the subject, and the Accusative of the thing is retained:

Mē sententiam rogāvit, he asked me my opinion. Cic. Ego sententiam rogātus sum, I was asked my opinion. Cic. Artēs ēdoctus fuerat, he had been taught the arts. Liv.

LESSON XCIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — $Vol\tilde{o}$, $N\tilde{o}l\tilde{o}$, and $M\tilde{a}l\tilde{o}$. — Rule VII. — EXERCISES.

274. Vocabulary.

Auctor, ōris, m.

Crēdō, ere, didī, ditum, Cūr, adv.

Exūrō, ere, ussī, ūstum,

author, advocate.

to believe. (Followed by the Dative why? [of the person believed).

to burn up, burn.

Flagito, are, avī, atum, Liberter, adv. Maleficium, ii, n. Mālō, mālle, māluī, Nolo, nolle, nolui, Perfero, ferre, tuli, latum, Ūnā, adv. Unde, adv. Videor, i ērī, vīsus sum, Volo, velle, volui,

to demand. willingly, gladly. mischief, harm. to prefer. to be unwilling, not to be willing, to endure. [not to wish. Permaneö, ēre, mānsī, mānsum, to continue to remain, to remain. together. whence, from which place. to seem, appear.

to wish, to be willing.

275. Translate into English.

1. Caesar dē summīs rēbus cum Ariovistō, rēge Germānōrum, agere volēbat. 2. Num bellī fortūnam tentāre vultis? Patriam defendere volumus. Nölīte dubitāre 2 lībertātem 3. Galba saepius³ fortūnam tentāre nōlēbat. dēfendere. Faciam id quod vultis. 5. Catŏ esse bonus 4 volēbat. 6. Hī cīvēs vidērī bonī volunt. 7. Catŏ esse quam⁵ vidērī bonus mālēbat. 8. Libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. Auctōrēs bellī esse nolēbāmus. 10. Auctorēs bellī esse nolēmus. 11. Caesar montem ā Labieno occupārī voluit. 12. Considius timore perterritus dicit montem, quem Caesar ā Labieno occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenerī.

13. Per prövinciam nostram iter facere conabuntur, proptereā quod aliud iter habent nüllum. 14. Imperātor nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre. 15. Dīxērunt sibĭ esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter facere. 16. Gallī servitūtem perferre nolēbant. In lībertāte permanēre

¹ Videor is the passive of video, 'to see,' but it is also used as a deponent verb with a special meaning.

² Literally, be unwilling to hesitate; render, do not hesitate, — a common circumlocution in prohibitions instead of $n\bar{e} \ dubit\bar{a}$, a form used in poetry only; as in English, do not hesitate, instead of hesitate not.

⁸ The comparative sometimes has the force of Too.

⁴ A predicate adjective after esse, agreeing with Catō.

⁵ Quam after mälö may be rendered rather than.

⁶ See 59, 362.

quam servitūtem perferre mālēbant. Reliquīs cīvitātibus persuāsērunt ut in lībertāte permanēre quam servitūtem perferre māllent. 17. Jūdicem sententiam rogābunt. 18. Cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat. 19. Helvētiī trēs cōpiārum partēs flūmen Ararim¹ trānsdūxerant. 20. Rhodanus inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum fluit. 21. Allobrogibus sēsē persūasūrōs esse exīstimābant utī, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs,² ūnā cum iīs proficīscerentur.

276. Translate into Latin.

- 1. You were unwilling to ask us our opinion.³ 2. I do not understand why you wish to ask this man his opinion.³ Will you tell me why you wish to ask this man his opinion? 3. How large an army is the general willing to lead across the river?⁴ 4. He prefers to remain in camp rather than to lead his soldiers across this river,⁴ although a bridge has been built⁵ over it.
- 5. If the Aedui had not told Caesar that they would assist him, he would not have demanded grain of them.³ 6. Are you not willing to do that which I demand of you?³ 7. You preferred to ask his opinion,⁶ in order that he might believe you to be his friend. 8. If you should persuade us to remain, what should you wish us to do? 9. Do not wish that which cannot be done. 10. Those who are willing to try the fortune of war must not fear danger. 11. All of us ought to be willing to defend our country.

¹ A few compounds of $tr\bar{a}ns$, circum, and ad, admit two Accusatives, dependent, the one upon the verb, the other upon the preposition.

² See Suggestion XVI., (3).

⁸ See 273, 374.

⁴ See 275, sentence 19.

⁵ Use the Ablative Absolute.

⁶ To ask his opinion = to ask him his opinion. 273, 374.

⁷ See 275, sentence 2.

⁸ In Latin, $n\bar{o}s$ $omn\bar{e}s$, 'we all,' or simply $omn\bar{e}s$, agreeing with the subject implied in the ending of the verb.

LESSON XCIV.

IRREGULAR VERBS.— $Fi\bar{o}$ AND $E\bar{o}$.—RULES X. AND XXI.

277. Lesson from the Grammar.

294. Fīō, fierī, factus sum, to become, be made

INDICATIVE.

PLURAL. SINGULAR. fīmus, fītis, fīunt. Pres. fio, fis, fit; fiēbāmus. Imp. fiēbam;1 fiēmus. Fut. fiam; factī sumus. Perf. factus sum; factī erāmus. Plup. factus eram; facti erimus. F. P. factus ero;

SUBJUNCTIVE.

fīāmus. Pres. fiam; fierēmus. Imp. fierem; factī sīmus. Perf. factus sim; factī essēmus. Plup, factus essem;

IMPERATIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

fite. Pres. fi;

INFINITIVE. Pres. fierī. Perf. factus. Perf. factus esse. Ger. faciendus. Fut. factum iri.

to go. 295. Eō, īvī, itum, īre.

INDICATIVE.

īmus, ītis, eunt. Pres. eō, īs, it; ībāmus. Imp. ibam;1 ībimus. *Fut. ībō; īvimus. Perf. ivi; īverāmus. Plup. iveram; īverīmus. F. P. ivero;

¹ Inflect the several tenses in full.

SHBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. eam;eāmus.Imp. frem;īrēmus.Perf. īverim;īverimus.Plup. īvissem;īvissēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE.

Pres. ire. Pres. iens, Gen. euntis.

Perf. ivisse.

Fut. itūrus esse. Fut. itūrus.

GERUND. SUPINE.

Gen. eundī,

Dat. eundō,

Acc. eundum,Acc. itum,Abl. eundō.Abl. itū.

RULE X. - Accusative of Limit.

380. The PLACE TO WHICH is designated by the Accusative: 1

I. Generally with a preposition — ad or in:

Legionës ad urbem adducit, he is leading the legions to or toward the city. Cic. In Asiam redit, he returns into Asia. Nep.

II. In names of towns without a preposition:

Nūntius Rōmam redit, the messenger returns to Rome. Liv. Fūgit Tarquiniōs, he fled to Tarquinii. Cic.

Note.—Verbs meaning to collect, to come together, etc.,—convenio, cōgō, convocō, etc.—are usually treated as verbs of motion, and thus take the Accusative, generally with a preposition; but verbs meaning to place—locō, collocō, pōnō, etc.,—are usually treated as verbs of rest, and thus take the Ablative (185, 425), generally with a preposition:

¹ Originally the place to which was uniformly designated by the Accusative without a preposition. Names of towns have retained the original construction, while most other names of places have assumed a preposition.

Unum in locum convenire, to meet in one place. Caes. In alterius manu vitam ponere, to place one's life in the hand of another. Cic.

1. In the NAMES OF TOWNS the Accusative with ad occurs — (1) to denote to, toward, in the direction of, into the vicinity of, and (2) in contrast with \bar{a} or ab:

Ad Zamam pervēnit, he came to the vicinity of Zama. Sall. A Diāniō ad Sinōpēn, from Dianium to Sinope. Cic.

- 2. Like names of towns are used —
- 1) The Accusatives domum, domos, rūs:

Domum reductus est, He was conducted home. Cic. Domōs abducti, led to their homes. Liv. Rūs évolāre, to hasten into the country. Cic.

RULE XXI .- Place from which.

- 412. The PLACE FROM WHICH is denoted by the Ablative:
 - I. Generally with a preposition a, ab, de, or ex:

Ab urbe proficiscitur, he sets out from the city. Caes. Dê forō, from the forum. Cic. Ex Africā, from (out of) Africa. Liv.

II. In Names of Towns without a preposition:1

Platonem Athenis arcessivit, he summoned Plato from Athens. Nep. Fügit Corintho, he fled from Corinth. Cic.

1. Many names of islands, and the Ablatives, $dom\bar{o}$ and $r\bar{u}re$, are used like names of towns:

 $Dom\bar{o}$ profugit, he fled from home. Cic. $D\bar{e}l\bar{o}$ proficiscitur, he proceeds from Delos. Cic.

LESSON XCV.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — $Fi\bar{o}$ AND $E\bar{o}$. — RULES X. AND XXI. — EXERCISES.

278. Vocabulary.

Caedēs, is, f. slaughter.
Cibāria, örum, n. pl. food, provisions.
Combūrō, ere, bussī, būstum, to burn up, burn.

Effero, ferre, extuli, elātum, to carry forth.

¹ This was the original construction for all places alike.

Ēgredior, ī, gressus sum, Eō, īre, īvī or iī, itum, Equester, tris, tre,

Exeō, īre, iī, itum,¹ Fīō, fierī, factus sum, Lutetia, ae, f. Melodūnum, ī, n.

Narbō, ōnis, m.
Nihilum, ī, n.
Patior, ī, passus sum,
Peditātus, ūs, m.
Plānitiēs, ēī, f.
Praeterquam, adv.
Tolōsa, ae, f.
Trānseō, īre, ii,¹ itum,
Vigilia, ae, f.

to go out, go forth, depart. to go. equestrian; equestre proelium, a cavalry engagement. to go out, go forth, depart. to be made; to happen. Lutetia, a city in Gaul, now Paris. Melodunum, a town of the Senones. Narho, a town in southern Gaul. nothing. to suffer, permit. infantry. plain. except. Tolosa, a town in southern Gaul. to go over, cross.

279. Translate into English.

match.2

- 1. Helvētiī ē fīnibus suīs exībant. Ē fīnibus suīs exīre cōnābantur. Post Orgetorigis mortem nihilō³ minus ē fīnibus suīs exīre cōnābantur. 2. Id quod cōnstituērunt facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. 3. Haec omnia contrā lēgem facta sunt. 4. Illud quod faciendum prīmum fuit factum est. 5. Id quod vultis nūllō modō fierī potest. 6. Nolīte id velle, quod fierī non potest. 7. Caesar suum equitātum contrā hostem īre jubet. 8. Omnēs legionēs contrā hostem ībant. 9. Fit equestre proelium in plānitiē; Caesar legionēs prō castrīs cōnstituit, nē qua irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fīat; hostēs fugae sēsē mandant; fit māgna caedēs; nōnnūllī fossam trānsīre cōnantur.
- Divitiacus auxiliī rogandī causā Rōmam⁴ ad senātum profectus est.
 Labiēnus cum quattuor legiōnibus Lu-

¹ The compounds of $e\bar{o}$ take the contracted form $i\bar{i}$ in the perfect.

² Among the Romans, the night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four watches of equal length.

³ Ablative of Difference: less by nothing. Render, none the less.

⁴ See 277, 380.

tetiam proficīscitur. 12. Ē castrīs tertiā vigiliā ēgressus Melodūnum vēnit. 13. Gallī per suōs fīnēs nōs īre patientur. 14. Imperātōrem dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciāmus. 15. Ubī dē hīs rēbus certiōrēs factī sunt, prīvāta aedificia incendērunt. 16. Lēgātōs, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, ad rēgem mīsērunt. 17. Frūmentum omne, praeterquam¹ quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combussērunt. 18. Suēbī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertērunt. 19. Dux Rōmānus multōs virōs fortēs Tolōsā et Narbōne² ēvocāvit. 20. Helvētīī trium mēnsium cibāria sibǐ quemque domō² efferre jussērunt.

280. Translate into Latin.

- 1. Orgetorix persuaded the Helvetii to go forth from their territory. 2. We shall be informed what they carried from home with them. 3. We shall go to Rome, and remain there the whole winter. 4. We shall send you letters often, that you may be informed in what direction we are going. We have heard that you say that you have not been informed by us in what direction we are going. Do you know in what direction we have gone?
- 5. Caesar was intending to go from Italy to Geneva with five legions. 6. Having accomplished this, Caesar orders the Helvetii to return to their homes. 7. Do you prefer to go home rather than to remain at Rome? 8. The Helvetii thought that they should persuade the Sequani to suffer them to go through their territory. 9. Caesar thought that peace should not be made with the Helvetii, unless they returned home. 10. What did the Helvetii attempt to do after the death of Orgetorix? They attempted to persuade their neighbors to burn all their towns.

¹ The construction with praeterquam is elliptical; we may supply after it id frümentum non combusserunt. Of course the ellipsis need not be supplied in translation.

2 See 277, 412.

³ What mood must be used in an Indirect Question?

⁴ Use the Ablative Absolute.

⁵ See **185**, 425.

LESSON XCVI.

IMPERSONAL VERBS. — REVIEW OF RULE XLIII. — RULE XIII.

281. Lesson from the Grammar.

298. Impersonal Verbs correspond to the English Impersonal with *it*: *licet*, it is lawful; *oportet*, it behooves. They are conjugated like other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular of the Indicative and Subjunctive, and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive:

Decet, decuit, it becomes. Oportet, oportuit, it behooves. Miseret, miseritum est, it excites Paenitet, paenituit, it causes regret. 2 pity. 2

300. Generally Impersonal are several verbs which designate the changes of the weather, or the operations of nature:

Fulminat, it lightens; grandinat, it hails; $l\bar{u}c\bar{e}scit$, it grows light; pluit, it rains; $r\bar{o}rat$, dew falls; tonat, it thunders.

301. Many other verbs are often used impersonally:

Accidit, it happens; appāret, it appears; cōnstat, it is evident; contigit, it happens; dēlectat, it delights; dolet, it grieves; interest, it concerns; juvat, it delights; patet, it is plain; placet, it pleases; praestat, it is better; rēfert, it concerns.

1. In the Passive Voice intransitive verbs can be used only impersonally. The participle is then neuter:

Mihī crēditur, it is credited to me, I am believed to tibī crēditur, you are believed; crēditum est, it was believed; certātur, it is contended; curritur, there is running, people run; pūgnātur, it is fought, they, we, etc., fight; vīvitur, we, you, they live.

2. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (266, 234) is often used impersonally. The participle is then neuter:

Mihī scrībendum est, I must write; tibī scrībendum est, you must write; illī scrībendum est, he must write.

¹ The subject is generally an infinitive or clause, but may be a noun or pronoun denoting a *thing*, but not a *person*: hoc fieri oportet, that this should be done is necessary.

² Mē miseret, I pity; mē paenitet, I repent.

RULE XIII. - Two Datives - To which and For which.

390. Two Datives — the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT OF END FOR WHICH — occur with a few verbs:

I. With Intransitive and Passive verbs:

Malō est hominibus avāritia, avarice is an evil to men (literally is to men for an evil). Cic. Est mihī cūrae, it is a care to me. Cic. Domus dēdecorī dominō fit, the house becomes a disgrace to its owner. Cic. Vēnit Atticīs auxiliō, he came to the assistance of the Athenians. Nep. Hōc illī tribuēbātur īgnāviae, this was imputed to him as cowardice (for cowardice). Cic. Eis subsidiō missus est, he was sent to them as aid. Nep.

II. With TRANSITIVE verbs in connection with the Accusative:

Quinque cohortes castris praesidio reliquit, he left five cohorte for the defence of the camp (literally to the camp for a defence). Caes. Pericles agros suos dono rei publicae dedit, Pericles gave his lands to the republic as a present (literally, for a present). Just.

282. Vocabulary.

Accidō, ere, ī,
Athēnae, ārum, f. pl.
Athēniensis, is, m. and f.
Atticus, ī, m.
Cōiciō,¹ ere, cōjēcī, jectum,
Difficilis, e,
Impedīmentum, ī, n.

Īnferō, ferre, intulī, illātum,
Īnstō, āre, stitī,
Lūna, ae, f.
Mētior, īrī, mēnsus sum,
Multō,² adv.
Novissimus, a, um, sup. of novus,
Oportet, ēre, uit,

to fall to, befall; accidit, it happens, I comes to pass. Athens. an Athenian. Atticus, a Roman name. to cast, hurl, throw. difficult. hinderance, embarrassment; impedimenta, pl., hinderances; baggage lagainst. (of an army). to bear into, bear against, wage to be near, be at hand. moon. to measure, allot. much, far.

newest; novissimum ägmen, the rear. it behooves, is proper; one ought.

¹ Pronounced as if spelled cōjiciō.

² Originally an Ablative of Difference; literally, by much.

Ōrnāmentum, ī, n. Plēnus, a, um, Subsidium, iī, n. Tēlum, ī, n. Titus. ī. m.

ornament, honor.
full.
aid, support, reënforcement.
dart; weapon.
Titus, a Roman name.

283. Translate into English.

- 1. Caesarī nūntiātum est, equitēs Ariovistī lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs cōicere. 2. Helvētiīs est in animō per agrum Aeduōrum iter facere. Caesarī nūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Aeduōrum iter facere. 3. Germānōs trāns Rhēnum incolere dictum est. 4. Eā nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna. 5. Helvētiī undique locī nātūrā continēbantur. Hāc rē fīēbat ut minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent. 6. Frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportet. Diēs īnstat, quō diē¹ frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēbit. 7. Ea rēs Gallīs² māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedīmentō.² 8. Legiōnēs duae in novissimō āgmine praesidiō² impedīmentīs² erant.
- 9. Erant itinera duo, quibus Helvētiī domō exīre possent; ūnum³ angustum et difficile; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat; alterum,³ multō facilius. 10. Atticus Athēnīs ita vīxit, ut Athēniēnsibus esset cārissimus. 11. Amīcitia populī Rōmānī mihī² ōrnāmentō² est. 12. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī mihī² ōrnāmentō² et praesidiō² esse oportet. 13. Ariovistus dīxit amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibī² ōrnāmentō² et praesidiō² esse oportēre. 14. Lēgātīs respondeāmus nōs diem ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrōs esse. 15. Titus Labiēnus decimam legiōnem subsidiō² nostrīs² mīsit. 16. Gallī oppidum Noviodūnum, nē cur⁴ esset ūsuī² Rōmānīs,² incendērunt.

¹ $Qu\bar{o}$ is here an adjective agreeing with $di\bar{e}$. The antecedent is usually expressed but once; here $di\bar{e}$ may be omitted in rendering.

² See 281, 390.

³ Supply erat.

⁴ Cui is here the indefinite pronoun, agreeing with $\bar{u}su\bar{\iota}$.

284. Translate into Latin.

- 1. In the towns of the Gauls were many things which were of great use to the Romans.¹ 2. The friendship of the general ought to be a safeguard to us.¹ 3. We should all live in such a way, as not to be a grief to our friends.¹ 4. It often happens, that what ought to be done is not easy to do. 5. It is our intention to go to Geneva and to Rome ² this summer.
- 6. The friendship of the good is always an honor to us.¹
 7. It was announced to Caesar that the Helvetii had set out from their territory, and that they were attempting to march through the province. 8. It is stated by Caesar that the Helvetii were the bravest of the Gauls. 9. It was the intention of Orgetorix to obtain possession of the sovereignty of all Gaul. 10. Let soldiers remain, to be a garrison to the city. 11. The horsemen of Ariovistus hurled stones and darts upon the Romans. 12. Your friendship ought to be a safeguard to me.¹

LESSON XCVII.

IMPERSONAL VERBS. — RULE XX.

285. Lesson from the Grammar.

RULE XX. - Accusative and Genitive.

- 409. The Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing are used with a few transitive verbs:
 - I. With verbs of reminding, admonishing:

Te amīcitiae commonefacit, he reminds you of friendship. Cic. Mīlitēs necessitātis monet, he reminds the soldiers of the necessity. Ter.

II. With verbs of accusing, convicting, acquitting:

Virōs sceleris arguis, you accuse men of CRIME. Cic. Levitātis eum convincere, to convict him of levity. Cic. Absolvere injūriae eum, to acquit him of injustice. Cic.

¹ See 281, 390.

² See 277, 380.

³ See 258, 421.

III. With miseret, paenitet, pudet, taedet, and piget: Eōrum nōs miseret, we pity them (it moves our pity of them). Cic. Cōnsilit mē paenitet, I repent of my purpose. Cic. Mē stultitiae meae pudet, I am ashamed of my folly. Cic.

Note 1.—The Genitive of the Thing designates, with verbs of reminding, etc., that to which the attention is called; with verbs of accusing, etc., the crime, charge; and with miseret, paenitet, etc., the object which produces the feeling; see examples.

Note 2. — The personal verbs included under this rule retain the Genitive in the Passive:

Accüsatus est proditionis, he was accused of treason. Nep.

286. Vocabulary.

Acriter, adv.
Anceps, cipitis,
Beneficium, iī, n.
Celeritās, ātis, f.
Commūnis, e,
Incrēdibilis, e,
Ineō, īre, iī, itum,
Īnsimulō, āre, āvī, ātum,
Lēnitās, ātis, f.
Licet, ēre, uit,
Necesse,¹
Paenitet, ēre, uit,
Petō, ere, īvī or iī, ītum,
Prōditiō, ōnis, f.
Prōsequor, ī, secūtus sum,
Prōspiciō, ere, spēxī, spectum

benefit, favor.
celerity, speed.
common; commūnis rēs, the comincredible. [mon interest.
to go into, enter upon, begin, underto accuse. Itake.
smoothness, gentleness.
it is lawful, is permitted; one may.

double, twofold; undecided.

it causes regret; mē paenitet, I to seek, request, ask. [repent. treason.

to follow up, pursue.

necessary.

sharply, severely.

Prōspiciō, ere, spēxī, spectum, to look forward; to look out for.

(In the latter sense followed by the Dative.)

287. Translate into English.

- 1. Ancipitī proeliō diū pūgnātum est.² Ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum fortiter pūgnātum est. Ad multam noctem etiam
- 1 Necesse is an adjective used only in the Nominative and Accusative Neuter Singular.
- ² Observe in this sentence and the others in this Lesson, that an impersonal verb can not be rendered literally. Thus, $di\bar{u}$ $p\bar{u}gn\bar{a}tum$ est would become in English, a long battle was fought, the fighting went on for a long time.

ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est. 2. Proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. 3. Caesar Titum Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus hostēs prōsequī jussit: ad novissimum āgmen ventum est. Eī ad quōs ventum erat fortiter impetum Rōmānōrum sustinuērunt. 4. Rēī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum est. 5. Caesar rēī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum esse exīstimābat. 6. Dē commūnī rē in colloquiō dīcendum est. 7. Vercingetorix prōditiōnis īnsimulātus est. 8. "Haec," dīxit Vercingetorix, "ā mē beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis īnsimulātis."

9. Flūmen est Arar, quod in Rhodanum īnfluit incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat jūdicārī nōn possit. Caesar per explōrātōrēs certior factus est, trēs jam cōpiārum partēs Helvētiōs id flūmen trānsdūxisse. 10. Gallōs hūjus cōnsiliī paenitēbat. 11. Gallī saepe cōnsilia ineunt quōrum eōs paenitet. 12. Saepe cōnsilia inīmus quōrum nōs paenitēre necesse est. 13. Nōbīs concilium in diem certam indīcere liceat. 14. Vōbīs concilium in diem certam indīcere liceat. 15. Gallī petiērunt utī sibī concilium totīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere licēret. 16. Mīlitēs eā celeritāte iērunt ut hostēs impetum legiōnum sustinēre nōn possent.

288. Translate into Latin.

1. The town was reached by us an hour before sunset.
2. A long and severe battle took place near the camp. 3. I have to speak of things which you ought to wish to hear.
4. It should be stated that the Gauls already repented of their plan. 5. Caesar told the Gauls that they might appoint a council.

6. You cannot bring the war to an end, but you may⁸ repent of your plans. 7. It cannot be ascertained what the enemy intend to do. 8. It was necessary to provide ⁸ for

¹ Dies, usually masculine, is feminine when it signifies a day fixed or appointed.

² Literally, that; render, such.

³ In all these cases express the thought impersonally in Latin.

the protection of the camp. 9. Orgetorix (when) accused of treason, was compelled to plead his cause in chains. 10. Crimes should be repented of. 11. The rear of the enemy was reached, and a severe battle took place. 12. Fighting will go on from midday to sunset. 13. As so many have been slain, we may judge how severe a battle has been fought.

LESSON XCVIII.

REVIEW OF RULES LIII., LIV., AND LV. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

289. Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.

Post Orgetorigis mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnābantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs¹ exīrent. Ubī sē¹ ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, vīcōs, prīvāta aedificia incendērunt; frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combussērunt, ut parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula essent; trium mēnsium cibāria sibī quemque domō efferre jussērunt. Persuāsērunt fīnitimīs utī, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum iīs proficīscerentur.

Erant itinera duo, quibus ē fīnibus suīs exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Jūram et flūmen Rhodanum, mōns autem altissimus impendēbat; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius. Allobrogibus sēsē persuāsūrōs esse exīstimābant, ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur. Ob eās causās per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnātī sunt.

Caesar, hīs rēbus audītīs, mātūrāvit ab urbe proficīscī et māximīs itineribus in Galliam contendit. Ubī dē ējus ad-

¹ The pupil should exercise especial care in this Exercise to determine the antecedents of the pronouns which occur in it, particularly of suus and sui.

ventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt, quī dīcerent, sibī esse in animō iter per prōvinciam facere. Caesar lēgātīs respondit, diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum.

290. Translate into Latin.

- 1. I shall take time for deliberation. 2. I wish to inform you of my arrival. 3. I send you a messenger to inform you of my arrival. 4. We intend to march through your country without (doing) any harm. 5. I intend to march through the province, because I have no other route. 6. Ambassadors were sent to Caesar to say what the Helvetii intended to do.
- 7. After hearing the words of our friends, we shall set out from this city, and hasten home. 8. We attempted to set out before. 9. I wish you to try to tell me what you intend to do. 10. Do you think that you will persuade me to tell you what I intended to do? 11. Burn your towns and villages, and set out together with us. 12. You will never persuade us to set fire to our towns. 13. Let us always be prepared for danger. 14. We have burned all our grain, except what we carried with us. 15. Let each one take with him from home provisions for six months. 16. How many routes are there by which we can go?

LESSON XCIX.

GERUNDS, GERUNDIVES, AND PARTICIPLES. — REVIEW OF RULES LIX., LX., AND XXXII.

291. Lesson from the Grammar.

I. GERUNDS.

541. The Gerund is a verbal noun which shares so largely the character of a verb that it governs oblique cases, and takes adverbial modifiers:

¹ Use the Ablative Absolute.

² Observe that this is an Indirect Question.

Jūs vocandī 1 senātum, the right of summoning the senate. Liv. Beātē vīvendī 1 cupiditās, the desire of living happily. Cic.

- 542. The Gerund has four cases the Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative used in general like the same cases of nouns. Thus —
- I. The Genitive of the Genund is used with nouns and adjectives:

Ars vīvendī, the art of living. Cic. Studiōsus erat audiendī, he was desirous of hearing. Nep. Cupidus tē audiendī, desirous of hearing you. Cic. Artem vēra āc falsa dījūdicandī, the art of distinguishing true things from false. Cic.

II. The DATIVE OF THE GERUND is used with a few verbs and adjectives which regularly govern the Dative:

Cum solvendō nōn essent, since they were not able to pay. Cic. Aqua ūtilis est bibendō, water is useful for drinking. Plin.

III. The Accusative of the Gerund is used after a few prepositions: $^{2}\,$

Ad discendum propensi sumus, we are inclined to learn (to learning). Cic. Inter lüdendum, in or during play. Quint.

IV. The Ablative of the Gerund is used (1) as Ablative of Means, and (2) with prepositions:

Mēns discendō alitur, the mind is nourished by learning. Cic. Salūtem hominibus dandō, by giving safety to men. Cic. Virtūtes cernuntur in agendō, virtues are seen in action. Cic. Dēterrēre a scribendo, to deter from writing. Cic.

II. GERUNDIVES.

543. The Gerundive, like other participles, agrees with nouns and pronouns:

Inita sunt consilia urbis delendae, plans have been formed for destroying the city (of the city to be destroyed). Cic. Numa sacerdotibus creandis animum adjecit, Numa gave his attention to the appointment of priests. Liv.

¹ Vocandī as a Genitive is governed by jūs, and yet it governs the Accusative senātum; vīvendī is governed by cupiditās, and yet it takes the adverbial modifier beātē.

² Most frequently after ad; sometimes after inter and ob; very rarely after ante, circa, and in.

544. The Gerundive Construction may be used —

1. In place of a Gerund with a direct object. It then takes the case of the Gerund whose place it supplies:

Libīdō ējus videndī (= libīdō eum videndī), the desire of seeing him (literally, of him to be seen). Cic. Platōnis audiendī (= Platōnem audiendī) studiōsus, fond of hearing Plato. Cic. Legendīs ōrātōribus (= legendō ōrātōrēs), by reading the orators. Cic.

2. In the Dative and in the Ablative with a preposition:

Locum oppidō condendō cēpērunt, they selected a place for founding a city. Liv. Tempōra dēmetendīs frūctibus accommodāta, seasons suitable for gathering fruits. Cic. Brūtus in līberandā patriā est interfectus, Brutus was slain in liberating his country. Cic.

III. Participles.

548. The Participle is a verbal adjective which governs the same cases as the verb:

Animus sē non vidēns alia cernit, the mind, though it does not see itself (literally, not seeing itself), discerns other things. Cic.

549. Participles are often used —

1. To denote, TIME, CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS:

Platő scríbēns mortuus est, Plato died while writing. Cic. Itūri in proelium canunt, they sing when about to go into battle. Tac. Sól oriens diem conficit, the sun by its rising causes the day. Cic. Militēs renuntiant se perfidiam veritos revertisse, the soldiers report that they returned because they feared perfidy (having feared). Caes.

2. To denote Condition or Concession:

Mendāci hominī ne vērum quidem dicentī crēdere non solēmus, we are not wont to believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth. Cic. Scrīpta tua jam diū exspectāns, non audeo tamen flāgitāre, though I have been long expecting your work, yet I do not dare to ask for it. Cic.

3. To denote Purpose:

Perseus rediit, bellī cāsum tentātūrus, Perseus returned to try (about to try) the fortune of war. Liv. Attribuit nōs trucīdandōs Cethēgo, he assigned us to Cethegus to slaughter. Cic.

4. To supply the place of Relative Clauses:

Omnes aliud agentes aliud simulantes, improbi sunt, all who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest. Cic.

5. To supply the place of PRINCIPAL CLAUSES:

Classem devictam cepit, he conquered and took the fleet (took the fleet conquered). Nep.

550. The Tenses of the Participle — Present, Perfect, and Future — denote only relative time. They accordingly represent the time respectively as present, past, and future relatively to that of the principal verb:

Oculus sē nōn vidēns alia cernit, the eye, though it does not see itself (not seeing itself), discerns other things. Cic. Platō scrībēns mortuus est, Plato died while writing. Cic. Üva mātūrāta dulcēscit, the grape, when it has ripened (having ripened), becomes sweet. Cic. Sapiēns bona semper placitūra laudat, the wise man praises blessings which will always please (being about to please). Sen.

LESSON C.

GERUNDS, GERUNDIVES, AND PARTICIPLES. — REVIEW OF RULES LIX., LX., XXXII. — EXERCISES.

292. Vocabulary.

Accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum, Aggredior, ī, gressus sum, Ārdeō, ēre, ārsī, ārsum, Concidō, ere, ī, Concīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsum, Cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessum, Crūdēliter, adv.
Dēpopulor, ārī, ātus sum, Excruciō, āre, āvī, ātum, Frūmentātiō, ōnis, f.
Grātulor, ārī, ātus sum,

Initium, ii, n.

Īnsequor, i, secūtus sum,

Moror, ārī, ātus sum,

Perfacilis, e,

Perveniô, īre, vēnī, ventum,

Sepultūra, ae, f.

to receive.

to attack.

to burn, to be ardent, be eager.

to fall.

to cut down, destroy, slay.

to settle, post one's self, encamp.

cruelly.

to ravage, lay waste.

to torture.

foraging, provisioning.

to congratulate; to thank. (Followed

by the Dative.)

beginning.

to pursue, follow.

to delay, tarry.

very easy.

to arrive, come.

burial, interment.

Subveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, to come to the help of, succor, aid. (Followed by the Dative.)

Trīduum, ī, n. Ulcīscor, i, ultus sum,

space of three days, three days. to avenge one's self on, punish; to take vengeance.

293. Translate into English.

- 1. Divitiacus auxiliī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus est. 2. Animī Rōmānōrum ad ulcīscendum ārdēbant. 3. Titūrius in illō locō hiemandī causā cōnsēderat. 4. Reperiēbat in quaerendō Caesar initium fugae factum esse ā Dumnorige. 5. Caesar equitātum ad eam regionem dēpopulandam mittit. 6. Fīnitimī lēgātōs ad Aeduōs mittunt subsidium rogātum. 7. Prīncipēs Aeduōrum ad Caesarem veniunt ōrātum ut cīvitātī subveniat. 8. Tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī,¹ prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum² convēnērunt.
- 9. Caesar ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nondum flūmen trānsierat. 10. Caesar Helvētiōs aggressus³ māgnam eōrum partem concīdit. 11. Gallī dīcunt perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus Rōmānōs prohibēre. 12. Centuriō, multīs vulneribus acceptīs,⁴ pūgnāns⁵ concidit. 13. Legiō decima Gallōs īnsequentēs⁶ tardāvit. 14. Cīvēs Rōmānōs crūdēliter excruciātōs³ interfēcērunt. 15. Caesar, hōc proeliō factō, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat. 16. Rōmānī, propter sepultūram occīsōrum trīduum morātī, hostēs sequī nōn potuerant.

294. Translate into Latin.

1. One legion of Caesar's army retarded for three hours the enemy (who were) pursuing. 2. After a beginning of

¹ Literally, 'ambassadors of Gaul'; render, 'From Gaul.'

² Supply in English the object, him.

³ See Suggestion XIII., 5.

⁴ See Suggestion XVI., (3).

⁵ In English the present participle in such a connection is usually accompanied by while.

⁶ See Suggestion XIII., 2.

flight had been made¹ by one division of the enemy, the rest were easily conquered. 3. The Romans defeated the enemy (who were) not informed of their approach. 4. Let us send to our friends, to ask aid against those who have come for the purpose of ravaging our lands. 5. To conquer the brave and the free is not an easy thing to do.

6. For the sake of crossing the river more easily, Caesar had a bridge built over the Rhine. 7. Our soldiers ought to be prepared for setting out from camp, and for fighting with the enemy. 8. In asking aid, the Aedui said that they were eager to take vengeance.² 9. For defending the bridge which had been made, Caesar stationed soldiers on each bank of the river. 10. The Gallic chieftains said to Caesar: "We have been sent to you by our states to congratulate you." ⁸

¹ Use the Ablative Absolute.

² Render, 'for (ad) taking vengeance.'

³ See 166, 546.

NARRATIVES FROM CAESAR.

THE EMIGRATION OF THE HELVETH, THEIR DEFEAT BY THE ROMANS, AND THEIR RETURN TO THEIR COUNTRY.¹

The Inhabitants of Gaul. The Valor of the Helvetii.

I. Gallia est dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ² ūnam ³ incolunt Belgae, aliam ³ Aquītānī, ⁴ tertiam ³ Gallī. ⁴ Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte ⁵ praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs ⁶ cum Germānīs contendunt.

Orgetorix and His Project of Emigration.

II. Apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus et dītissimus fuit Orgetorix. Is, Messāllā et Pīsōne cōnsulibus, cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs exīrent. Helvētiī continentur ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Jūrā

² Partitive Genitive. 28, 397. ³ Supply partem as object of incolunt.

¹ From Caesar's "Commentaries on the Gallic War," I., 1-29. For Suggestions on Exercises in Latin Composition, see page 300.

⁴ Subject of *incolunt*. Observe that the term *Galli* is used in two senses. It properly denotes the inhabitants of all Gaul, but it is often used, as in this instance, to designate the inhabitants of the third division of the country, i.e. of Celtic Gaul.

⁵ 231, 424.

⁶ 78, 420.

⁷ Is would not be expressed unless it were emphatic, as in English, 'it was he who,' etc., i.e. it was Orgetorix who originated the project of emigration.

8 240, 431. This was in the year 61 B. C.

⁹ 54, 384. Civitātī is here used as a collective noun: 'the citizens;' **observe** that this is shown by the number of extrent.

^{10 119, 497; 491. 11 &#}x27;On one side.'

quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō quī prōvineiam ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fīebat ut minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur.

The Helvetii Prepare to Leave their Country.

III. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte ⁶ Orgetorigis ⁷ permōtī, cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent ⁸ comparāre. Ubř jam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, ⁹ oppida sua omnia, vīcōs, reliquaque prīvāta aedificia incendērunt; frūmentum omne, praeterquam ¹⁰ quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combussērunt, ut domum reditionis spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda ¹¹ essent. ¹²

The Route Selected and the Day Appointed.

IV. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus 6 domō 18 exīre possent; ūnum 14 per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, alterum per prōvinciam, multō facilius, quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllīs locīs 15 vadō 6 trānsītur. 16 Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est prōximum-

¹ Supply ex parte. 2 158, 413. 8 54, 384. 4 123, 500. 5 Prō, 'in proportion to.' 6 78, 420.

⁷ The secret purpose of Orgetorix was to possess himself of sovereign power among the Helvetii, and then to use this valiant and warlike nation, with the aid of a few other tribes, whose chieftains he had won to his purposes, in bringing the whole of Gaul under his control. His treasonable plot was detected; but just before the time appointed for his trial by the Helvetian authorities, he suddenly died, as it was suspected, by his own hand. The Helvetians did not, however, give up their project of emigration.

⁸ Quae ... pertinërent, 'which would be requisite for their departure.' 123, 503.

^{9 258, 231. 10} See 279, sentence 17. 11 291, 544. 12 119, 497.

 <sup>18 277, 412.
 14</sup> *Unum*, in apposition with *itinera*. 28, 363.
 15 185, 425, 2.

¹⁶ Vado trānsītur, 'is crossed by means of a ford,' i.e. 'is fordable.'

que Helvētiōrum fīnibus¹ Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet.² Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs³ exīstimābant vel vī coāctūrōs,³ ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur.⁴ Omnibus rēbus⁵ ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīxērunt quā diē⁶ ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs convenīrent.⊓ Is diēs erat ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs,⁵ Pīsōne, Gabīniō⁶ cōnsulibus.

Caesar Hastens into Gaul, and Receives an Embassy from the Helvetii.

V. Caesarī cum nūntiātum esset ⁹ eōs per prōvinciam iter facere cōnārī, ¹⁰ mātūrāvit ab urbe ¹¹ proficīscī, et ad Genāvam ¹² pervēnit. Ubĭ dē ējus adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt quī dīcerent, ¹³ sibǐ esse in animō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre, ut ējus voluntāte id sibǐ facere licēret. ¹⁴ Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat ¹⁵ Lūcium

 ^{141, 391.} Ad ... pertinet, 'leads over to the Helvetii.'
 171, 534.
 Market Absolute.

^{6 93, 429. 7 123, 500.}

⁸ Ante... Aprīlēs; this whole expression may be regarded as an indeclinable noun, in this instance a predicate nominative after erat; 59, 362. It means 'the fifth day before the Calends (the first) of April,' which according to the Roman reckoning was not the 27th but the 28th day of March. This was in the year 58 B. C.

¹⁰ Eos . . . conārī: subject of nuntiātum esset.

¹¹ Ab urbe, i.e. from Rome.

¹² Ad Genāvam, 'into the vicinity of Geneva,' 'to Geneva' would be simply Genāvam,' 277, 380.

13 Quī dīcerent, to say, 119, 497.

¹⁴ Sibi... licēret, Indirect Discourse. In Direct Discourse, thus: Nōbīs est in ... facere, proptereā ... habēmus nūllum; rogāmus ut tuā voluntāte id nōbīs facere liceat. Explain the changes of Mood, etc. 262, 523, 524. Observe that esse and rogāre are the leading verbs in the principal clauses, and that the subject of esse is the clause iter ... facere.—Rogāre, 'that they asked;' the subject, if expressed, would be sē.—Ut ... līcēret; 119, 498. Licēret has id facere as its subject, and sibī as its indirect object; 54, 384.—Ējus voluntāte, 'with his (Caesar's) consent,' 158, 413.

¹⁵ Memoriā tenēbat: retained in (by means of) memory.

Cassium consulem occīsum, exercitumque ējus ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub jugum missum,¹ concēdendum² non putābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset,⁵ dum mīlitēs, quos imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit, diem⁴ sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Īdūs Aprīlēs ⁵ reverterentur.⁵

Caesar takes Measures to prevent the March of the Helvetii.

VI. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Jūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum decem novem mūrum fossamque perdūxit. Ubī ea dies, quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negāvit sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare, et, sī vim facere cōnārentur, prohibitūrum stendit. Helvētiī perrumpere cōnātī, operis mūnītione et mīlitum tēlīs repulsī, hōc cōnātū destitērunt.

The Helvetii decide to March by a different Route.

VII. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, ¹³ quā, Sēquanīs invītīs, propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā

¹ This defeat of the Roman army under Cassius occurred near the Lake of Geneva, 107 B. C.
2 Concēdendum, i.e. the request of the Helvetii.

³ 119, 497. ⁴ Diem, render time.

⁵ Ad $\bar{I}d\bar{u}s$ Aprīlēs, on the Ides of Aprīl, i.e. on the 13th of Aprīl.

⁶ Sī ... reverterentur: in Direct Discourse, sī quid vultis ... revertiminī, 262, 523, 524.

7 Ablative of Means with perdūxit.

⁸ Milia, 98, 397. These defences extended along the southern side of the Rhone, from the Lake of Geneva to Mount Jura, and commanded all the fords of the Rhone by which the Helvetii could enter the Roman province.

¹¹ Prohibitūrum, i.e. sē prohibitūrum esse. 12 158, 413.

¹³ $\overline{U}na \dots via$: only the way through the Sequani, i.e. the narrow pass along the north bank of the Rhone, between the mountains and the river.

sponte¹ persuādēre non possent,² lēgātos ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mīsērunt, ut eo dēprecātore³ ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.⁴ Dumnorix apud Sēquanos plūrimum poterat,⁵ et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvītāte Orgetorigis fīliam in mātrimonium dūxerat.⁶ Itaque rem suscēpit⁻ et ā Sēquanīs impetrāvit, ut per fīnēs suos Helvētios īre paterentur.

Caesar Marches Five Legions of Roman Soldiers into Gaul.

VIII. Caesarī renūntiātum est, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere.⁸ Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum.⁹ Ob eās causās ĕī mūnītiōnī, quam fēcerat, Titum Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Ītaliam contendit duāsque ibĭ legiōnēs cōnscrīpsit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūxit, et in ūlteriōrem Galliam cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit.

Caesar Surprises and Routs One Canton of the Helvetii at the River Arar.

IX. Helvētiī jam per angustiās ¹⁰ et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trānsdūxerant, et in Acduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant. ¹¹ Flūmen est Arar, quod ¹² per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit. Id Helvētiī trānsībant. ¹³ Ubī Caesar certior factus est, trēs jam cōpiārum partēs ¹⁴ Helvētiōs id flūmen ¹⁴ trānsdūxisse, quartam vērō partem citrā flūmen ¹⁵

¹ Suā sponte, of themselves. 2 See suggestion xvii. 2.

Eō deprecatore, by his intercession; literally, he being an intercessor.
 119, 497.
 Plūrimum poterat: had very great influence.

⁶ In mātrimōnium dūxerat: had married.

⁷ Rem suscēpit: he undertook the service.

⁸ Facere: subject of esse.
9 Supply esse.

¹⁰ The narrow pass between the Jura and the Rhone.

¹¹ ' Had come,' i. e. during Caesar's absence.

¹² The antecedent is flumen.

¹⁸ Observe the force of the tense: 'were crossing.'

¹⁴ See 275, sentence 19.

¹⁵ Citra flumen: on this side of the river, i.e. on the east side.

Ararim reliquam esse, cum legionibus tribus ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nondum flumen trānsierat. Eos aggressus māgnam eorum partem concīdit; reliquī fugae sēsē mandārunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgos dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, patrum nostrorum memoriā,¹ Lūcium Cassium consulem interfēcerat, et ējus exercitum sub jugum mīserat. Ita quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea² prīnceps poenās persolvit.³

Caesar Crosses the Arar, and Receives a Second Embassy from the Helvetii.

X. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrāvit, atque ita exercitum trānsdūxit. Helvētiī ējus adventū commōtī, lēgātōs ad eum misērunt, cūjus lēgātiōnis Divicŏ prīnceps fuit. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: ⁴ Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibī futūrōs ⁵ Helvētiōs, ubī eōs Caesar esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī ⁶ persevērāret, ⁷ reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī ⁸ populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Caesar respondit: Sī ⁹ obsidēs ab iīs sibī darentur, utī ea, ¹⁰ quae pollicērentur, factūrōs intellegeret, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum. Divicŏ

¹ Patrum . . . $memori\bar{a}$: within the memory of our fathers; 93,429.

² Render as if it read, ea pars civitătis Helvētiae quae . . . intulerat.

³ Princeps persolvit: was the first to pay.

⁴ Ita ēgit: discoursed as follows. The words following, Sī . . . Helvētiōrum, are in Indirect Discourse. The Direct Discourse would be: Sī . . . faciet, . . . ibunt . . . erunt Helvētiī, ubi eōs esse voluerīs; sīn . . . persevērābis, reminīscere, etc. Explain the changes; 262, 523, 524.

⁵ Ibi futuros: would remain there. Supply esse.

⁶ Persequi; supply eos. 7 The subject is Caesar.

⁸ Incommodi populi, etc. This refers to the defeat of Cassius.
9 Si... facturum is in Indirect Discourse. The Direct Discourse

y Sī... facturum is in Indirect Discourse. The Direct Discourse would be: Sī... mihī dabuntur... polliceantur, ... intellegam, (ego)... faciam; 262, 523, 524.

¹⁰ Ea: object of factūros (esse), the subject of which is (eos), referring to the Helyetii.

respondit: Helvētiōs ā mājōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuēssent; ējus rēī populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

The Helvetii proceed on their March, followed by the Roman Army. A Cavalry Skirmish, in which the Helvetii are Successful.

XI. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movērunt.⁴ Idem fēcit Caesar, equitātumque omnem praemīsit, quī vidērent,⁵ quās in partēs hostēs iter facerent.⁶ Quī cupidius ⁷ novissimum āgmen īnsecūtī, aliēnō locō ⁸ cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium commīsērunt, et paucī dē nostrīs ⁹ cecidērunt. Quō proeliō ¹⁰ sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus ¹⁰ tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant,¹¹ audācius subsistere, nōnnūnquam ex novissimō āgmine proeliō nostrōs lacēssere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, āc satis habēbat ¹² in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs, ¹³ pābulātiōnibus, populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs ¹⁴ circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium āgmen et nostrum prīmum ¹⁵ nōn amplius ¹⁶ quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus ¹⁷ passuum interesset.¹⁸

¹ Cōnsuēssent, contracted from cōnsuēvissent. In this verb the Perfect has the sense of a Present, and therefore the Pluperfect of an Imperfect.

² Ejus... testem: that the Roman people were witnesses of this, alluding to the hostages given by the survivors after the defeat and death of Cassius.

³ Ablative Absolute. 4 The subject is $Helv\bar{e}ti\bar{i}$ to be supplied.

^{5 119, 497.}

^{6 127, 529.}

⁷ See 275, sentence 3.

^{8 185, 425, 2.}

⁹ Pauci de nostris: a few of our men; see 125, sentence 8.

^{10 78, 420.}

¹¹ Is this the reason of Caesar, or of the Helvetii?

¹² The object is the clause hostem . . . prohibēre. 13 158, 413.

^{14 98, 379.}

¹⁵ Primum: supply agmen, our van.

¹⁶ Amplius: subject of interesset.

¹⁷ Quinis milibus; 88, 417. The Distributive implies that the statement is true for each of the fifteen days; 97, 172.

¹⁸ 123, 500,

Caesar Plans an Attack upon the Camp of the Helvetii.

XII. Caesar ab explōrātōribus certior factus,¹ hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia² passuum ab ipsĭus castrīs octo, dē tertiā vigiliā Titum Labiēnum, lēgātum, cum duābus legiōnibus summum jugum montis ascendere jussit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit. Pūblius Cōnsīdius, quī rēī mīlitāris³ perītissimus habēbātur, cum explōrātōribus praemissus est.

Caesar's Plan Defeated by the Mistake of Considius.

XIII. Prīmā lūce,⁴ cum summus mōns ā Titō Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset,⁵ neque aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset,⁵ Cōnsīdius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīxit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluisset,⁶ ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in prōximum collem subdūxit, aciem īnstrūxit. Labiēnus, ut erat ēī praeceptum ⁷ ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae ⁸ prope hostium castra vīsae essent,⁶ ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō denique diē ⁹ per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit, et montem ā suīs tenērī, et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse, et Cōnsīdium timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibī renūntiāsse.¹⁰ Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervallō,¹¹ hos-

¹ See certus, vocabulary. 2 98, 379. 3 See vocabulary. 4 93, 429.

⁵ Abesset and cognitus esset, as well as teneretur, depend upon cum.

^{6 127, 529,} II.

⁷ The subject of erat praeceptum is the clause $n\bar{e}$... committeret, which also expresses purpose; 119, 497.

⁸ Ipsīus copiae: his own (Caesar's) forces.

⁹ Multo die: late in the day, though only relatively to prima luce.

¹⁰ Quod ... renuntiasse: had reported to him what he had not seen, as if seen, literally, for seen. The antecedent of quod is the omitted object of renuntiasse.

¹¹ $Qu\bar{o}$. . . intervall \bar{o} = intervall \bar{o} qu \bar{o} consucrat: at the usual distance. See above, XI., last line.

tēs secūtus est, et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra sua posuit.

To secure Supplies, Caesar turns aside from the Pursuit of the Helvetii. The Helvetii change their Route and follow the Roman Army.

XIV. Postrīdiē, quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum octōdecim aberat, rēī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit,¹ iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit, āc Bibracte² īre contendit.³ Ea rēs per fugitīvōs hostibus nūntiātum est. Helvētiī, seu⁴ quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, sīve quod rē⁵ frūmentāriā interclūdī posse⁶ cōnfīderent, itinere conversō, nostrōsⁿ ā novissimō āgmine⁶ īnsequī āc lacēssere coepērunt.

Caesar Prepares for a General Engagement.

XV. Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in prōximum collem subdūxit, equitātumque, quī sustinēret bostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō jugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī jussit. Helvētiī, cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rejectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

¹ Rēī...existimāvit: he thought that he ought to provide supplies. With prospiciendum supply esse; 281, 301; 54, 384.

² 277, 380.

³ Āvertit āc contendit: no conjunction is expressed, connecting these verbs with existimāvit; we may supply and accordingly.

⁴ Seu . . . confiderent: either because they thought, etc., or because they trusted, etc.

⁵ 158, 413.

⁶ Posse: supply eos, referring to the Romans.

⁷ See 125, sentence 8. 8 \overline{A} . . . \overline{a} gmine: on the rear.

^{9 119, 497.}

¹⁰ In . . . mediö: midway up the hill.

In a fierce Battle the Helvetii are totally Defeated and put to Flight.

XVI. Caesar cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs, ē locō superiore pīlīs missīs, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā¹ disjectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs² impetum fēcērunt. Diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est.3 Nam hōc tōtō proeliö,4 cum 5 ab hōrā septimā 6 ad vesperum pūgnātum esset, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem⁷ etiam ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est, proptereā quod pro vallo carros objecerant, et e loco superiore in nostros venientes 8 tela coiciebant, et nonnulli inter carros rotāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant, nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedīmentīs io castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ex eō proeliō circiter mīlia hominum centum et trīgintā superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem 11 noctis itinere intermissō, in fīnēs Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, cum, et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsõrum nostrī trīduum ¹¹ morātī, eōs sequī nōn potuissent.12 Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē juvārent; quī sī jūvissent, 18 sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. 14 Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequi coepit.

¹ Ea refers to phalangem.

 $^{^2}$ $E\bar{o}s$ refers to hostium.

³ Pūgnātum est: they fought, 281, 301.

⁴ 185, 425, 1. ⁵ 254, 515.

⁶ As the Romans divided the day from sunrise to sunset into twelve hours, the *seventh hour* would be about one o'clock.

 $^{^7}$ Ad . . . noctem: far into the night.

⁸ In . . . venientes: against our men who were advancing.

⁹ 281, 301. ¹¹ 98, 379.

 <sup>10 258, 421.
 12</sup> With cum, denoting cause.

¹³ Quī sī jūvissent: if they should aid; 127, 529, II.

If $S_{\overline{e}}$... habiturum: 'that he should regard them as in the same situation as the Helvetii.' $S_{\overline{e}}$ habiturum (esse) depends upon the verb implied in litteras ... mīsit. Supply, as the object of habiturum, eōs, referring to Lingonēs. Helvētiōs is the object of habēret, to be supplied.

The Helvetii submit to Caesar's Terms, and return to their Country. One Canton unsuccessfully Attempts to take Refuge in Germany.

XVII. Helvētiī, omnium rērum inopiā adductī, lēgātōs dē dēditione ad eum mīsērunt. Caesar obsidēs, arma, servos, quī ad eōs perfūgissent,¹ poposcit. Dum ea² conquīruntur et conferuntur, nocte intermissa, circiter 4 hominum milia sex ējus pāgī, quī Verbigēnus appellātur, sīve timore perterritī,5 nē armīs trāditīs supplicio adficerentur,6 sīve spē salūtis inductī, prīmā nocte⁷ ex castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī, ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt. Quod ubī Caesar resciit, quõrum per fines ierant, hīs 10 utī conquirerent et reducerent imperavit; reductos in hostium numero habuit; 11 reliquos omnes, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditionem accepit. Helvētios in fīnes suos, unde erant profecti, reverti jussit, et Allobrogibus imperavit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; 12 ipsōs 18 oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere jussit. Id eā māximē ratione 14 fēcit, quod noluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent, et fīnitimī Galliae provinciae essent.

¹ 123, 503.

² Ea: these, — literally, these things.

^{8 240, 431.}

⁴ Circiter: an adverb, modifying sex.

⁵ Perterriti agrees with milia by a construction according to sense.
6 Nē... adjicerentur depends upon timore. 'with fear lest,' etc.; 119, 497.

⁷ See 191, foot-note.

⁸ When Caesar ascertained this.

⁹ $Qu\bar{o}rum$: the antecedent is $h\bar{i}s$.

¹⁰ His depends on imperavit; 54, 384.

¹¹ Reductos . . . habuit: when they were brought back, he treated them as enemies: literally, had them in the number of enemies. They were probably sold as slaves.

¹² Ut . . . facerent: to furnish a supply, etc.; 119, 498.

¹⁸ Ipsos: them, emphatic, in distinction from Allobrogibus.

¹⁴ $\hat{E}\bar{a}$... ratione: principally for this reason, explained by quod noluity etc.

The Numbers of the Helvetii before and after their Disastrous Enterprise.

XVIII. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt quibus in tabulīs ratiŏ cōnfecta erat, quī numerus¹ domo² exīsset.³ Summa erat Helvētiōrum mīlia ducenta et sexāgintā tria. Eōrum, quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, repertus est numerus mīlium centum et decem.

Caesar's First Invasion of Britain, 55 B. C.4

Caesar's Reasons for the Expedition.

I. Caesar in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs botībus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et sī tempus annī ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen māgnō sibī ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incōgnita. Neque enim temere praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incōgnita. Neque enim temere praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset sīnsulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent, neque quī essent ad nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

Preparations for the Expedition.

II. Ad haec cognoscenda Gāium Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemīsit. Huic mandāvit, utī explorātīs omnibus

¹ Ratio, qui numerus: an account showing what number.

^{2 212, 412, 1.}

³ $Qu\bar{i}$, . . exisset is in apposition with $rati\bar{o}$; 127, 529, I.

⁴ From Caesar's "Commentaries on the Gallic War," IV., 20-36.

^{5 93, 429. 6} Supply esse. 7 291, 543. 8 127, 529, II.

⁹ **281**, 390. 10 **140**, 204, 2. 11 His insis, i.e. mercātōribus.

¹² Vocātīs . . . mercātēribus, Ablative Absolute; although he summoned, etc.

13 Quanta esset: object of reperire; 127, 529, I.

rēbus ¹ ad sē quam prīmum ² reverterētur.³ Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs profectus est, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trājectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus et, quam ⁴ superiōre aestāte effēcerat, clāssem jussit convenīre. Volusēnus, perspectīs regiōnibus ¹ omnibus, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertit, quaeque ibĭ perspēxisset ⁵ renūntiāvit.

Caesar crosses the Channel.

III. Caesar nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum ⁶ tempestātem, tertiā ferē vigiliā ⁷ solvit, et hōrā diēī circiter quartā ⁸ cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibĭ in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspēxit. Cūjus locī haec erat nātūra, utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. ⁹ Hunc ad ēgrediendum ⁶ nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, circiter mīlia ¹⁰ passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō āc plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit. ¹¹

The Britons Oppose the Landing of the Romans.

IV. At barbarī, praemissō equitātū¹ et essedāriīs, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī, nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Quod ubī Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus, et rēmīs incitārī, et ad latus apertum ¹² hostium cōnstituī, atque inde fundīs,¹³ sagittīs, tormentīs, hostēs prōpellī āc submovērī

¹ Ablative Absolute. 2 Qua

² Quam prīmum: as soon as possible.

 <sup>3 119,497
 4</sup> Quam: the antecedent is clāssem.

 5 127, 529, I.
 6 291, 542.
 7 93, 429.

⁸ About ten o'clock in the morning, probably on the 26th of August. See page 291, foot-note 6.

⁹ 123, 500. ¹⁰ 98, 379.

¹¹ Apertō... cōnstituit: he anchored off an open and level shore; probabiy on the coast of Deal; 185, 125, 1.

¹² The exposed flank was the right flank, as the shield was carried on the left arm.

¹⁸ 78, 420.

jussit: quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs ¹ fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā² et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī, barbarī cōnstitērunt āc paulum pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitibus ³ cunctantibus, māximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī ⁴ decimae legiōnis aquilam ⁵ ferēbat: "Dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere: ego certē meum rēī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō." Hōc cum māgnā vōce dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōjēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex prōximīs nāvibus cum cōnspēxissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropīnquārunt.

The Romans Effect a Landing, and put the Britons to Flight.

V. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere poterant, māgnō opere perturbābantur. Hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubī aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspēxerant, incitātīs equīs, adoriēbantur; plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant; aliī in ūniversōs teta cōiciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium mīlitibus complērī jussit, et quōs labōrantēs cōnspēxerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt.

The Britons Sue for Peace.

VI. Hostēs, proeliō ¹² superātī, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt. Caesar obsidēs imperāvit, quōrum illī

¹ 281, 390. ² 158, 413. ³ Ablative Absolute.

⁴ Qui, he who. 5 The eagle was the standard of the legion.

⁶ The loss of the eagle was regarded as a great disgrace.

⁷ Temporal clause. 8 Caesar's reason. 9 Temporal clause.

¹⁰ Plūrēs: several, i. e. of the enemy.

¹¹ In universos: against our assembled forces, opposed to aliquos singulares. 12 185, 425, 1.

partem statim dedērunt, partem paucīs diēbus¹ sēsē datūrŏs dīxērunt.

The Roman Fleet seriously Damaged by a high Tide and a Storm.

VII. Hīs rēbus pāce² cōnfirmātā, post diem quartum, quam³ est in Britanniam ventum,⁴ accidit, ut esset lūna plēna,⁵ quī diēs ⁶ maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit; nostrīsque id¹ erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore¹ et longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflīctābat. Complūribus nāvibus² frāctīs, māgna tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent,⁵ et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre,⁵ frūmentum hīs in locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

The British Chieftains plot a Renewal of Hostilities.

VIII. Quibus rēbus ² cōgnitīs, prīncipēs ¹⁰ Britanniae, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent, ¹¹ et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cōgnōscerent, optimum factū ¹² esse dūxērunt, rebelliōne ² factā, frūmentō ¹² commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre, et rem in hiemem prōdūcere, ¹⁴ quod, hīs ² superātīs aut reditū ¹³ interclūsīs, nēminem

^{1 93, 429.}

² Ablative Absolute.

³ Post... quam: on the fourth day after; diem is in the Accusative with the preposition post, and quam is here used as a conjunction with the force of postquam; literally, after the fourth day, after, etc.

^{4 281, 301. 5} This was on the 30th of August.

⁶ Qui dies: which period, or a period which.

⁷ Id: that = this fact, i.e. the fact expressed in $qu\bar{i}$. . . $c\bar{o}nsu\bar{e}vit$.

^{8 123, 500,} I.

⁹ Constabat . . . oportere: hiemārī, used impersonally, is the subject of oportere; 281, 301; oportere is the subject of constabat.

¹⁰ Subject of dūxērunt.

¹¹ Observe mood. 12 246, 547. 13 158, 413.

¹⁴ Rem . . . producere: to protract the war.

posteā bellī īnferendī¹ causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum² cōnfīdēbant.

Caesar Suspects the Plot of the Britons, and Prepares to Meet it.

IX. At Caesar, etsī nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra conferēbat, et quae gravissimē adflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ütēbātur, et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī, ex continentī comportārī jubēbat. Itaque, duodecim nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī posset, effēcit.

The Britons Surprise a Roman Foraging Party. Caesar Hastens to the Rescue.

X. Dum ea geruntur,⁸ legione ūnā frūmentātum ⁹ missā, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspīcione interpositā, iī, quī pro portīs castrorum in statione erant, Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem mājorem, quam consuētūdo ferret,¹⁰ in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem ¹¹ legio iter fēcisset. Caesar suspicātus aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum consiliī,¹² cohortēs, quae in stationibus erant,¹³ sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in stationem cohortēs succēdere,¹⁴ reliquās ar-

² Supply esse. See 140, 204, 2.

⁴ Quae $n\bar{a}v\bar{e}s$, $e\bar{a}rum = e\bar{a}rum \ n\bar{a}vium$, quae. 5 258, 421.

^{6 281, 390;} one of the two Datives, as here, is often omitted, when it would be some word like alicui, to any one.

⁷ Ut . . . posset is the object of effect, 'he made it possible to sail with the rest'; 123, 501. $N\bar{a}vig\bar{a}r\bar{\imath}$, used impersonally, is the subject of posset; 281, 301. 8 Render by imperfect. 9 166, 546.

¹⁰ Quam consuetudo ferret: than usual; literally, than custom bore.

¹¹ Quam in partem; render as if it were in quam.

¹² Aliquid . . . cōnsiliī; aliquid is subject of initum (esse); cōnsiliī is Partitive Genitive after aliquid; 28, 397.

¹³ One cohort guarded each of the four gates of a Roman camp.

¹⁴ Ex . . . succedere: two of the other (six) cohorts to take their place on guard. He could spare only two, instead of four, to guard the gates.

mārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī jussit. Cum paulō longīus ā castrīs prōcessisset,¹ suōs² ab hostibus premī, atque aegrē sustinēre animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō,³ pars ūna⁴ erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs, noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs,⁵ dēpositīs armīs,³ in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs, reliquōs perturbāverant; simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

The Use of War-chariots by the Britons.

Caesar Rescues his Foraging Party. Storms interfere with Military Operations.

XII. Quibus rēbus ¹³ perturbātīs nostrīs ² tempore ¹⁴ opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ējus adventū ¹⁵ nostrī ² sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō ³ factō, ad committendum

¹ Temporal clause. ² See 125, sentence 8. ³ Ablative Absolute. 4 Pars ūna: only one part, i.e. only one place from which grain could be

⁴ Pars una: only one part, i.e. only one place from which grain could be obtained.

⁵ Dispersos; this participle, like occupatos, agrees with nostros, to be supplied as the object of adorti; while scattered, etc.

^{6 291, 542. 7} Höc est: is as follows.

⁸ Ipsō . . . equōrum: by the very terror caused by their horses.

⁹ Temporal clause.

¹⁰ Illi, i.e. the warriors, in distinction from the drivers, aurigae.

^{11 127, 529,} II. 12 123, 500, II. 13 78, 420. 14 93, 429.

¹⁵ 185, 425, 1.

proelium¹ aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, brevī tempore² intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs³ tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent,⁴ et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent.

The Britons Combine, and March upon the Roman Camp, but Suffer a total Defeat.

XIII. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmisērunt, paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt, et quanta in perpetuum suī līberandī ⁵ facultās darētur, ⁶ sī Rōmānōs castrīs ⁷ expulissent, ⁸ dēmōnstravērunt. Hīs rēbus ⁹ celeriter māgnā multitūdine ² peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt. Caesar legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō, ² nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt, āc terga vertērunt. Quōs secūtī, complūrēs ex iīs occīdērunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs ² incēnsīs, sē in castra recēpērunt.

The Britons Sue for Peace. Caesar Returns to the Continent.

XIV. Eōdem diē ¹⁰ lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs ¹¹ Caesar numerum obsidum, quem anteā imperāverat, duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī jussit. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus nāvēs solvit, quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt.

¹ 291, 543.

² Ablative Absolute.

⁸ 98, 379. ⁴ 123, 500, I.

⁵ Suī līberandī: of freeing themselves; literally, of the freeing of themselves. Suī is in the Genitive plural after līberandī, according to Rule XVI., 28, 395. The Gerund usually governs the same case as the verb, but sometimes, by virtue of its substantive nature, it governs the Genitive, especially the Genitive of personal pronouns, meī, nostrī, tuī, vestrī, and suī.

^{6 127, 529,} I.

⁷ 153, 413.

^{8 127, 529,} II.

⁹ 78, 420.

^{10 93, 429.}

¹¹ **54**, 384, II.

SUGGESTIONS ON EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION.

No exercises for Translation into Latin are given in connection with these passages of connected narrative, but it is not intended that this important subject should be neglected. The pupil may now begin Part II. of the "Introduction to Latin Composition"; but an exercise as often as once a week or once a fortnight is recommended, to be prepared by the teacher, and based upon some passage of the Latin which the pupils have read. At first the pupils may be permitted to make their translation with the aid of the Latin, but the plan should be adopted early, of assigning the passage to be committed to memory by the pupil, and then requiring the translation into Latin within the hour assigned for the exercise, with no aid but the pupil's memory and the knowledge that he has acquired of the language. The following exercise, based upon paragraph II., page 282, is given simply as an illustration.

Translate into Latin.

Caesar says that in the consulship of Messala, Orgetorix, a chieftain $(pr\bar{\imath}nceps^1)$ of very high birth and of great wealth, persuaded the Helvetii to emigrate from their country. The territory of this tribe $(g\bar{e}ns)$ was very limited for its population, and it was separated from the adjacent countries (terra) by high mountains and deep rivers. The Rhine hemmed them in on one side, Mount Jura on another, and on a third the Lake of Geneva and the Rhone. Thus (itaque) the warlike $(bellic\bar{o}sus)$ Helvetii were not able readily to carry on war against their neighbors.

¹ Words not occurring in the Latin passage may be furnished to the pupil, but in general he should be expected to give familiar words without aid.

SUGGESTIONS TO THE LEARNER.

- I. The preparation of a reading lesson in Latin involves:
- 1. An exact comprehension of the thought expressed in the original.
- 2. An appropriate expression of that thought in an English translation.

MEANING OF THE LATIN.

- II. In preparing your lessons take special note, from the outset, of the more obvious difference between the Latin and the English.
- III. The Latin gives new names to persons and things already familiar to you. Therefore store your memory as rapidly as possible with these new names. Learn the vocabularies so thoroughly that you will be able, not only to give with promptness either the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English, but also, what is of supreme importance, to recognize the full meaning in the Latin word itself, without any thought of the English. It is not enough to find English equivalents for Latin words. In your vocabulary, Latin nouns must represent not mere words, but real persons and things; AGRICOLA, not the English word husbandman, but the husbandman himself, not the name, but the man.
- IV. Remember that the full meaning of an inflected word can seldom be ascertained from the dictionary alone. Every word of this kind has a significant ending, which

261

gives it an important part of its meaning. Therefore make yourself so familiar with all the endings of inflection, whether in declension or conjugation, that you will readily distinguish not only the different parts of speech, but also the different forms of the same word.

V. But these endings of inflection should not only enable you to distinguish the parts of speech, should not only tell you the cases of nouns, and the voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons of verbs, but they should also give you the exact meaning of all these forms. The meaning is what you must have. It will be of little use to you to know that a verb is in the Imperfect tense, for instance, unless you also know what that tense really means, what it really tells you about the action of the verb.

VI. Again, the dictionary and the grammar combined often fail to meet the needs of the student. If I tell you that $r\bar{e}g\bar{e}s$ is the first word in a sentence, and then ask you to give me its full and exact meaning, I require an absolute impossibility. The most learned Roman that ever lived could not answer the question. The dictionary can only tell you that the general idea is that designated by our word king, while the grammar informs you that reges is in the plural number, and that the form may be found in the Nominative, Accusative or Vocative. It will also tell you that, if it is in the Nominative, it may be the subject of an action, an appositive, or a predicate Nominative; that if it is in the Accusative, it may be the object of an action, an appostive, a predicate Accusative, or the subject of an infinitive; and that, if it is in the Vocative, it is used as a form of address; but neither the dictionary nor the grammar can tell you which case it is, or which one of these numerous meanings it actually has. How, then, can you ever ascertain what it really means? Simply by the light which the subsequent words in the sentence will cast upon it.

I now give you the second word in the sentence, sententiam, and you have rēgēs sententiam. Can you tell the meaning of these words, or of either of them? Sententiam must be an Accusative, but as that case may be variously used, its special force in this sentence is still uncertain. The Accusative sententiam, however, makes it probable that rēgēs is not an Accusative, but either a Nominative or a Vocative. I add probant and thus complete the thought: Rēgēs sententiam probant. Notice now the effect of this last word upon the meaning of the sentence. It shows that the Accusative sententiam, which of itself might have various meanings, is here simply the object of the action and that rēgēs, which at first covered such a variety of cases is simply the subject of the action. We are now prepared to translate: The kings approve the opinion.

VII. From the example just given, observe to what an extent the meaning of a word is determined by the connection in which it is used. Standing alone it may perhaps be any one of three or four cases but as soon as it is combined with other words in a sentence, it stands revealed in the clearest light as a single case with a definite and distinct meaning. Accordingly, in all your reading, as each successive word meets your eye, let it be your unfailing rule to study its effect upon the meaning of the sentence, to observe the light which it throws upon the words that precede it and the light which it in turn will derive from those which are to follow; to observe, in fine, how the thought is gradually unfolded.

VIII. In taking up a Latin sentence remember that your object is not primarily to translate it, but to understand and appreciate the thought in the original. This should be done, not only without translating it, but even without thinking of the corresponding English words. To this end, you will find it helpful to read over your Latin exercises,

especially the longer passages, somewhat frequently, with the special purpose of appreciating and enjoying the thought in its original form. Under this treatment, the Latin constructions so strange to the beginner, will soon be found to be entirely simple and natural, and the language will in time become a second vernacular, and you will then enjoy fine thoughts in Latin as you enjoy them in English.

IX. But if you would fully appreciate the thoughts of a Latin writer, you must take his words in the order in which he wrote them. The arrangement of the words is an essential part of a Latin sentence and one of the means by which its meaning may be most successfuly reached. The Latin order, more flexible than the English, allows a much larger scope for emphasis, and thus shows the relative importance of the several words. In general the subject and its verb, so essential to the thought, are assigned important places, the former at the beginning and the latter at the end of the sentence, yet other words when especially emphatic may occupy either of these positions.

X. Finally, never attempt to translate a Latin sentence until you clearly comprehend the exact thought in the original. The habit of starting off blindly to render separate words without any conception of the thought which they are intended to express is fatal to all high scholarship. Therefore, make it your first and chief object to ascertain the exact thought contained in the sentence. To accomplish this object, you will need to attend to the following particulars:

1. The general meaning of the several words as given in the vocabulary.

2. Their more definite meaning as determined by their endings.

3. The exact sense which they assume in consequence of the connection in which they are used.

XI. In the use of the Dictionary, remember that you are to look, not for the particular form which occurs in the sentence, but for the Nominative Singular of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and for the First Person Singular, Present Indicative Active of Verbs. Therefore

1. In Pronouns, make yourself so familiar with their declension that any oblique case will at once suggest the Nom-

inative Singular.

2. In Nouns and Adjectives, make yourself so familiar with the case-endings, that you will be able to drop that of the given case, and substitute for it that of the Nominative Singular.

3. In verbs, change the ending of the given form into that of the First Person Singular of the Present Indicative

Active.

TRANSLATION.

XII. In translating, render as literally as possible without doing violence to the English.

In many important idioms of the Latin, a literal translation not only would fail to do justice to the original, but also would be a gross perversion of the mother-tongue. The following suggestions are intended to aid the pupil in disposing of such cases; but even in these, it is earnestly recommended that he should first construe literally, in order that he may be made to feel the force of the Latin construction before attempting a translation.

Participles.

XIII. These are much more extensively used in Latin than in English; hence the frequent necessity, in translating them, of deviating from the Latin construction. They may generally be rendered in some one of the following ways 1 (291, 549).

¹ The pupil must early learn to determine from the context the appropriate rendering in each instance.

1. Literally:

Pyrrhus proeliō fūsus ā Tarentō recessit, Pyrrhus having been defeated in battle withdrew from Tarentum.

2. By a Relative Clause:

Omnes aliud agentes, aliud simulantes improbi sunt, all who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest.

- 3. By a Clause with a Conjunction:
- 1) With a Conjunction of Time, while, when, after, etc. Ūva mātūrāta dulcēscit, the grape when it has ripened (having ripened), becomes sweet.
- 2) With a Conjunction of Cause, Reason, Manner, as, for, since, etc.

Milites perfidiam veriti reverterunt, the soldiers returned, because they feared perfidy.

3) With a Conjunction of Condition, — if.

Accūsātus damnābitur, if he is accused he will be condemned.

- 4) With a Conjunction of Concession,—though, although.
 Urbem ācerrimē dēfēnsam cēpit, he took the city, though it was valiantly defended, or though valiantly defended.
 - 4. By a Verbal Noun:

Ad Rōmam conditam, to the founding of Rome; literally, to Rome founded. Ab urbe conditā, from the founding of the city. Post rēgēs exāctōs, after the expulsion of the kings.

5. By a Verb:

Rex et benigne recepto filiam dedit, the king received him kindly and gave him his daughter; literally, gave his daughter to him kindly received.

XIV. Participles with $n\bar{o}n$ or nihil are sometimes best rendered by Purticipial nouns dependent upon without:

Non ridens, without laughing.

XV. Future Participles are sometimes best rendered by *Infinitives*, or by *Participial Nouns* with *for the purpose of*:

Rediit belli cāsum tentātūrus, he returned to try (about to try) the fortune of war.

XVI. The Ablative Absolute is sometimes best rendered (1) by a Clause with—when, while, after, for, since, if, though, etc., (2) by a Noun with a Preposition,—in, during, after, by, from, through, etc., or (3) by an Active Participle with its Object:

Serviō rēgnante, while Servius reigned, or in the reign of Servius (literally, Servius reigning). Duce Fabiō, under the command of

Fabius (literally, Fabius being commander).

Sometimes, as in the last example, a word denoting the doer of an action can be best rendered by the word which denotes the thing done. Thus, instead of commander, consul, king, we have command, consulship, reign.

Subjunctive.

XVII. This may be rendered as follows:

1. With the Potential signs, may, might, would, should, or with let.

Forsitan quaerātis, perhaps you may inquire. Hoc nēmo dīxerit, no one would say this.

2. By the English Indicative. This is generally the best rendering

1) In clauses denoting Cause or Time, as after cum, quod,

quia, quoniam, etc.

Cum vīta metūs plēna sit, since life is full of fear. Cum Romam vēnisset, when he had come to Rome.

2) In Indirect Questions (127, 529, I.):

Quaeritur, cur dissentiant, it is asked why they disagree.

3) In the Subjunctive in Indirect Clauses (127, 529, II.): Vereor, nē, dum minuere velim labōrem, augeam, I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it.

4) In the Subordinate Clauses of Indirect Discourse (262, 524):

Hippiās glōriātus est ānulum quem habēret sē suā manū cōnfēcisse, Hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore (had).

5) In Relative Clauses defining indefinite antecedents, and sometimes in clauses denoting *result* (123, 503, 500, 501):

Sunt qui putent, there are some who think. Ita vixit ut Athēniēnsibus esset cārissimus, he so lived, that he was very dear to the Athenians.

6) Sometimes in Conditional and Concessive clauses, and in clauses with *Quīn* and *Quōminus* (250, 560, 254, 515, 123, 500, II., 119, 497, II.):

Dum metuant, if only (provided) they fear. Sī voluisset, dīmicāsset, if he had wished, he would have fought. Ut dēsint vīrēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās, though the strength fails, still the will should be approved. Adest nēmō, quīn videat, there is no one present who does not see.

- 3. By the Infinitive. This is often the best rendering
- 1) In Clauses denoting Purpose (119, 497):

Contendit ut vincat, he strives to conquer (that he may conquer). Decemvirī creātī sunt qui lēgēs scriberent, decemvirs were appointed to prepare the laws (who should prepare).

2) In Clauses denoting Result: hence after $d\bar{\imath}gnus$, indignus, $id\bar{\imath}oneus$, aptus, etc. (123, 500, 503):

Non is sum qui his ūtar, I am not such a one as to use (he who may use) these things. Fābulae dīgnae sunt quae legantur, the fables are worthy to be read (which, or that they, should be read).

Infinitive.

XVIII. The Infinitive has a much more extensive use in Latin than in English. The following points require notice.

1. The Infinitive with a Subject is rendered by a *Finite* verb with *that*:

Dïxit së rëgem vidisse, he said that he had seen the king.

2. The Historical Infinitive ² is rendered by the Imperfect Indicative:

Īram pater dissimulāre, the father concealed his anger.

¹ Observe, however, that the Infinitive here is not the translation of the Subjunctive alone, but of the Subjunctive with its subject and connective; ut vincat, to conquer (literally, that he may conquer); qui utar, as to use (literally, who should or may use).

² In lively descriptions the Present Infinitive is sometimes used for the *Imperfect* or the *Perfect Indicative*. It is then called the Historical Infinitive, and, like a finite verb, has its subject in the Nominative.

3. The Infinitive is sometimes best rendered by a Participial noun with of, with, etc.

Insimulatur mysteria violasse, he is accused of having violated the mysteries.

Miscellaneous Idioms.

XIX. The following Miscellaneous Idioms are added:

1. Certiorem facere should be rendered, to inform, and certior fieri, to be informed:

Caesar certior factus est, Caesar was informed.

2. Inter se, literally between themselves, is often best rendered, from each other, from one another, to each other, to one another, together.

Omnës inter së differunt, they all differ from one another.

3. Ne—quidem, with one or more words between the parts, should be rendered, not even, or even—not:

Në nömen quidem, not even the name.

4. When two or more verbs stand together in the same compound tense, the copula (sum) is generally expressed with the last only, but in rendering, the copula should be expressed with the first only:

Captus et in vincula cojectus est, he was taken and thrown into chains.

5. Quantō — tantō, literally, by as much as — by so much, is often best rendered before comparatives, the — the:

Quantō diūtius cōnsīderō, tantō rēs vidētur obscūrior, the longer (by as much as the longer) I consider the subject, the more obscure (by so much the more obscure) does it appear.

6. A Clause with quōminus, 'by which the less,' or 'that the less,' may generally be rendered by a Clause with that, by the Infinitive, or by a Participial noun with from.

Per eum stetit quōminus dīmicārētur, it was owing to him (stood through him) that the engagement was not made. Nōn recūsāvit quōminus poenam subīret, he did not refuse to submit to punishment. Rēgem impediit quōminus pūgnāret, he prevented the king from fighting.

ABBREVIATIONS,

abl. ablative. accusative. acc. adj. adjective. adv. adverb. comparative. comp. conj. conjunction. feminine. f. gen. genitive. impersonal. impers. indef. indefinite. interjection. interi. interrog. interrogative. literally. lit.

masculine. m. neuter. n. nom. nominative. p. page. part. participle. pers. personal. plural. pl. pos. positive. prep. preposition. pron. pronoun. sing. singular. sup. superlative. with. w.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A

A, ab. prep. w. abl. From; by, in the direction of; on.

Abeō, īre, iī, itum. To go away, depart.

Abstineō, ēre, uī, tentum. To abstain, refrain. Abstain.¹

Absum, esse, āfuī. To be absent, distant. Absent.

Abundō, āre, āvī, ātum. To abound, to be well supplied with. Abound.

Āc, conj. And.

Acceptus, a, um, part and adj. Acceptable. Accept.

Accidō, ere, ī. To fall to, befall, happen; accidit, it happens, comes to pass; 281, 301. Ac-CIDENT.

Accipio, ere, cēpī, ceptum. To accept, receive, take, admit. Accept.

Accommodatus, a, um, part. and adj. Fitted, adapted. Accommodate.

Accurro, ere, curri and cucurri, cursum. To run to, hasten to. Accūsātio, onis, f. Accusation. Accūsātor, ōris, m. Accuser. Accuser. Accuser.

Accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum. To accuse, censure, upbraid. Accuse.

Ācer, ācris, ācre. Sharp, severe.
Aciēs, ēī, f. Edge, line; line of
battle; aciem īnstruere, to form
the line of battle.

Ācriter, adv. Sharply, briskly, severely, vigorously, violently, harshly; ācriter pūgnātur, a severe battle is fought; 281,301. Acūtus, a, um, part. and adj.

Sharpened, sharp.

Ad, prep. w. acc. To, toward, for; at, on, near, in the vicinity of; till, until; according to.

Adamō, āre, āvī, ātum. To be greatly pleased with, to like very much.

Addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum. To lead to, lead, bring, induce. Adduce.

Adeō, īre, iī, itum. To go to, arrive at, reach, visit.

Adequitō, āre, āvī, ātum. To ride toward, ride.

Adfició, ere, fēcī, fectum. To affect, visit. AFFECT.

¹ The words thus added to the definition in SMALL CAPITALS are such as from their form readily suggest the corresponding Latin word.

Adfinitās, ātis, f. Connection, relationship. Affinity.

Adflictō, āre, āvī, ātum. To trouble; to strand. Affilict. Adflīgō, ere, flīxī, flīctum. To

crush, damage. Afflict. Adhūc, adv. Hitherto, as yet,

Adhüc, adv. Hitherto, as yet, thus far.

Adigō, ere, ēgī, āctum. To drive, impel, hurl, throw.

Aditus, ūs, m. Approach.

Adjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctum. To join, add, unite. Adjoin.

Administrö, äre, ävi, ätum. To administer, manage, execute, direct, perform. Administer.

Admittō, ere, mīsī, missum. To send to, send on, let go, admit; to commit; equō admissō, with his horse at full speed. Admit.

Adorior, īrī, ortus sum. To rise upon, attack.

Aduātucī, ōrum, m. pl. The Aduatuci, a tribe of northern Gaul.

Adulēscēns, entis, m. and f. Youth, young man, young woman. Adolescence.

Adventus, ūs, m. Approach, arrival. Advent.

Aedificium, ii, n. Building, house. Edifice.

Aedificō, āre, āvī, ātum. To build. Edifice.

Aeduī, ōrum, m. pl. The Aedui or Aeduans, a tribe of central Gaul.

Aeduus, a, um. Aeduan; Aeduus, ī, m., an Aeduan, one of the Aedui.

Aegrē, adv. With difficulty, hardly, scarcely.

Aequitās, ātis, f. Fairness, calmaness, kindness. Equity.

Aes, aeris, n. Bronze, copper.

Aestās, ātis, f. Summer.

Aestus, ūs, m. Tide. ESTUARY. Aetās, ātis, f. Age.

Agedincum, i, n. Agedincum, a town in central Gaul.

Ager, agrī, m. Field; agrī, pl., fields, lands, country.

Aggredior, i, gressus sum. To attack, assail. Aggression.

Agmen, inis, n. Army on the march, line of march; extremum agmen, the extremity of the line, the rear; novissimum agmen, the rear; primum agmen. the van.

Agō, ere, ēgī, āctum. To lead, drive; to do, act, perform; to treat, plead, discourse, argue; grātiās agere, to return thanks, thank. Act.

Agricola, ae, m. Husbandman, farmer. AGRICULTURE.

Alces, is, f. Elk.

Alesia, ae, f. Alesia, a town in central Gaul.

Aliënus, a, um. Another's; unfavorable, unsuitable. ALIEN.

Aliquamdiū, adv. For a time.

Aliquis, qua, quid and quod. Any, any one.

Alius, a, ud. 45, 151. Other, another. Alias.

Allobroges, um, m. pl., sing.
Allobrox, ogis. The Allobroges, a tribe of southeastern Gaul.

Alō, ere, aluī, alitum and altum. To nourish, support.

Alpēs, ium, f. pl. Alps.

Alter, tera, terum. 45, 151. The other of two, second.

Altitūdŏ, inis, f. Height, depth.

Amīcitia, ae, f. Friendship. Amīcus, a, um. Friendly; amīcus, i, m., friend. AMICABLE. Amittō, ere, mīsī, missum.

lose.

Amō, āre, āvī, ātum. To love.

Amor, ōris, m. Love.

Amplus, a, um. Ample, much. AMPLE.

An, conj. Or.

Anceps, ancipitis. Double, twofold; doubtful, undecided.

Ancora, ae, f. Anchor.

Angustiae, ārum, f. pl. Narrowness; narrow pass, defile.

Angustus, a, um. Narrow; limited, contracted; steep.

Animadvertō, ere, ī, sum. turn the attention to, observe, notice. Animadvert.

Animal, ālis, n. Animal.

Animus, i, m. Mind, heart, soul. Annus, i, m. Year. Annual. Annual, a, um. Annual, yearly,

annually, for a year. Annual. Ante, adv., and prep. w. acc.

Before: ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs, the 28th of March.

Anteā, adv. Before, formerly, previously.

Antequam, conj. Before.

Antiquus, a, um. Ancient, old, former. ANTIQUE.

 \bar{A} nulus, \bar{i} , m. Ring.

Apertus, a, um, part. and adj. Open, exposed.

Appello, āre, āvī, ātum. To call. APPEAL.

Appetō, ere, īvī or iī, ītum. seek after, seek. Appetite.

Appropinguo, are, avi, atum. To approach.

Aprīlis, e. Of April; ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs, the 28th of March.

Apud, prep. w. acc. In the presence of, near, among, in, with, in the vicinity of; in the works of. Aquila, ae, f. Eagle, the stand-

ard of the legion.

Aquileia, ae, f. Aquileia, a town in northern Italy.

Stundard-Aquilifer, erī, m. bearer.

Aquitani, orum, m. pl. The Aquitani or Aquitanians, the inhabitants of the southwestern division of Gaul.

Arar, aris, m. 128. The Arar, a river in southeastern Gaul, now the Saône.

Arbitror, ārī, ātus sum. To think. ARBITRATE.

Arcēssō, ere, sīvī or siī, sītum. To summon, invite.

Ārdeō, ēre, ārsī, ārsum. To burn; to be ardent, be eager. Ander. Āridum, ī, n. Dry land. ARID. Ariovistus, a Ariovistus, \bar{i} , m.

king of the Germans. Arma, ōrum, n. pl. Arms.

Armō, āre, āvī, ātum. To arm.

Arō, āre, āvī, ātum. To plough. Arrogantia, ae, f. Arrogance.

Arte, adv. Closely; soundly.

Artemisia, Artemisia, ae, f. queen of Caria.

Artificium, ii, n. Artifice.

Arvernī, ōrum, m. pl. The Arverni, a tribe of southern Gaul. Arx, arcis, f. Citadel. cend. To as-Ascendo, ere, i, censum. At, conj. But, yet.

Athenae, arum, f. pl. Athens. Athēniensis, is, m. and f. Athenian.

Atque, coni. And. Atticus, i, m. Atticus, a Roman

name.

Attingo, ere, tigi, tactum. Totouch, reach.

Author, ad-Auctor, ōris, m. vocate.

Auctoritas, ātis, f. Authority, influence, reputation.

Audācia, ae, f. Audacity, boldness. AUDACITY.

Audacter, adv. Boldly. AUDA-

Audeō, ēre, ausus sum. To dare, venture.

Audiō, īre, ĭvī or iī, ītum. Tohear, hear of. AUDIENCE.

Augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum. Toaugment, increase.

Aureus, a, um. Golden, gold.

Auriga, ae, m. Charioteer, driver. Aurum, i. n. Gold.

Aut, conj. Either, or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.

Autem, 1 conj. But.

Auxilium, ii, n. Aid, help; auxilia, pl., auxiliaries.

Avāritia, ae, f. Avarice.

Āvertō, ere, ī, sum. To turn aside, turn away; āversus, turned away, in retreat, retreating. AVERT.

Avis, is, f. Bird. Avus, ī, m. Grandfather.

B.

Barbarus, a, um. Barbarous. rude; barbarus, ī, m., a barbarian. Barbarous.

Beātus, a. um. Blessed, happy. prosperous.

Belgae, ārum, m. pl. The Belgae or Belgians, the inhabitants of the northern division of Gaul.

Bellicõsus, a, um. Warlike.

Bello, āre, āvī, ātum. To war, wage war, carry on war.

Bellovacī, ōrum, m. pl. The Bellovaci, a tribe of northwestern Ganl.

Bellum, \bar{i} , n, War,

Beneficium, ii, n. Benefit, favor. BENEFICE.

Bibracte, is, n. Bibracte, the chief town of the Aedui.

Bibrax, actis, n. Bibrax, a town of the Remi.

Biennium, ii, n. Two years, space of two years. BIENNIAL.

Biturigēs, um, m. pl. The Bituriges, a tribe of central Gaul.

Boii, orum, m. pl. The Boii, a tribe of central Gaul.

Bonitās, ātis, f. Goodness, excellence.

Bonus, a, um. 86, 165. Good.

Brevis, e. Short, brief. Breviter, adv. Briefly.

Britanni, örum, m. pl. Britons. Britannia, ae, f. Britain.

Brūtus, i. m. Brutus, a Roman name.

¹ Autem is postpositive, i.e. it is placed after one or more words in its elause.

C.

Cabillonum, i, n. Cabillonum, a town in eastern Gaul.

Cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum. To fall. Caedēs, is, f. Slaughter.

Caesar, aris, m. Caesar, the celebrated general, statesman, and author.

Calamitās, ātis, f. Calamity, disaster. Calamity.

Cantium, ii, n. Kent.

Cantus, ūs, m. Singing, song.

Capillus, ī, m. Hair. CAPILLARY. Capiō, ere, cēpī, captum. To take; cōnsilium capere, to take counsel, form a plan.

Captīvus, ī, m. Captive.

Caput, itis, n. Head. Capital. Cāria, ae, f. Caria, a country in Asia Minor.

Carīna, ae, f. Keel, bottom of a vessel.

Carō, carnis, f. Flesh. CARNAL. Carrus, ī, m. Cart, wagon.

Cārus, a, um. Dear.

Cassius, iī, m. Cassius, a Roman name.

Castellum, i, n. Redoubt. Cas-

Casticus, ī, m. Casticus, a Sequanian chieftain.

Castra, ōrum, n. pl. Camp.

Cāsus, ūs, m. Accident, occurrence, emergency, vicissitude, fortune.

Catena, ae, f. Chain.

Cato, onis, m. Cato, a Roman name.

Causa, ae, f. Cause, reason; causā, for the sake, purpose. Cecidī. See cadō.

Celeritäs, ātis, f. Celerity, speed. Celerity.

Celeriter, adv. Quickly, speedily. Celerity.

Celtae, ārum, m. pl. Celts, the inhabitants of the central division of Gaul.

Cēnsus, ūs, m. Census, enumeration.

Centum, indeclinable. Hundred. Centuriŏ, ōnis, m. Centurion.

Certe, adv. Certainly, at least.
CERTAIN.

Certus, a, um. Certain, fixed, appointed; certiorem facere, to make more certain; to inform. CERTAIN.

Cevenna, ae, m. Cevenna, a mountain range in southern Gaul, now the Cévennes.

Ciceró, ōnis, m. Cicero; (1) the celebrated orator; (2) a lieutenant under Caesar.

Circiter, adv., and prep. w. acc. About.

Circum, prep. w. acc. Around, about, near, in the vicinity of.

Circumdō, are, dedī, datum. To place around; to surround.
Circummūniō, īre, īvī, ītum. To

wall around, to surround.

Circumsistō, ere, stitī. To stand around, surround.

Cis, prep. w. acc. On this side of Citerior, us, comp. adj., sup. citimus. Nearer; Gallia citerior, the Roman province of Gaut south of the Alps, Cisalpine Gaul.

Citrā, prep. w. acc. On this side of.

Cīvis, is, m. and f. Citizen.

Cīvitās, ātis, f. State; citizens; citizenship.

Clāmitō, āre, āvī, ātum. To exclaim, cry out.

Clāmor, ōris, m. Shout.

Clārus, a, um. Clear; illustrious, renowned. CLEAR.

Clāssis, is, f. Fleet.

Claudō, ere, sī, sum. To close, shut. Close.

Clēmentia, ae, f. Clemency, mercy. CLEMENCY.

Cliëns, entis, m. and f. Client, dependant. CLIENT.

Coëmō, ere, ēmī, ēmptum. To buy up, buy, purchase, obtain by purchase.

Coepī, isse. 1 To begin.

Coërceō, ēre, uī, itum. To restrain, control. Coerce.

Cōgnōscō, ere, nōvī, itum. To ascertain.

Cōgō, ere, ēgī, āctum. To drive together, bring together, collect; to force, compel.

Cohors, ortis, f. Cohort, a tenth of a legion.

 $\begin{array}{ll} {\bf Cohort\bar{a}ti\bar{o},\,\bar{o}nis,\it f.} & {\it Exhortation,} \\ {\it encouragement.} \end{array}$

Cohortor, ārī, ātus sum. To exhort, encourage.

Cōiciō,² ere, jēcī, jectum. To throw, hurl, cast.

Collis, is, m. Hill.

Colloco, ăre, avi, atum. To place, station. Collocate.

Colloquium, ii, n. Conversation, conference, interview. Collo-Quy.

Colonia, ae, f. Colony.

Combūrō, ere, ussī, ūstum. To burn up, burn. Combustion.

Comes, itis, m. and f. Companion.

Commeātus, ūs, m. Supplies, provisions.

Commemorātiō, ōnis, f. Mentioning, mention, rememberance. Commemoration.

Commemorō, āre, āvī, ātum. To mention; to speak. Commemo-RATE.

Commeo, āre, āvī, ātum. To go back and forth, resort.

Commīlitō, ōnis, m. and f. Fellow-soldier.

Committō, ere, mīsī, missum. To commit; proelium committere, to engage in battle.

Commius, ii, m. Commius, a chieftain of the Atrebates.

Commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum. to move, disturb, alarm. Commotion.

Commūniō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum.

To wall around, encompass,
surround.

Commūnis, e. Common, general; commūnis rēs, common interest.

Comparō, āre, āvī, ātum. To prepare, raise.

Compello, ere, pulī, pulsum. To drive. Compel.

Compleo, ēre, ēvī, ētum. To fill, cover. Complete.

Complūrės, plūra or plūria. Very many, many, several.

¹ Not used in the Present system.

² Pronounced as if spelled *cõjiciõ*.

Comportō, āre, āvī, ātum. To bring together, gather.

constum, i, n. Undertaking, attempt, purpose.

Concedo, ere, cessi, cessum. To concede, grant, permit. Concede.

Concidō, ere, ī. To fall.

Concidō, ere, ī, sum. To cut down, destroy, kill, slay.

Conciliō, āre, āvī, ātum. To win, secure. Conciliate.

Concilium, ii, n. Council, meeting. Council.

Conclāmō, āre, āvī, ātum. To shout, call out.

Concursus, ūs, m. Running together, running about, running to and fro, agitation. Concourse.

Condōnō, āre, āvī, ātum. To condone, pardon, forgive. Condone.

Condūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum. To lead together. Conduct.

Confero, ferre, contuli, collatum.

To carry together, bring together, gather, collect. Confer.

Confertus, a, um. Dense, crowded, compact.

Confestim, adv. Hastily, speedily.

Conficio, ere, feci, fectum. To make out, make, complete, accomplish, finish, bring to a close.

Confido, ere, fisus sum. 1 To trust, be confident; to have confidence in, rely upon. Confide. (Followed by the Ablative or by the Dative.)

Confirmo, are, avi, atum. To confirm, strengthen, establish, assure, fix; to comfort. Confirm.

Confligo, ere, flixi, flictum. To contend, fight. Conflict.

Conjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctum.

To join, unite. Conjoin.

Conjūnx, ugis, m. and f. Spouse; husband; wife.

Conjūrātiō, ōnis, f. Conspiracy. Conjūrō, āre, āvī, ātum. To conspire.

Conor, ārī, ātus sum. To attempt,

Conquirō, ere, sīvī or siī, sītum. To search for, seek.

Conscius, a, um. Conscious, aware. Conscious.

Conscribo, ere, scripsi, scriptum.

To enrol, enlist. Conscript.

Consequor, i, secutus sum. To pursue, follow, overtake.

Conservo, are, avi, atum. To save, preserve, spare. Conserve.

Considius, ii, m. Considius, an officer in Caesar's army.

Consido, ere, sedi, sessum. To sit down, settle, post one's self, encamp.

Consilium, ii, n. Counsel, plan. Counsel.

Consimilis, e. Similar, like.

Consisto, ere, stitī, stitum. To get a footing, stand firm. Consist. Conspectus, ūs, m. Sight, view.

Conspicuous.

Cōnspiciō, ere, spēxī, spectum.

To behold. Conspicuous.

Constanter, adv. Consistently, uniformly. Constant.

Constantia, ae, f. Constancy, steadfastness. Constancy.

Constituo, ere, ui, utum. To station, place; to determine, decide. Constitute.

Consto, are, stiti, statum. To stand firm; to be established, be evident, be plain, be manifest, be admitted. Constant.

Consuesco, ere, suevi, suetum. To become accustomed; consuevi, I have become accustomed, I am accustomed.

Consuetūdo, inis, f. Custom, usage.

Consul, ulis, m. Consul, one of the two presidents of the Roman commonwealth.

Jonsulo, ere, ui, sultum. To consult.

Consulto, are, avī, atum. To consult.

Consultum, i, n. Decree.

Contendō, ere, ī, tentum. To contend; to hasten. Contend.

Contentus, a, um. Content, contented, satisfied. Content.

Continent, entis, f. Continent, mainland. Continent.

Continenter, adv. Continually, incessantly.

Contineō, ēre, uī, tentum. To retain, restrain, confine, keep, enclose, surround. Contain.

Continuus, a, um. Continuous, successive. Continuous.

Contrā, adv., and prep. w. acc. Against, contrary to, over against, opposite, in opposition. Contrary.

Contrahō, ere, traxī, tractum.

To contract.

Controversia, ae, f. Controversy, dispute. Controversy.

Conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum. To come together, meet, come. Convene.

Conventus, ūs, m. Convention, meeting, assembly, council. Convention.

Convertō, ere, ī, sum. To turn, change. Convert.

Convocō, āre, āvī, ātum. To call together, assemble. Convoke.

Cōpia, ae, f. Abundance, supply, number; pl., supplies; forces, troops. Copious.

Cōpiōsus, a, um. Well-supplied, wealthy. Copious.

Corōna, ae, f. Crown, garland. Crown.

Cotīdiānus, a, um. Daily.

Cotīdiē, adv. Daily.

Cotta, ae, m. Cotta, a lieutenant under Caesar.

Crassus, ī, m. Crassus, a Roman name.

Crēber, bra, brum. Frequent.

Crēdō, ere, didī, ditum. To beż lieve. Creed. (Followed by the Dative.)

Creō, āre, āvī, ātum. To create, make, appoint, elect. CREATE. Crūdēlis. e. Cruel.

Crūdeliter, adv. Cruelly.

Culpa, ae, f. Fault, blame. Cul-

Cultus, üs, m. Cultivation, refinement, civilization.

Cum, prep. w. abl. With.

Cum, conj. When, while; since, as; although.

Cunctor, ārī, ātus sum. To hesi-

Cupide, adv. Eagerly.

Cupidus, a, um. Desirous.

Cupiō, ere, īvī or iī, ītum. To desire.

Cur, conj. Why.

Cūra, ae, f. Care.

Cūrō, āre, āvī, ātum. To care, care for; aliquid faciendum cūrō, to have a thing done.

Currus, ūs, m. Chariot.

Cūstodio, īre, īvī or iī, ītum. To guard. Custody.

 $C\bar{y}rus$, \bar{i} , m. Cyrus, king of Persia.

D.

Dē, prep. w. abl. Of, from; about, in regard to, concerning; in the course of; for.

Dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum. To owe; ought. Debt.

Decem, indeclinable. Ten; decem novem, nineteen.

Dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum. To decide, decree.

Dēcertō, āre, āvī, ātum. To contend, struggle, fight.

Decimus, a, um. Tenth. Deci-MAL. [sion.

Dēcrētum, i, n. Decree, deci-Dēditio, onis, f. Surrender.

Dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum. To lead forth, conduct. Deduce. Dēfendō, ere, ī, fēnsum. To de-

fend.

Dëfënsor, oris, m. Defender.

Dēfessus, a, um. Tired, exhausted, weary.

Dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. To fail, to be insufficient. DEFI-CIENT.

Deinde, adv. Then, in the next place.

Dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātum. To delight, please.

Dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum. To destroy. Dēlīberō, āre, āvī, ātum. To deliberate.

Dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctum. To choose, elect, select.

Dēligō, āre, āvī, ātum. To fasten, moor.

Dēlitēscō, ere, lituī. To hide.

Dēmetō, ere, messuī, messum. To cut down, reap.

Dēminuō, ere, uī, ūtum. To diminish, lessen.

Dēmonstro, āre, āvī, ātum. To demonstrate, show. Demon-STRATE.

Dēmum, adv. At length.

Dēnique, adv. Finally, at length. Dēpōnō, ere, posuī, positum. To lay down, lay aside. DEPOSE.

Dēpopulor, ārī, ātus sum. To ravage, lay waste. DEPOPULATE.

Dēprecātor, ōris, m. Pleader, spokesman, agent; eō dēprecātōre, by his intercession. Deprecated TE.

Dēsīgnō, āre, āvī, ātum. To designate, indicate. Designate.

Dēsiliō, īre, uī, sultum. To leap out, leap forth, leap down.

Dēsistō, ere, stitī, stitum. To desist, cease. DESIST.

Dēstringō, ere, strinxī, strictum.

To unsheathe, draw.

Dēsum, esse, fui. To be wanting, to fail. (Followed by the Dative.)

Dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum. To deter. Dētineō, ēre, uī, tentum. To detain.

Dētrimentum, ī, n. Detriment, loss, disadvantage.

Dicō, ere, dīxī, dictum. To say, speak, mention, state; to appoint; causam dicere, to plead a cause, make a defence; Imperative, dīc, for dīce.

Diēs, ēi, m. Day; time; multō diē, long after sunrise; ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs, the 28th of March.

Difficilis, e. Difficult.

Difficultās, ātis, f. Difficulty.
Dīligenter, adv. Diligently, at-

tentively. Diligent.

Diligentia, ae, f. Diligence, carefulness. Diligence.

Dionysius, ii, m. Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse.

Discēdō, ere, cessī, cessum. To withdraw, depart, swerve.

Discipulus, ī, m. Pupil. Discipule.

Disiciō,¹ ere, jēcī, jectum. To break asunder, separate.

Dispergō, ere, sī, sum. To scatter, disperse. Disperse.

Dissentiö, önis, f. Dissension, disagreement. Dissension.

Distineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum. To keep apart, separate.

Diū, adv., comp. diūtius, sup. diūtissimē. Long, for a long time; quam diū, as long as.

Dīves, itis, comp. dīvitior or dītior, sup. dīvitissimus or dītissimus. Rich, wealthy.

Divico, ōnis, m. Divico, an Helvetian chieftain.

Dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsum. To divide. separate. Divide.

Divinus, a, um. Divine, religious.
Divine.

Divitiacus, i, m. Divitiacus, an Aeduan chieftain.

Dō, dare, dedī, datum. To give; in fugam dare, to put to flight.

Doceō, ēre, uī, doctum. To teach, inform.

Doctrina, ae, f. Learning. Doc-

Doctus, a, um, part. and adj. Learned.

Dolor, ōris, m. Pain, grief.
Domus, ūs, f. House; home;
domī, at home.

Dönö, äre, ävi, ätum. To present. Dönum, i, n. Gift, present.

Dormiō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum. To sleep. DORMANT.

Druides, um, m. pl. Druids, the priests of the Gauls.

Dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum. To doubt, hesitate.

Ducentī, ae, a. Two hundred. Dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum. To lead.

Duct.
Dum, conj. While; until.

Dumnorix, igis, m. Dumnorix, an Aeduan chieftain.

Duo, ae, o. 97, 175. Two.

Duodecim, indeclinable. Twelve. Duodequadraginta, indeclinable. Thirty-eight.

¹ Pronounced as if spelled disjiciō.

Duplex, icis. Double.
Duplicō, āre, āvī, ātum. To double.
Duplicate.

Dux, ducis, m. and f. Leader.

E.

Ē, prep. w. abl. See Ex. Ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum. To lead out. Educe.

Effēminō, āre, āvī, ātum. To effeminate, enervate. EffEMINATE. Efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. To make, construct, effect, produce, occasion, bring about. Effect.

Ego, mei, pers. pron. 102, 184. I, myself.

Egredior, i, gressus sum. To go out, go forth, depart, disenbark. Egress.

Egregië, adv. Excellently. EGREGIOUS.

Egregius, a, um. Distinguished. EGREGIOUS.

Eiciō,¹ ere, jēcī, jectum. To cast out, drive out, expel. Eject.

Enim,2 conj. For.

Enūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum. To announce, report, disclose.

Eō, īre, īvī or iī, itum. 277, 295.

To go.

Epistula, ae, f. Letter, epistle. Epistle.

Eques, itis, m. Horseman; pl., horsemen, cavalry.

Equester, tris, tre. Equestrian; equestre proelium, cavalry engagement.

Equitatus, ûs, m. Cavalry. Equus, î, m. Horse.

Eram. See Sum.

Ērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctum. To erect, raise; sē ērigere, to lift one's self, rise. Erect.

Erudiō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum. To instruct. ERUDITE.

Esseda, ae, f. War-chariot, chariot.

Essedārius, iī, m. Chariot-fighter, a warrior who fought in a warchariot.

Et, conj. And; et . . . et, both . . . and.

Etiam, adv. Also, even.

Etsī, conj. Although.

Evocō, āre, āvī, ātum. To summon forth, call out. Evoke.

Ex, ē, prep. w. abl. Out of, from, of.

Excēdō, ere, cessī, cessum. To withdraw.

Excitō, āre, āvī, ātum. To excite, arouse. Excite.

Exeruciō, āre, āvī, ātum. To torture. Excruciating.

Excursio, onis, f. Sally, sortie. Excursion.

Excūsō, āre, āvī, ātum. To ex-

Exemplum, i, n. Example.

Exeō, īre, iī, itum. To go out, go forth, depart. Exit.

Exercitus, ūs, m. Army.

Exigō, ere, ēgī, āctum. To complete, finish, end. Exact.

Exiguitās, ātis, f. Smallness, small size.

¹ Pronounced as if spelled ējicīō.

² Enim is postpositive; see page 274, foot-note.

Exiguus, a, um. Restricted, limited, scanty, small, brief.

Exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātum. To think. Expedītus, a, um, part. and adj. Unembarrassed, ready, quick. EXPEDITE.

Expello, ere, puli, pulsum. To expel, drive out. Expel.

Explorator, oris, m. Scout. Explorer.

Exploro, are, avī, atum. To explore, investigate. Explore.

Expōnō, ere, posuī, positum. To expose, arrange. Expose.

Expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum. To take by storm, storm.

Exspecto, are, avi, atum. To expect, await. Expect.

Exspolio, are, avi, atum. To rob, denrive.

Exsul, ulis, m. and f. Exile.

Exterus, a, um, comp. exterior, sup. extrēmus and extimus.

Outer; extrēmus, extreme; outermost extremity of.

Extrā, prep. w. acc. Beyond, outside of.

Exūrō, ere, ussī, ūstum. To burn up, burn.

F.

Fabius, iī, m. Fabius, a celebrated general.

Fābula, ae, f. Fable, story. FA-BLE.

Facile, adv. Easily. Facile.
Facilis, e, comp. facilior, sup. facillimus. Easy. Facile.

Facinus, oris, n. Misdeed, crime.
Faciō, ere, fēcī, factum. To do,
make; iter facere, to march;
vim facere, to use force. Fact.

Facultās, ātis, f. Ability, opportunity, means; pl., means, wealth. FACULTY.

Falsus, a, um. False.

Fames, is, f. Hunger.

Familiāris, e. Domestic, private; rēs familiāris, private property

Faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautum. To favor. (Followed by the Dative.)

Feliciter, adv. Happily, successfully. Felicitous.

Fēlīx, īcis. Happy, fortunate.

Ferāx, ācis. Productive, fertile. Ferē, adv. Almost, nearly.

Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum. **269**, 292. To bear, carry, present, bring; to endure; lēgem ferre, to propose a law.

Fertilis, e. Fertile.

Fertilitäs, ätis, f. Fertility.

Ferus, a, um. Fierce, savage. Fidélis, e. Faithful. FIDELITY.

Fides, et, f. Faith, confidence, trust; pledge.

Fidus, a, um. Faithful.

Figura, ae, f. Figure, form, shape. Figure.

Filia, ae, f. Daughter. FILIAL. Filius, ii, m. 32, 51, 5. Son. FILIAL.

Fingō, ere, finxī, fictum. To form, fashion; vultum fingere, to control the countenance.

Fīniō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum. To bound, limit, end. Final.

Finis, is, m. and f. End, limit; finēs, m. pl., boundaries; territory.

Finitimus, a, um. Neighboring. Fiō, fieri, factus sum. 277, 294. To be made; to happen, come to pass. Firmiter, adv. Firmly.
Flaccus, i, m. Flaccus, a Roman name.

Flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātum. To demand.

Fluctus, us, m. Wave. Fluctu-

Flūmen, inis, n. Stream, river. Fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxum. To flow.

Fore. See 140, 204, 2.

Forsitan, adv. Perhaps.

Fortis, e. Brave.

Fortiter, comp. fortius, sup. fortissimē, adv. Bravely, valiantly.

Fortitūdō, inis, f. Fortitude, courage. Fortitude.

Fortuna, ae, f. Fortune.

Fossa, ae, f. Ditch, moat. Foss.

Frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctum. To break, crush, wreck. FRACT-URE.

Frāter, tris, m. Brother. Fraternal.

Fremitus, ūs, m. Din, noise.

Frētus, a, um. Relying on, trusting to.

Frūmentārius, a, um. Pertaining to grain; rēs frūmentāria, grain, supplies.

Frūmentātiŏ, ōnis, f. Foraging, provisioning.

Frümentor, ārī, ātus sum. To gather grain, forage.

Frümentum, i, n. Grain.

Fuga, ae, f. Flight; in fugam dare, to put to flight.

Fugitivus, ī, m. Runaway, deserter. Fugitive.

Funda, ae, f. Sling. Futūrus, a, um. See Sum. G.

Gabinius, ii, m. Gabinius, a Roman name.

Gāius, iī, m. Gaius, a Roman name.

Galba, ae, m. Galba, a lieutenant under Caesar.

Gallia, ae, f. Gaul.

Gallicus, a, um. Gallic.

Gallus, i, m. Gaul, a Gaul.

Gemma, ae, f. Gem.

Genāva, ae, f. Geneva.

Gener, erī, m. Son-in-law.

Gens, gentis, f. Race, tribe, nation.

Genus, eris, n. Kind, class.

Germānia, ae, f. Germany.

Germānus, a, um. German; Germānus, ī, m., a German.

Gerö, ere, gessī, gestum. To bear, conduct, carry on, wage, do; to hold.

Gladius, ii, m. Sword.

Glōria, ae, f. Glory.

Gnaeus, i, m. Gnaeus, a Roman name.

Graecia, ae, f. Greece.

Graecus, a, um. *Greek*, *Grecian*. Grātia, ae, *f. Gratitude*, *favor*;

pl., thanks. Grace.

Grātulor, ārī, ātus sum. To congratulate; to thank. (Followed by the Dative.)

Grātus, a, um. Acceptable, pleasing.

Gravis, e. Heavy, severe, grave. Grave.

Graviter, adv. Severely, grievously.

Gubernātor, ōris, m. Pilot. Gubernatorial.

I.

Habeō, ēre, uī, itum. To have, hold, regard, regard as.

Habitō, āre, āvī, ātum. To reside, live, dwell.

Hannibal, alis, m. Hannibal, a celebrated Carthaginian general.

Harūdēs, um, m. pl. The Harudes, a tribe of southwestern Germany.

Helvētii, ōrum, m. pl. The Helvetii or Helvetians, a people inhabiting Switzerland.

Helvētius, a, um. Helvetian.

Hērēditās, ātis, f. Inheritance. Hērodotus, ī, m. Herodotus, a Greek historian.

Hīberna, ōrum, n. pl. Winter quarters.

Hīc, haec, hốc. 102, 186. This, this one, the latter, he, she, it.

Hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum. To winter, pass the winter.

Hiems, emis, f. Winter.

Historia, ae, f. History.

Homő, inis, m. and f. Man, human being, person.

Honor, ōris, m. Honor.

Hōra, ae, f. Hour.

Hortor, ārī, ātus sum. To exhort, urge.

Hospes, itis, m. and f. Guest;

Hostis, is, m. and f. Enemy. Hūc, adv. Hither; to this place.

Hūmānitās, ātis, f. Culture, refinement. Humanity.

Hūmānus, a, um. Humane; civilized. Humane. Ibī, adv. There.

Idem, eadem, idem. 102, 186, Same, the same.

Idōneus, a, um. Suitable, fit, proper.

Idus, uum, f. pl. Ides, the 15th of March, May, July and October; in other months the 13th.

Ieram, iī. See $E\bar{o}$.

Igitur, conj. Therefore.

Ignis, is, m. Fire.

Ignōrō, āre, āvī, ātum. Not to know, to be ignorant of.

Ignōsco, ere, nōvī, nōtum. To pardon, forgive.

Ille, a, ud. 102, 186. That, that one, the former, he, she, it.

Illō, adv. Thither, to that place. Impedimentum, i, n. Hinderance, embarrassment; pl., hinderances; baggage.

Impedio, ire, ivi or ii, itum. To impede, hinder, embarrass. IMPEDE.

Impeditus, a, um, part. and adj.
Impeded, hindered, embarrassed; entangled. Impeded.

Impendeo, ere. To overhang.

IMPEND. (Followed by the Dative.)

Imperator, oris, m. General, commander.

Imperatum, i, n. Order, bidding, command; imperatum facere, to do one's bidding, execute one's order.

Imperitus, a, um. Unskilful, ignorant.

Imperium, ii, n. Command, sway, government, empire.

Imperō, āre, āvī, ātum. To order, command.

Impetro, are, avi, atum. To obtain one's request.

Impetus, ūs, m. Attack, charge. Impetuous.

Importō, āre, āvī, ātum. To bring in, import. Import.

Improbus, a, um. Wicked, unprincipled.

Improvisus, a, um. Unforeseen, unexpected; de improviso, unexpectedly, suddenly.

In, prep. w. acc. and abl.; see page 58, foot-note 1. In, into, to; for; over, across.

Incendium, ii, n. Fire, burning, conflagration. INCENDI-ARY.

Incendō, ere, ī, cēnsum. To set on fire, fire, burn. INCENSE.

Incitō, āre, āvī, ātum. To impel, urge on, urge forward. Incite.

Incognitus, a, um. Unknown.

Incolō, ere, uī, cultum. To inhabit, dwell.

Incolumis, e. Unharmed, safe. Incommodum, i, n. Misfortune, disaster, defeat.

Incredibilis, e. Incredible.

Inde, adv. Thence, from that nlace.

Indicō, ere, dixī, dictum. To appoint.

Indīgnus, a, um. Unworthy.
Indūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum. To lead into, lead on, induce. INDUCE.

Ineō, īre, iī, itum. To go into, enter upon, begin, initiate, undertake.

Inermus, a, um. Unarmed.

Īnfēlix, icis. Unhappy, unfortunate.

Inferō, ferre, intuli, illātum. To bear into, wage into, wage against, wage upon, wage; to inflict upon, inflict.

Īnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. To stain,

color, dye.

Īnfluō, ere, flūxī, flūxum. To flow into, empty, flow.

Ingrātus, a, um. Ungrateful, unpleasant, disagreeable.

Inimīcus, ī, m. Enemy, personal cnemy.

Iniquus, a, um. Unequal; unfair, unjust; unfavorable, disadvantageous.

Initium, ii, n. Beginning. INI-

Injūria, ae, f. Injury, wrong.
INJURY.

Inopia, ae, f. Lack, want, need, scarcity.

Inquam.¹ I say; inquit, present:
 he says; perfect: he said, said
 he.

Īnsequor, ī, secūtus sum. To follow close upon, follow up, follow, pursue.

Īnsīgnis, e. Marked, signal, remarkable.

Īnsimulō, āre, āvī, ātum. To ac-

Īnsinuō, āre, āvī, ātum. To introduce, insinuate; sē īnsin-

¹ Inquam is a defective verb. It is used in a few parts only of the active voice.

uare, to make one's way, force one's self. Insinuate.

Īnsistō, ere, stitī. To stand, get a foothold. Insist.

Instituō, ere, uī, ūtum. To begin, proceed; to train, instruct. INSTITUTE.

Īnstō, āre, stitī, stātum. To be near, be at hand. Instant.

Īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum. To construct, draw up, array; aciem īnstruere, to form the line of battle.

Īnsuētus, a, um. Unaccustomed. Īnsula, ae, f. Island.

Integritās, ātis, f. Integrity, uprightness. Integrity.

Intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctum. To understand. Intellect.

Inter, prep. w. acc. Among; inter sē, among themselves; with each other, with one another, together; inter sē dare, to exchange.

Intercēdō, ere, cessī, cessum. To come between, intervene. Intercede.

Interclūdō, ere, sī, sum. To cut off.

Interdīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum. To forbid, prohibit, exclude. In-TERDICT.

Interea, adv. Meantime, in the meanwhile.

Intereö, īre, iī, itum. To perish.
Interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. To kill, slay, put to death.

Interim, adv. Meanwhile, in the mean time.

Interior, us, comp. adj. 86, 166. Interior, inner. Intermittö, ere, misi, missum.

To send between; to intermit, interrupt; pass., to be brought between, to intervene.

INTERMIT.

Interpönö, ere, posuï, positum. To interpose, suggest, present. In-TERPOSE.

Intersum, esse, fui. To be between, intervene; interest, impersonal, it interests, concerns. INTEREST.

Intervallum, i, n. Interval, space between.

Inūsitātus, a, um. *Unwonted*, unfamiliar, strange.

Inūtilis, e. Useless.

Invitus, a, um. Unwilling.

Ipse, a, um. **102**, 186. Self, he she, it; ille ipse, that very.

Īrācundus, a, um. Passienate, violent.

Irrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum. To break in, rush in.

Irruptiŏ, ōnis, f. A breaking in, an attack. IRRUPTION.

Is, ea, id. 102, 186. That, this, that one, this one, he, she, it.

Iste, a, ud. 102, 186. That of yours, that, that one, he, she, it.

Ita, adv. So, in such a way, thus.

Ĭtalia, ae, f. Italy.

Itaque, conj. And so, therefore.

Item, adv. Also, likewise.

Iter, itineris, n. March, journey; way, route; māgna itinera, forced marches; iter facere, to march.

J.

Jacio, ere, jēcī, jactum. To throw. Jam, adv. Already, now. Jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussum. Toorder, command. Jūdex, icis, m. and f. Judge. Jūdicium, ii, n. Judgment, decision.

Jūdico, āre, āvī, ātum. To judge. Jugum, i, n. Yoke; ridge, height. Jumentum, i, n. Draught animal, beast of burden.

Jūra, ae, m. Jura, a mountain range in western Gaul.

Jussī. See jubeo.

Jüstitia, ae, f. Justice.

Juvenis, is, m. and f. Youth, a youth. JUVENILE.

Juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum. To aid, help, assist.

K.

Kalendae, ārum, f. pl. Calends, the first day of the month; ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilės, the 28th of March. Calendar. Karthāgō, inis, f. Carthage.

L.

Labiēnus, ī, m. Labienus, a liīutenant under Caesar.

Labor, ōris, m. Labor, toil, effort, exertion.

Laboro, āre, āvī, ātum. To labor, struggle, to be in trouble. LA-BOR.

Lacesso, ere, sīvī or siī, situm. To harass, provoke, assail, attack.

Lacrima, ae, f. Tear.

Lacrimō, āre, āvī, ātum. To weep.

Lacus, ūs, m. Lake.

Lapis, idis, m. Stone.

Largior, irī, itus sum. To bestow, make gifts.

Largiter, adv. Largely, widely, extensively; largiter posse, to have extensive influence.

Lātē, adv. Widely; longē lātēque, far and wide.

Latinus, i, m. Latinus, king of the Laurentians in central Italv.

Latinus, a, um. Latin.

Lātitūdo, inis, f. Width, breadth. LATITUDE.

Latro, onis, m. Robber, brigand. Latus, a, um. Broad, wide, extensive.

Latus, eris, n. Side.

Laudō, āre, āvī, ātum. To praise. LAUD.

Lāvinia, ae, f. Lavinia, daughter of King Latinus.

Lēgātiō, ōnis, f. Embassy.

Lėgatus, i, m. Ambassador; lieutenant. Legate.

Legiō, ōnis, f. Legion.

Lego, ere, legi, lectum. To read. Lemannus, i, m. Lemannus, Leman, Lake of Geneva.

Lēnitās, ātis, f. Smoothness, gentleness.

Leō, onis, m. Lion.

Levitās, ātis, f. Levity, fickleness, impulsiveness. Levity.

Lēx, lēgis, f. Law.

Liberter, adv. Willingly, gladly. Liber, bri, m. Book.

Liber, era, erum. Free.

Līberālitās, ātis, f. Liberality.

Liberi, örum, m. pl. Children.
Liberö, äre, ävi, ätum. To liberate, free. Liberate.

Lībertās, ātis, f. Liberty, freedom. LIBERTY.

Liceor, ērī, itus sum. To bid at auction.

Licet, ēre, licuit, impers. It is lawful, is permitted, one may.

Ligārius, ii, m. Ligarius, a prominent Roman in whose behalf Cicero pleaded before Caesar.

Liger, is, m. The Liger, a river in southwestern Gaul, now the Loire.

Lingonës, um, m. pl. The Lingones, a tribe of central Gaul.

Lingua, ae, f. Tongue, language. Liscus, ī, m. Liscus, a chieftain of the Aedui.

Litavicus, i, m. Litavicus, an Aeduan chieftain.

Littera, ae, f. Letter; pl., letters; a letter, epistle.

Litus, oris, n. Shore.

Locus, i, m., pl. loca, ōrum, n. Place, position. Local.

Longe, adv. Long, far, by far. Long.

Longinquus, a, um. Distant, remote.

Longus, a, um. Long.

Lūcius, iī, m. Lucius, a Roman name.

Lūna, ae, f. Moon. LUNAR. Lutetia, ae, f. Lutetia, a town in central Gaul, now Paris.

Lüx, lücis, f. Light, daylight; prīma lūx, daybreak.

M.

Magistrātus, ūs, m. Magistracy; magistrate.

Māgnitūdő, inis, f. Size, magnitude, height. MAGNITUDE.

Māgnus, a, um, comp. mājor, sup. māximus. Great, large; numerous; loud; mājorēs, m. and f. pl., elders; ancestors, forefathers.

Maleficium, iī, n. Mischief, harm.

Mālō, mālle, māluī. 273, 293. To prefer.

Mandō, āre, āvī, ātum. To commission, order, entrust, consign, commit, betake. MAN-DATE.

Maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum. To remain. MANSE.

Manus, ūs, f. Hand; band; in manibus, in hand; at hand, close at hand.

Mārcus, ī, m. Marcus, a Roman name.

Mare, is, n. Sea.

Maritimus, a, um. Maritime, pertaining to the sea; ōra maritima, sea-coast. MARI-

Matara, ae, f. Javelin, pike.

Mater, tris, f. Mother.

Materia, ae, f. Timber. MA-TERIAL.

Matiscŏ, ōnis, m. Matisco, a town in southwestern Gaul.

Mātrimonium, ii, n. Marriage; in mātrimonium dūcere, to marry. MATRIMONY.

Mātūrē, adv. Early, promptly.
MATURE.

Mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum. To hasten. MATURE.

Mātūrus, a, um. Early. MATURE. Mausolus, ī, m. Mausolus, king of Caria.

Māximē, sup. adv. Most, very greatly, chiefly, especially.

greatly, chiefly, especially.

Māximus, a, um. See māgnus.

Medius, a, um. Middle, middle of; 191, foot-note.

Melodunum, i, n. Melodunum, a town in central Gaul.

Memoria, ae, f. Memory, recollection. Memory.

Menapii, ōrum, m. pl. The Menapii, a tribe of northern Gaul.

Mēns, mentis, f. Mind, intellect.
MENTAL.

Mēnsis, is, m. Month.

Mercator, oris, m. Merchant, trader.

Merīdiēs, ēī, m. Midday, noon. Meridian.

Meritō, adv. Deservedly. MERIT. Messālla, ae, m. Messala, a Roman name.

Mētior, īrī, mēnsus sum. To measure, allot.

Metō, ere, messuī, messum. To reap, harvest, gather grain.

Meus, a, um. 185. My, mine.

Miles, itis, m. and f. Soldier.
MILITIA.

Mīlitāris, e. *Military*; rēs mīlitāris, *military affairs*.

Mille, pl. milia, ium, n. 247, footnote. Thousand; mille passüs, a thousand paces, a (Roman) mile.

Minus, comp. adv. Less; sup. minimē, least, very little, by no means.

Mittō, ere, misi, missum. To send. Mission.

Mōbilitās, ātis, f. Mobility, rapidity. Mobility.

Modestē, adv. Modestly. Modestr.

Modo, adv. Only.

Modus, ī, m. Measure; manner. Molestē, adv. With trouble; molestē ferre, to be vexed at, annoyed at.

Moneō, ēre, uī, itum. To advise, warn.

Mons, montis, m. Mountain.

Morini, ōrum, m. pl. The Morini, a tribe of northern Gaul.

Moror, ārī, ātus sum. To tarry, delay, wait.

Mors, mortis, f. Death. Mor-

Mōtus, ūs, m. Movement, motion, Motion.

Moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum. To move, remove. Move.

Mulier, eris, f. Woman.

Multitudō, inis, f. Multitude; the multitude, common people, populace. Multitude.

Multō, adv. By much, by far. Multum, adv., comp. plūs, sup.

plūrimum. Much.

Multus, a, um, comp. plūs, n. (pl. plūrēs, plūra), sup. plūrimus. Much; many; multō diē, long after day break.

Mūniō, īrē, īvī or iī, ītum. To fortify. MUNITION.

Mūnitiŏ, ōnis, f. Fortification; opus mūnitionis, fortified work MUNITION.

Mūrus, ī, m. Wall.

N.

Nactus, a, um. See nancīscor.

Nam, namque, conj. For; for indeed.

Nancīscor, ī, nactus sum. To get, obtain, secure.

Narbō, ōnis, m. Narbo, a town in southern Gaul.

Nātiō, ōnis, f. Nation.

Nātūra, ae, f. Nature.

Nauta, ae, m. Sailor.

Nāvālis, e. Naval.

Nāvigium, iī, n. Vessel, ship.

Nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātum. To sail. Navigate.

Nāvis, is, f. Ship, vessel; nāvis longa, ship of war; nāvis onerāria, transport vessel, transport. NAVY.

-Ne, conj. Interrogative particle. See **106**, 351, 1 and 2.

Nē, adv. and conj. With the Imperative or the Subjunctive of Desire, not; with the Subjunctive of Purpose, that not, lest; after words of fearing, lest, that.

Necesse, 286. Necessary.

Neglegō, ere, lēxī, lēctum. To neglect, disregard.

Negō, āre, āvī, ātum. To deny, refuse; to say not.

Negōtium, ii, n. Business, occupation; negōtium dare, to entrust a task or enterprise.

Nēmō,¹ inis, m. and f. No one, nobody.

Nepōs, ōtis, m. Grandson.

Nequaquam, adv. By no means. Neque, conj. Neither, nor, and not; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.

Nervii, ōrum, m. pl. The Nervii, a tribe of northern Gaul.

Neve, conj. Nor, and not.

Nex, necis, f. Death, putting to death.

Nihil, indeclinable, nihilum, ī, n. Nothing.

Nisi, conj. Unless.

Nobilis, e. Noble, of high birth. Noble.

Nöbilitās, ātis, f. Nobility; the nobility, nobles. Nobility.

Noctū, adv. By night. Nocturnus, a, um. Nocturnal, by

night. Nocturnal.
Nölö, nölle, nöluī, **273**, 293. To
be unwilling, not to be willing,
not to wish.

Nomen, inis, n. Name; suo nomine, on his own account.

Nomino, are, avī, atum. To name. Nominate.

Non, adv. Not.

Nondum, adv. Not yet.

Nonne, conj. Interrogative particle. Not? See 106, 351, note 2.

Nonnülli, ae, a. Some.

Nonnunquam, adv. Sometimes.

Nonus, a, um. Ninth.

Nosco, ere, novi, notum. To become acquainted with; novi, I have become acquainted with = I know.

¹ $N\bar{e}m\tilde{o}$ generally wants the Genitive and Ablative; they are supplied by these cases of $n\tilde{u}llus$

Noster, tra, trum. **102**, 185. Our, ours.

Notus, a, um, part. and adj. Known.

Novem, indeclinable. Nine: decem novem, nineteen.

Noviodūnum, \bar{i} , n. Noviodunum, a town of northwestern Gaul.

Novus, a, um. New; rēs novae, change of affairs, revolution; novissimum agmen, rear.

Nox, noctis, f. Night.

Nūbēs, is, f. Cloud.

Nūbō, ere, nūpsī, nūptum. Toveil one's self; to assume the bridal veil for = to marry. NUPTIAL. (Followed by the Dative.)

Nūdō, āre, āvī, ātum. To bare, expose, strip.

Nüllus, a, um. 45, 151. Not any, no, none.

Num, conj. Interrogative par-For meaning in direct questions, see 106, 351, 1, note 3; in indirect questions, whether.

Numa, ae, m. Numa, the second of the legendary kings of Rome.

Numerus, \bar{i} , m. Number.

Nunc, adv. Now, at this time.

Nünguam, adv. Never.

Nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum. To announce.

Nuntius, ii, m. Messenger; tidings.

Nuper, adv. Recently, of late.

Nūtrīx, īcis, f. Nurse.

О.

Ob, prep. w. acc. On account of, for.

Obicio,1 ere, jēcī, jectum. T_0 throw against, throw up. JECT.

Observo, āre, āvī, ātum. To observe, keep, comply with. Ob-SERVE.

Obses, idis, m. and f. Hostage. Obsideo, ere, sedi, sessum. besiege.

Obsidio, onis, f. Siege, blockade. Obsīgnō, āre, āvī, ātum. To seal, sian and seal.

Obtineo, ere, ui, tentum. tain, hold. OBTAIN.

Occāsus, ūs, m. Setting; sõlis occāsus, sun-set.

Occido, ere, ī, sum. To kill, slay. Occulto, are, avi, atum. To hide. OCCULT.

Occupo, āre, āvī, ātum. To occupy, seize, take possession of; to busy. Occupy.

Oceanus, i, m. Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean.

Octāvus, a, um. Eighth. OCTAVE. Octo, indeclinable. Eight.

Octodecim, indeclinable. Eighteen.

Octodurus, i. m. Octodurus, a town in Gaul, now Martigny.

Oculus, i, m. The eye, sight. To hate, detest. Ōdī, isse.

Officium, ii, n. Duty, allegiance. OFFICE.

Omnino, adv. In all, only.

Omnis, e. All.

Onerārius, a, um. Pertaining to burdens, carrying cargoes; onerāria nāvis, a transport vessel, transport.

Opera, ae, f. Work; operam dare, to take pains, endeavor.

Oportet, ere, uit, impers. It behooves, is proper, is necessary, is fitting; one ought.

Oppidum, f, n. Town.

Opportunus, a, um. Opportune, appropriate. Opportune.

Oppūgnātiō, ōnis, f. Assault, attack.

Oppūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum. To assault, attack.

Optimus, a, um. See bonus.

Opus, eris, n. Work, task; art; operis mūnītiō, fortified work; māgnō opere, greatly.

Öra, ae, f. Coast.

Ōrātiŏ, ōnis, f. Oration, speech. Oration.

Ōrātor, ōris, m. Orator.

Orbis, is, m. Circle, circuit; orbis terrae, orbis terrarum, the world. Orb.

Ördő, inis, m. Rank. ORDER. Orgetorix, igis, m. Orgetorix, an Helvetian chieftain.

Ōrnāmentum, ī, n. Ornament, honor. Ornament.

Örö, äre, ävī, ätum. To ask, beg, nlead.

Ostendō, ere, ī, tentum or tēnsum.

To show, explain, make known,
declare.

Ρ.

Pābulātiō, ōnis, f. Foraging. Pābulum, i, n. Fodder. Paene, adv. Almost, nearly. Paenitet, ēre, uit, impers. It causes regret; mē paenitet, I repent.

Pāgus, i, m. Division, canton. Pār, paris. Equal, a match for. Parātus, a, um, part. and adj. Prepared, ready.

Parcō, ere, pepercī, parsum. To spare. (Followed by the Dative.)

Pāreō, ēre, ui, itum. To obey. (Followed by the Dative.)

Parō, āre, āvī, ātum. To prepare. Pars, partis, f. Part, division; quarter, direction. PART.

Passus, ūs, m. Pace; mīlle passūs, a (Roman) mile; duo mīlia passuum, two miles.

Pāstor, ōris, m. Shepherd.

Pater, tris, m. Father. PATER-NAL.

Patienter, adv. Patiently.

Patior, i, passus sum. To suffer, permit.

Patria, ae, f. Native country, one's country, country.

Pauci, ae, a. Few.

Paucitās, ātis, f. Fewness, small number.

Paulātim, adv. Little by little, by degrees, gradually.

Paulō, adv. A little.

Paulum, adv. A little, somewhat. Pāx, pācis, f. Peace.

Pedes, itis, m. Foot-soldier; pl., foot-soldiers; infantry.

Peditātus, ūs, m. Infantry.

Pedius, iī, m. Pedius, a lieutenant under Caesar.

Pellis, is, f. Skin.

Pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsum. To drive, rout.

Pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsum. To weigh; to pay.

Per, prep. w. acc. Through, by, over, by means of; on account of.

Perducō, ere, dūxī, ductum. To lead through, extend, construct.

Perequitō, āre, āvī, ātum. To ride through, ride.

Perfacilis, e. Very easy.

Perferō, ferre, tulī, lātum. To endure.

Perficio, ere, feci, fectum. To accomplish. Perfect.

Perfringō, ere, frēgī, frāctum. To break through.

Perfuga, ae, m. Deserter, fugitive.

Perfugio, ere, fugi. To flee for refuge, flee, escape.

Periculosus, a, um. Perilous, dangerous. Perilous.

Periculum, i, n. Peril, danger.

Peritus, a, um. Skilful, skilled, expert: with gen. skilled in.

Permaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum.

To continue to remain, to remain. Permanent.

Permoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum. To move, induce, influence; to disturb, daunt, alarm.

Perpetuus, a, um. Perpetual, endless, uninterrupted; in perpetuum, for ever. Perpetual.

Perrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum. To break through, force a passage, force one's way.

Persequor, ī, secūtus sum. To follow up, pursue, persecute; to avenge. Persecute.

Persevērē, āre, āvī, ātum. To persevere, persist. Persevere.

Persolvô, ere, ī, solūtum. To pay. Perspiciō, ere, spēxī, spectum. To examine, investigate, perceivē. Perspicuous.

Persuādeō, ēre, sī, sum. To persuade.

Perterreō, ēre, uī, itum. To terrify greatly, terrify, frighten.

Pertineō, ēre, ui, tentum. To pertain, tend; to extend, reach. PERTAIN.

Perturbātiō, ōnis, f. Disturbance, agitation. Perturbation.

Perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum. To disturb, throw into confusion. Perturb.

Pervenio, ire, veni, ventum. To arrive, come, reach.

Pes, pedis, m. Foot; pedibus, on foot; pedem referre, to retreat.

Pedal.

Peto, ere, īvī or iī, ītum. To seek, request, ask.

Phalanx, angis, f. Phalanx, line. Pilum, i, n. Javelin, spear.

Pisistratus, i, m. Pisistratus, tyrant of Athens.

Pīsō, ōnis, m. Piso, a Roman name.

Placeō, ere, uī, itum. To please. (Followed by the Dative.)

Plānitiēs, ēī, f. Plain.

Plānus, a, um. Flat, level. Plane.

Platŏ, ōnis, m. Plato, a celebrated Greek philosopher.

Plēbs, ēbis, f. The common people, populace. PLEBEIAN. Plēnus, a, um. Full.

As a general Plērumque, adv. thing, generally.

Plerusque, aque, umque. larger or greater part, the most. Plūs, plūris, n., pl. plūrēs, plūra,

comp. of multus. More: several. Plural.

Plus, adv., comp. of multum, sup. plūrimum. More; plūs posse, to have greater power or influence; plūrimum posse, to have very great power or influence.

Poena, ae, f. Penalty, punishment, satisfaction.

Poēta, ae, m. Poet. ise. Polliceor, ērī, itus sum. To prom-Pompējus, iī, m, Pompey, a celebrated general and statesman.

Pōnō, ere, posuī, positum. place: castra ponere, to pitch a camp, encamp.

Pons, pontis, m. Bridge.

Populātiō, ōnis, f. Ravaging, devastating, laying waste.

Populus, i, m. People, a people. Porta, ae, f. Gate. PORTAL.

Portō, āre, āvī, ātum. To carry, bring, take.

Portōrium, iī, n. Tax, toll, duty on imports or exports.

Port, harbor. Portus, üs, m. PORT.

To demand. Poscō, ere, poposcī. Possum, posse, potui. 269,290. To be able; can; multum posse, to

have great power or influence. Post, adv. After, afterward.

Post, prep. w. acc. After, behind.

Posteā, adv. Afterward. Posteāquam, conj. After. Posterus, a, um, comp. posterior, sup. postrēmus and postumus. Subsequent, following, next.

Postquam, conj. After.

Postrīdiē, adv. On the following dau.

Postulo, āre, āvī, ātum. To demand.

Potens, entis. Powerful. Potent. Potentātus, ūs, m. Power, domin-

ion, control. Potentia, ae, f. Power, influence. POTENCY.

Poteram. See possum.

Potestās, ātis, f. Power.

Potior, īrī, ītus sum. To gain take - obtain possession of, to obtain.

Potui. See possum.

ToPraecēdo, ere, cessī, cessum. surpass. Precede.

Precipitate, Praeceps. ipitis. headlong. Precipitate.

Praecipio, ere, cepī, ceptum. enjoin upon, direct. PRECEPT.

Praecipito, are, aví, atum. Toprecipitate, throw, hurl. Pre-CIPITATE.

Praedico, are, avī, atum. To assert, state. PREDICATE.

Praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. place in command of, in charge (Followed by the of, over. Dative.)

Praemittō, ere, mīsī, missum. To send on - ahead - forward in advance.

Praemium, ii, n. Reward. Pre-MIUM.

Praepčno, ere, posui, positum. To place over or in command of. (Followed by the Dative.)

Praesens, entis. Present.

Praesentia, ae, f. Presence; in praesentiā, at present, for the present.

Praesidium, ii, n. Garrison, defence, guard, safeguard, protection.

Praestō, āre, stitī, stitum or stātum. To stand before, excel; to furnish, discharge, fulfil, present, manifest, show, put forth.

Praesum, esse, fui. To be in charge or command of, to super-intend. (Followed by the Dative.)

Praeter, prep. w. acc. Except.
Praeterquam, adv. Except.

Praetor, ōris, m. Praetor, a Roman magistrate.

Premō, ere, pressī, pressum. To press, press hard, distress. Press.

Pretiōsus, a, um. Precious, valuable. Precious.

Pretium, ii, n. Price.

Primo, adv. First, at first. Prime.

Primum, sup. adv., pos. wanting, comp. prius. First. Prime.

Primus, a, um, sup., pos. wanting, comp. prior. First; the first part of; primum āgmen, the van; prima lūx, daybreak. Prime.

Prīnceps, ipis. First; prīnceps, ipis, m., leader, chief, chieftain. PRINCIPAL.

Principatus, ūs, m. Sovereignty, dominion.

Prior, us, comp. adj., pos. wanting, sup. prīmus. Former.

Pristinus, a, um. Ancient, pristine. Pristine.

Prius, comp. adv., pos. wanting, sup. primum. Before, sooner; prius quam, sooner than, before.

Priusquam, conj. Before.

Privatim, adv. Privately, in a private capacity. PRIVATE.

Prīvātus, a, um, part and adj. Private; prīvātus, ī, m., private citizen. Private.

Prīvō, āre, āvī, ātum. To deprive. Prō, prep. w. abl. For; in proportion to, considering; before.

Probō, āre, āvī, ātum. To prove; to approve. Probate.

Procedo, ere, cessi, cessum. To proceed, advance. Proceed. Procellus, i. m. Procillus, a prom-

inent Gaul.

Proditio, onis, f. Treason.

Proditor, oris, m. Traitor.

Prōdō, ere, didī, ditum. To betray.

Produco, ere, duxi, ductum. To lead forth, lead on; to protract. Produce.

Proêlior, ārī, ātus sum. To fight. Proelium, iī, n. Battle, engagement.

Profectio, onis, f. Departure, starting, setting out.

Proficio, ere, feci, fectum. To accomplish, effect.

Proficiscor, i, profectus sum. To start, set out, depart, proceed.

Profugio, ere, fugi. To flee away, flee, escape.

Progredior, i, gressus sum. To go forward, advance. Progress.

Prohibeō, ēre, uĭ, itum. To prohibit, check, prevent, keep. Prohibit.

Prōiciō,¹ ere, jēcī, jectum. To cast forth, throw forward, throw down. Project.

Prōmissus, a, um, part. and adj. Hanging down, long.

Pronuntio, are, avi, atum. To proclaim, state. Pronounce.

Prope, adv., comp. propius, sup. proximē. Near.

Prope, prep. w. acc. Near.

Propello, ere, uli, ulsum. To drive forward, repulse, rout. Propell. Propior, us, comp. adj., pos. want-

ing, sup. prōximus. Nearer.
Prōpōnō, ere, posuī, positum. To

Propono, ere, posui, positum. To set forth. Propose.

Propter, prep. w. acc. On account of.

Proptereā, adv. For this reason; proptereā quod, for this reason, that; because.

Propulso, are, avi, atum. To repulse.

Prora, ae, f. Prow.

Prosequor, i, secutus sum. To follow up, pursue. Prosecute.

Prōspiciō, ere, spēxī, spectum.

To look forward; to look out
for. (Followed by the Dative.)
PROSPECT.

Provideo, ere, vidi, visum. To look out for, provide. (Followed by the Dative.) Provide.

Provincia, ae, f. Province.
Proximē, sup. adv., pos. prope.
Most recently, last.

Prōximus, a, um, sup. adj., pos. wanting, comp. propior. Nearest, next, adjacent.

Püblicus, a, um. Public.

Pūblius, ii, m. Publius, a Roman name.

Pudor, ōris, m. Shame, respect. Puella, ae, f. Girl.

Puer, eri, m. Boy. PUERILE.

Pūgna, ae, f. Fight, fighting, battle.

Pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum. To fight. Pulcher, chra, chrum. Beautiful. Pulsus, a, um. See pellō.

Pulvis, eris, m. Dust.

Putō, āre, āvī, ātum. To think.

\mathbf{Q}

Quaerō, ere, sīvī or siī, sītum. To inquire, ask, seek. QUEST.

Quam, adv. How; w. sup., as ... as possible; quam primum, as soon as possible.

Quam, conj. Than.

Quantus, a, um. How great; as great.

Quārē, conj. Wherefore, why. Quārtus, a, um. Fourth; quartus decimus, fourteenth.

Quattuor, indeclinable. Four.
-Que, conj. enclitic. 103. And.
Queror, ī, questus sum. To complain.

Qui, quae, quod. **106**, 187. Who, that, which.

Quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam. 106, 190. A certain, a certain one, some.

Quin, conj. That not, but, that.

Quindecim, indeclinable. Fif-1teen. Quingenti, ae, a. Five hundred. Quini, ae, a. 97, 172, 3. Five by five, five each, five. Quinque, indeclinable. Five. Quintus, a, um. Fifth; ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs, the 28th day of March. Quintus, i, m. Quintus, a Roman name. Quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron. **106**, 188. Who, what, which? Quis, quae, quid, indef. pron. 106, 190. One, any one, anything. Quisquam, quaequam, quicquam, indef. pron. Any, anyone. Quisque, quaeque, quodque and quidque, indef. pron. Each, every, each one, every one. Whither, to which Quō, adv. place, to what place. That; quo minus, Quō, conj. that not, so that not. Quoad, conj. Until. Quod, conj. That; because. Quoque, adv. Also. Quot, indeclinable. How many.

\mathbb{R} .

Rapīna, ae, f. Robbery, pillaging. RAPINE.
Ratiō, ōnis, f. Reasoning, reason; account, reckoning; method, way.
Rebelliō, ōnis, f. Rebellion.
Receptus, ūs, m. Retreat.
Recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum. To recover, retake, betuke; to re-

ceive; sē recipere, to retire, return, betake one's self.

Recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum. To reject. Reddō, ere, didī, ditum. To give back, restore, return.

Redeō, īre, iī, itum. To go back, return.

Redimō, ere, ĕmī, ēmptum. To buy up, buy, purchase. RE-

Reditiō, ōnis, f. Going back, return.

Reditus, ūs, m. Return.

Reducō, ere, dūxī, ductum. To lead back.

Referō, ferre, rettulī, relātum.

To draw back, bring back;
pedem referre, to retreat.
Reficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. To

repair.

Refugiō, ere, fūgī. To flee back, flee. Refuge.

Régina, ae, f. Queen.

Regiŏ, ōnis, f. Direction; region. Region.

Rēgnō, āre, āvi, ātum. To reign, rule. Reign.

Rēgnum, ī, n. Kingdom, regal power. Reign.

Regō, ere, rēxī, rēctum. To rule. Rēiciō,¹ ere, jēcī, jectum. To drive back, repulse. REJECT. Relinquō, ere, līquī, līctum. To

leave. Relinquish.

Reliquus, a, um. Remaining, the rest of, the other, left.

Remaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum.

To remain.

Rēmī, ōrum, m. pl. The Remī, a tribe of northern Gaul.

Reminiscor, i. To remember. RE-MINISCENCE.

Removeō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum. To remove.

Rēmus, \bar{i} , m. Oar.

Renovō, āre, āvī, ātum. To renew. Renovate.

Renuntio, are, avi, atum. To report. Renounce.

Repello, ere, reppuli, repulsum.

To drive back, repel, repulse.

REPEL.

Reperiō, ire, repperi, repertum. To find, discover.

Repeto, ere, ivi, or ii, itum. To seek, exact. REPEAT.

Reporto, are, avi, atum. To carry back. Report.

Rēs, rēī, f. Thing, affair; reason; rēs militāris, military affairs.

Rescisco, ere, scivi or scii, scitum.

To learn, ascertain.

Respició, ere, spēxī, spectum.

To regard, look upon. RESPECT.

Respondeo, ere, i, sponsum. To answer. Respond.

Restituō, ere, ui, ūtum. To restore. RESTITUTION.

Retineō, ēre, uī, tentum. To retain, keep. RETAIN.

Rettuli. See $refer\bar{o}$. Revertor, \bar{i} , revert \bar{i} , reversum.

To return. REVERT.
Rex. regis, m. King. Regal.

Rhēnus, ī, m. The Rhine.

Rhodanus, i, m. The Rhone.

Ripa, ae, f. Bank. RIPARIAN.

Röbur, oris, n. Oak.

Rogō, āre, āvī, ātum. To ask.

Roma, ae, f. Rome.

Rōmānus, a, um. Roman; Rōmānus, i, m., a Roman.

Rōmulus, i, m. Romulus, the legendary founder of Rome.

Rota, ae, f. Wheel. ROTATE. Rūmor, oris, m. Rumor, report. Rūrsus, adv. Again.

S.

Sabīnus, ī, m. Sabīnus, a lieutenant under Caesar.

Sacrificium, ii, n. Sacrifice.

Saepe, adv. Often.

Sagitta, ae, f. Arrow.

Salūs, ūtis, f. Safety, salvation, escape.

Santones, um, m. pl. The Santones or Santoni, a tribe of central Gaul.

Sanus, a, um. Sound, sane. Sane.

Sapiens, entis. Wise.

Sapienter, adv. Wisely.

Sapientia, ae, f. Wisdom.

Satis, adv. Enough; satis habēre or dūcere, to regard it as sufficient.

Scapha, ae, f. Skiff, boat.

Schola, ae, f. School.

Scientia, ae, f. Knowledge, skill. Science.

Seiŏ, īre, īvī or iī, ītum. To know.

Scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum. To write. Scribe.

¹ Revertor is deponent in the present system. The other forms are in the active voice.

Secundus, a, um. Second.
Sed, conj. But.
Sēdēs, is, f. Seat, abode; locus āc sēdēs, place of abode. SEAT.
Sēditiōsus, a, um. Seditious.
Segusiānī, ōrum, m. pl. The Segusiani, a tribe of southeastern

Gaul.
Sementis, is, f. Sowing, planting.
Semper, adv. Always, ever.

Senātus, ūs, m. Senate.

Seni, ae, a. 97, 172, 3. Six by six, six each, six.

Senones, um, m. pl. The Senones, a tribe of central Gaul.

Sententia, ae, f. Thought, opinion, plan. Sentence.

Sentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēnsum. To think. Sense.

Septem, indeclinable. Seven. Septimus, a, um. Seventh.

Sepultūra, ae, f. Burial. SEPUL-TURE.

Sequani, orum, m. pl. The Sequani or Sequanians, a tribe of eastern Gaul.

Sēquanus, a, um. Sequanian; Sēquanus, ī, m., a Sequanian, one of the Sequani.

Sequor, î, secūtus sum. To follow. SEQUENCE.

Sermő, önis, m. Discourse, conversation. Sermon.

Servio, īre, īvī or iī, ītum. To serve, subserve, be devoted to. Serve.

Servitūs, ūtis, f. Servitude, slavery. Servitude.

Servō, āre, āvī, ātum. To keep, preserve.

Servus, ī, m. Slavė. Serve. Sēsē. See **102**, 184, 4. Seu, conj. Or if; seu . . . sīve, either . . . or.

Sevērus, a, um. Severe.

Sex, indeclinable. Six.

Sexāgintā, indeclinable. Sixty.

Sextus, a, um. Sixth.

Si, conj. If.

Sicilia, ae, f. Sicily.

Significo, āre, āvī, ātum. To signify, indicate. Signify.

Signum, i, n. Standard; signa ferre, to carry the standards = to advance. Sign.

Silva, ae, f. Wood, forest. SYL-VAN.

Similis, e. Like. SIMILAR. Simpliciter, adv. Simply.

Simul, simul atque, conj. As soon as.

Sin, conj. But if.

Sincērē, adv. Truthfully. SINCERE.

Sine, prep. w. abl. Without.
Singulāris, e. Single, singly, individual, separate; singular, remarkable.
SINGULAR.

Sive, conj. Or if; sive . . . sive, either . . . or.

Socer, erī, m. Father-in-law. Socratēs, is, m. Socrates, a cele-

brated Greek philosopher.

Sõl, sõlis, m. Sun.

Sölum, adv. Only, alone.

Solvō, ere, ī, solūtum. To loose; with nāvēs expressed or understood, to set sail. Solve.

Spatium, ii, n. Space, interval, distance; time. Space.

Speciës, et, f. Look, appearance.

Spēs, spēi, f. Hope.

Spīritus, ūs, m. Breath; pl., airs, haughtiness. Spirit.

Subsequor, ī, secūtus sum.

SEQUENT.

follow close upon, follow. Sub-

Subsidium, iī, n. Support, reën-

Subsistō, ere, stitī. To make a

forcement, aid. Subsidiary.

stand; audācius subsistere, to

make a bolder stand. Subsist.

Subvenio, ire, vēnī, ventum.

off.

support.

furnish, supply.

remove. dislodue.

Spolio, āre, āvī, ātum. To de- 1 spoil, rob, deprive. Spoil. Spons, spontis, f. Used in gen. and abl. sing. only. Sponte, suā sponte, by one's own agency, by one's self, unassisted. Stabilitās, ātis, f. Stability, firmness. STABILITY. Statim, adv. Immediately. Statio, onis, f. Station, post, quard. STATION. Statuo, ere, ui, ūtum. To determine, decide. Stipendium, ii, n. Tax, tribute. STIPEND. Stō, āre, stetī, stātum. To stand. Strepitus, ūs, m. Din, noise. Studeo, ere, ui. To desire. STUDY. (Followed by the Dative.) Studium. ii, n. Desire. zeal. STUDY. Sub, prep. w. acc. and abl. IInder, up to, towards. Subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum. Todraw up; to withdraw, lead

come to the help of, succor, aid. Succēdo, ere, cessi, cessum. go up, come up, approach, succeed. Succeed. Sudes, is, f. Stake. Suēbī, ōrum, m. pl. The Suebi, Suevi or Suabians, a powerful German tribe. Suessiones, um, m. pl. The Suessiones, a tribe of northern Gaul. Sui. 102, 184. Of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves, of him, of her, of it, of them. Sulla, ae, m. Sulla, a celebrated Roman general and statesman. Sulpicius, a Sulpicius, $i\bar{\imath}_{b}$ m. lieutenant under Caesar. Sum, esse, fui. 140, 204. To be. Subeō, ire, ii, itum. To undergo. Summa, ae, f. Sum, sum total, Subiciō,¹ ere, jēcī, jectum. total. Sum. throw under, cast under, throw, Summus, a, um, sup. of superus. thrust; to subject. Subject. Highest, greatest; the summit Subitō, adv. Suddenly. Sublātus, a, um. See tollō. of, top of. Sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum. To Sublevo, āre, āvī, ātum. To assist, take. Sümptus, üs, m. Expense. Subministro, are, avī, atum. ToSuperbus, a, um. Proud. SU-Submittō, ere, mīsī, missum. ToPERB. send up to, send. Submit. Superior, us, comp. of superus. Submoveo, ere, movi, motum. Upper, higher; superior; pre-Tovious.

Supero, āre, āvi, ātum. To surpass; to conquer.

Supersum, esse, fuī. To survive.

Superus, a, um, comp. superior, sup. suprēmus and summus. Upper. See superior and summus.

Supplicātio, onis, f. Thanksgiv-ing.

Supplicium, ii, n. Punishment. Suprā. adv. Above.

Suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum. To take up, undertake.

Suspīciō, ōnis, f. Suspicion. Suspicor, ārī, ātus sum. To sus-

pect.

Sustineō, ēre, uī, tentum. To sustain, resist, withstand. SusTAIN.

Suus, a, um. His, her, hers, its, their.

T.

Tabula, ae, f. Table, tablet, record, document. Table.

Taceō, ēre, uī, itum. To be silent, to keep silent. TACIT.

Tam, adv. So, to such an extent.

Tamen, adv. Yet, still, nevertheless.

Tamesis, is, m. Thames.

Tametsi, conj. Although.

Tantus, a, um. So great; as great.

Tardō, āre, āvī, ātum. To retard, check. hinder, impede. TARDY. Tēlum, ī, n. Dart, weapon.

Temerārius, a, um. Rash.

Temere, adv. Rashly, unnecessarily.

Temperantia, ae, f. Temperance, self-control. TEMPERANCE.

Tempestās, ātis, f. Weather; tempest, storm. Tempest.

Templum, i, n. Temple.

Tempus, oris, n. Time. [restrain. Teneō, ēre, uī, tentum. To hold, Tentō, āre, āvī, ātum. To try. Tenuis, e. Thin; feeble.

Tergum, i, n. Back; terga vertere, to turn the back = to re-

treat, flee.

Terra, ae, f. Earth; land.

Terreö, ēre, uī, itum. To terrify, frighten. TERROR.

Terror, ōris, m. Terror, dread. Tertius, a, um. Third.

Testāmentum, ī, n. Will. Tes-

Testis, is, m. and f. Witness.

Tigurinus, i, m. Tigurinus, one of the four cantons of the Helvetii.

Timeö, ēre, ui. To fear. TIMID. Timor, ōris, m. Fear. TIMID. Titūrius, ii, m. Titurius, a lieutenant under Caesar.

Titus, i, m. Titus, a Roman name.

Tollo, ere, sustuli, sublatum. To lift up; to remove, take away; to exalt, encourage.

Tolosa, ae, f. Tolosa, a town in southern Gaul.

Tormentum, i, n. A military engine for throwing heavy missiles.

Tōtus, a, um. 45, 151. All, the whole of. Total.

Trādō, ere, didī, ditum. To givē up, surrender. Tradition. Trāgula, ae, f. Javelin, dart.

Trājectus, ūs, m. Passage, cross-

Trānō, āre, āvī, ātum. To swim across.

Trāns, prep. w. acc. Across, over, bewond.

Trānsdūco, ere, dūxī, ductum. To lead across, lead, conduct.

Trānseō, ire, ii, itum. To go over, cross. Transit.

Trānsiciō,1 ere, jēcī, jectum. To

pierce, transfix. Trănsporto, āre, āvi, ātum. To

carry over, take over, bring over, transport. Transport. Trēs, tria. 97, 175. Three.

Trēveri, ōrum, m. pl. The Treveri, a tribe of northeastern Gaul.

Tribūnus, ī, m. Tribune, one of the six principal officers of the legion.

Triduum, i, n. Three days, space of three days.

Trīgintā, indeclinable. Thirty. Trīnī, ae, a. 97, 172, 3. Three by three, three each, threefold, triple, three.

Triplex, icis. Threefold, triple. TRIPLE.

Tū, tuī. 102, 184. Thou, you. Tullia, ae, f. Tullia, a Roman name.

Tum, adv. Then.

Turma, ae, f. Troop.

Turris, is, f. Tower.

Tūtō, adv. Safely.

Tūtus, a, um. Safe.

Thy, Tuus, a, um. 102, 185. thine, your, yours.

Tyrannus, i, m. Tyrant.

U.

Ubi. adv. and coni. Where: when.

Ubii, ōrum, m. pl. The Ubii, a tribe of western Germany.

Ulciscor, i, ultus sum. To take ven= geance on, punish; to avenge.

Üllus, a, um. 45, 151. Any, any

Ulterior, us, comp. adj. 86, 166. Farther; Gallia Ulterior, Farther Gaul, Transalpine Gaul. Ūnā, adv. Together.

Unde, adv. Whence, from which place, from which.

Undecimus, a, um. Eleventh.

Undique, adv. On every side, on all sides; from every side, from all sides.

Universus, a, um. All, all together. Universe.

Unquam, adv. Ever, at any time. Ūnus, a, um. 97, 175. One, single. Unit.

Urbs, urbis, f. City. Urbane. Usipetes, um, m. pl. The Usipetes, a tribe of northwestern Germany.

Usque, adv. Even.

 $\bar{\mathrm{U}}_{\mathrm{SUS}}$, $\bar{\mathrm{u}}_{\mathrm{S}}$, m. Use, usage, experience; advantage. Use.

Ut, uti, conj. That, in order that.

Ut. adv. As.

Uter, tra, trum. 45, 151. Which (of two).

Uterque, utraque, utrumque, inflected like uter. Each; both. UTILITY.

Uscful. Utilis, c.

Ūtilitās, ātis, f. Usefulness; interest, expediency. UTILITY. Utinam, interj. O that! would that! Utor, i, ūsus sum. To use. Utrum, conj. Whether; utrum . . . an, whether . . . or. Uxor, ōris, f. Wife.

Vaco, are, avī, atum. To be without, be free from; to be vacant, empty, unoccupied. VACATE. Vacuus, a, um. Vacant, empty, . deserted, abandoned. Vadum, i, n. Ford; shoal. Valeo, ere, ui, itum. To avail, prevail, have force or influence. Vallum, i, n. Rampart.

Vastō, āre, āvī, ātum. To lay waste.

-Ve, conj. enclitic. Or. Vectigal, alis, n. Tax; revenue. Vel, conj. Either; or; vel ... vel, either . . . or.

Vellem. See volo.

Veneti, orum, m. pl. The Veneti, a tribe of western Gaul.

Venetia, ae, f. Venetia, the country of the Veneti.

Venio, ire, veni, ventum. To come, arrive.

Wind. Ventus, i, m.

VER-Vēr, vēris, n. Spring.

Veragri, orum, m. pl. The Veragri, a tribe of southeastern Gaul.

Verbigenus, i, m. Verbigenus, Viginti, indeclinable. Twenty.

one of the four cantons of the Helvetii.

Verbum, i, n. Word. VERB. Vercingetorix, igis, m. Vercingetorix, a Gallic chieftain.

Vergobretus, i, m. Vergobretus, the title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.

Vērō, adv. and conj. In truth, indeed; but.

Versor, ārī, ātus sum. To be busied, occupied, engaged. VERSED.

Verto, ere, i, sum. To turn; terga vertere, to turn the back = to retreat, flee.

Vērum, i, n. Truth.

Vērus, a, um. True.

Vesontio, onis, m. Vesontio, a town in eastern Gaul, now Besançon.

Vesper, eri, m. Evening.

Vester, tra, trum. 102, 185. Your, yours.

Vestio, îre, îvî or iî, îtum. clothe.

Veterānus, a, um. Veteran.

Vetus, eris. Old, ancient; former. Via, ae, f. Way.

Viātor, ōris, m. Traveller.

Vicis, gen., nom. wanting, f. Turn; in vicem, in turn.

Victor, ôris, m. Conqueror.

Victoria, ae, f. Victory.

Victoria, ae, f. Victoria.

Vicus, i, m. Village.

Video, ēre, vidī, visum. To see. Videor, ērī, vīsus sum.2 To seem. Vigilia, ae, f. Watch.3 Vigil.

¹ See 103, foot-note 2.

Vinciō, īre, vinxī, vinctum. To bind, confine.

Vincō, ere, vicī, victum. To conquer.

Vinculum, i, n. Fetter, bond, chain.

Vindex, icis, m. and f. Defender. Vir, virī, m. Man.

Virgŏ, inis, f. Maiden. VIRGIN. Virtūs, ūtis, f. Virtue, valor,

courage, bravery. VIRTUE.

Vis. vis. f. Force, violence: vim

Vis, vis, f. Force, violence; vim facere, to use violence; vīrēs, ium, pl., strength.

Vīsus, a, um. See videō.

Vīta, ae, f. Life. VITAL.

Vītō, āre, āvī, ātum. To avoid, shun.

Vitrum, i, n. Woad, a plant used for dyeing blue.

Vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctum. To live. Vocō, āre, āvī, ātum. To call summon.

Volŏ, velle, voluī. 273, 293. To wish, to be willing.

Voluntās, ātis, f. Wish, good will, consent. Voluntary.

Volusēnus, i, m. Volusenus, an officer in Caesar's army.

Vox, vocis, f. Voice, utterance. Voice.

Vulgō, adv. Commonly, as a general thing, universally.

Vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātum. To wound.

Vulnus, eris, n. Wound.

Vultis. See volo.

Vultus, üs, m. Countenance, face; vultum fingere, to control the countenance.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

Α.

A. See page 18, foot-note 4.

Able, to be able. Possum, posse, potuī. 269, 290.

About, concerning. $D\bar{e}$, prep. w. abl. About, around, circum, prep. w. acc.

Above. Suprā, adv.

Acceptable. Grātus, a, um; acceptus, a, um.

Accomplish. Perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum; cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum.

Accordance, in accordance with. Often expressed by the Ablative. **158**, 413.

Accuse. Accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum; īnsimulō, āre, āvī, ātum. 285.

Across, over. In, w. abl. To lead across, trānsdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum. See 275, 19.

Adopt. Capiō, ere, cēpī, captum; ineō, īre, iī, itum.

Advance, to advance. Sīgna fero, ferre, tulī, lātum; prōgredior, ī, prōgressus sum.

Advise. Moneō, ēre, uī, itum.

Aedul. Aedul, orum, m. pl.

Affair. Rēs, rēī, f.; military affairs, rēs mīlitāris.

After. Post, adv.; posteāquam, postquam, conj.

Against. Contrā, prep. w. acc.; in, prep. w. acc.; to wage against, īnferō, ferre, intulī, illātum.

Ahead, to send ahead. Praemitto, ere, mīsī, missum.

Aid. Auxilium, iī, n. To aid, juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum.

All. Omnis, e; tōtus, a, um, 45, 151; ūniversus, a, um; on all sides, undique.

Alone. Sōlum, adv.

Already. Jam, adv.

Also. Etiam, adv. and conj.; quoque, adv.

Although. Etsī, tametsī, conj. 254, 515.

Always. Semper, adv.

Ambassador. Lēgātus, ī, m.

Among. Apud, prep. w. acc.; in, prep. w. acc. and abl.

An. See page 25, foot-note 1.

Ancient. Prīstinus, a, um; antīquus, a, um.

And. Et; que, **103**; atque, āc; conj.

Animal. Animal, ālis, n.

Announce. Nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Answer. Respondeo, ēre, ī, sponsum.

Any. Ūllus, a, um, **45**, 151; anything, n. of quis or aliquis, **106**, 190.

Appoint. Indīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum.

Approach. Adventus, ūs, m. To approach, succēdō, ere, cessī, cessum.

Approve. Probō, āre, āvī, ātum. Aquitani. Aquitānī, ōrum, m. pl.

Arar. Arar, aris, m. 128. Ariovistus. Ariovistus, $\bar{\imath}$, m. Arms. Arma, $\bar{o}rum$, n. pl. Army. Exercitus, $\bar{u}s$, m. Arouse. $Excit\bar{o}$, $\bar{a}re$, $\bar{a}v\bar{\imath}$, $\bar{a}tum$.

Arrival. Adventus, ūs, m. Arrogance. Arrogantia, ae, f.

Art, work. Opus, eris, n. Artemīsia, ae, f.

As. Ut; as not to, ut non, 123, 500; as soon as, simul, simul atque, conj.

Ascend. Ascendō, ere, ī, scēnsum.

Ascertain. Cōgnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitum.

Ask. Rogō, āre, āvī, ātum; to ask for, rogō.

Assail. Aggredior, ī, gressus sum. Assault. Oppūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum. Assemble, come together. Conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.

Assist. Juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum.
Assure. Cōnfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum.
At. Ad, prep. w. acc.; in, prep. w. abl.; often expressed by the Locative or by the Locative Ablative, 185, 425; at length, dēmum, adv.

Attack. Impetus, ūs, m. To attack, oppūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum; aggredior, ī, gressus sum.

Attempt. Cōnātus, ūs, m. To attempt, cōnor, ārī, ātus sum.

attempt, conor, ari, atus sum. Audacity. Audācia, ae, f. Authority. Auctōritās, ātis, f.

Avail. Valeö, ēre, uī, itum.

Avoid. Vītō, āre, āvī, ātum. Avenge. Persequor, ī, secūtus sum.

Await. Exspectō, āre, āvī, ātum.

B.

Back, to lead back. Redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum; to drive back, repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum; repulsō, āre, āvī, ātum.

repulso, āre, avi, atun Band. Manus, ūs, f.

Bank. Ripa, ae, f.

Barbarian. Barbarus, ī, m.

Barbarous. Barbarus, a, um. Battle. Proelium, iī, n.; pūgna, ae, f.; line of battle, aciēs, ēī, f.; a battle takes place. nūgnūtur.

a battle takes place, pūqnātur. Be. Sum, esse, fuī, 140, 204; to be able, possum, posse, potuī, **269**, 290; to be eager, $\bar{a}rde\bar{o}$, ēre, ārsī, ārsum; to be free from, vacō, āre, āvī, ātum; to be from, to be distant from, absum, abesse, āfuī; to be greatly pleased with, adamo, āre, āvī, ātum; to be in command of, praesum, esse, $fu\bar{i}$; to be silent, taceo, ēre, uī, itum; to be unwilling, $n\bar{o}l\bar{o}$, $n\bar{o}lle$, $n\bar{o}lu\bar{\imath}$, 273, 293; to be well supplied, abundō, are, avi, atum; to be willing, volo, velle, volui, **273**, 293,

Fero, ferre, tuli, lātum. Bear. **269**. 292.

Beautiful. Pulcher, chra, chrum. Because. Quod, conj.

Before. Ante, adv., and prep. w. acc.; pro, prep. w. abl.; antequam, priusquam, conjunction.

Beg. Orō, āre, āvī, ātum; rogō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Beginning. Initium, iī, n.

Behind. Post, prep. w. acc.

Belgae, Belgians. Belgae, arum,

Believe. Crēdo, ere, didī, ditum. (Followed by the Dative of the person.)

Besiege. Obsideo, ēre, sēdī, sessum.

Betake one's self. Se mando, āre, āvī, ātum; sē recipio, ere, cēpī, ceptum.

Beyond, across. Trāns, prep. w. acc.

Bid. Liceor, ērī, itus sum. Bird. Avis, is, f.

Bituriges. Bituriges, um, m. pl. Blame, Culpa, ae, f.

Liber, brī, m. Book.

Boundary, natural boundaries. Nātūra locī.

Boy. Puer, erī, m.

Brave. Fortis, e.

Bravely. Fortiter, adv.

Bravery. Virtūs, ūtis, f.

Bridge. Pons, pontis, m.

Bring. Portō, āre, āvī, ātum; to bring over, trānsportō, āre, $\bar{a}v\bar{i}$, $\bar{a}tum$; to bring to an end,

conficio, ere, feci, fectum.

Britons. Britannī, ōrum, m. pl. Brother. Frāter, tris, m.

Build. Aedifico, are, avī, atum; to make, facio, ere, feci, factum.

Burn. Exūrō, ere, ussī, ūstum; combūrō, ere, ussī, ūstum; to set on fire, incendō, ere, ī, cēnsum.

But. Autem, conj., see foot-note, p. 316; sed, conj.

Buy up. Redimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptum.

By. \overline{A} , ab, prep. w. abl.; often expressed by the Ablative alone; 78, 420; by far, longe, multo, adv.

\mathbf{C} .

Caesar, aris, m. Calamity. Calamitās, ātis. f.

Call, name. Appello, āre, āvī, ātum; nōminō, āre, āvī, ātum; to call together, convoco, are, āvī, ātum.

Camp. Castra, ōrum, n. pl. Can. Possum, posse, potuī. 269, 290.

Canton. Pāgus, ī, m.

Captive. Captīvus, ī, m.

Carry, take. Portō, āre, āvī, ātum; to bear, fero, ferre, tulī, lātum; to carry over, trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Karthāgō, inis, f. Carthage.

Cassius. Cassius, iī, m.

Causa, ae, f. Cause.

Celtae, ārum, m. pl. Celts.

Censure. Accūso, āre, āvī, ātum. Centurion. Centurio, onis, m.

Check. Tardō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Chief. Princeps, ipis; summus, a, um; a chief, chieftain, prīnceps, ipis, m.

Cicero. Cicerō, ōnis, m.
Citizen. Cīvis, is, m.
City. Urbs, urbis, f.
Civilization. Hūmānitās, ātis, f.
Civilized. Hūmānus, a, um.
Close. Claudō, ere, sī, sum.
Clothe. Vestiō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum.
Cloud. Nūbēs, is, f.
Collect. Cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum.
Come. Veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.

Come. Veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum. Command. Jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussum; imperō, āre, āvī, ātum; to be in command, praesum, esse, fuī; to place in command, praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum; under one's command, dux in Ablative Absolute.

Commander. Imperātor, \bar{o} ris, m. Commit. $Admitt\bar{o}$, ere, $m\bar{s}\bar{s}$, missum.

Companion. Comes, itis, m. and f. Compel. $C\bar{o}g\bar{o}$, ere, $co\bar{e}g\bar{\imath}$, co- $\bar{a}ctum$.

Concerning. $D\bar{e}$, prep. w. abl. Conduct. $D\bar{e}d\bar{u}c\bar{o}$, ere, $d\bar{u}x\bar{i}$, ductum.

Confidence. Fidēs, žī, f.
Congratulate. Grātulor, ārī, ātus
sum. (Followed by the Dative.)
Conquer. Superō, āre, āvī, ātum;
vincō, ere, vīcī, vīctum.

Conqueror. Vīctor, ōris, m.
Consider, think. Putō, āre, āvī,
ātum; arbitror, ārī, ātus sum;
exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Conspire. Conjūrō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Consul. Cōnsul, ulis, m.
Consult. Cōnsulō, ere, uī, sultum.

Contented, Contentus, a, um. Continually. Continenter, adv. Contrary to. Contrā, prep. w. acc. Convention. Conventus, ūs, m. Conversation. Sermō, ōnis, m. Council. Concilium, iī, n.; conventus, ūs, m. Counsel. Consilium, iī, n. Country. Terra, ae, f.; fields, agrī, ōrum, m. pl.; one's country, native country, patria, ae, f. Courage. Virtūs, ūtis, f. Crassus. Crassus, ī, m. Crime. Facinus, oris, n. Cross. Trānseō, īre, iī, itum. Crown. Corona, ae, f. Custom, Mös, möris, m.

D.

Cut off. Interclūdō, ere, sī, sum

Daily. Cotīdiē, adv.

Danger. Perīculum, ī, n.

Dare. Audeō, ēre, ausus sum.

See 259, cōnfīdo.

Dart. Tēlum, ī, n.

Daughter. Fīlia, ae, f.

Daunt. Perterreō, ēre, uī, itum.

Day. Diēs, ēī, m. and f.

Daybreak. Prīma lūx.

Daylight. Lūx, lūcis, f.

Dear. Cārus, a, um.

Death. Mors, mortis, f.; to put to death, interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum.

Davido. Cōnstituō ere uī ūtum:

Decide. Constituo, ere, uī, ūtum; statuo, ere, uī, ūtum.

Defeat. Superō, āre, āvī, ātum; vincō, ere, vicī, victum.

Defence, in defence of. $Pr\bar{o}$, prep. w. abl.

Dēfendō, ere, ī, fēn-Defend. sum.

Deliberate. Dēlīberō, āre, āvī, $\bar{a}tum_{-}$

Deliberation. Gerund of delibero. Delight. Dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātum. Demand. Postulo, are, avī, atum; flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Deserter. Fugitīvus, ī, m.

Deservedly. Merito, adv.

Desire. Studium, iī, n. To desire, studeo, ēre, uī (followed by the Dative); cupio, ere, īvī or iī, ītum.

Desirous. Cupidus, a, um.

Detain. Dētineo, ēre, uī, tentum. Deter. Dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum.

Determine. Constituo, ere, ui, ūtum.

Detest. $\bar{O}d\bar{\imath}$, isse.

Devastate. Vastō, āre, āvī, ātum. Difficulty. Difficultās, ātis, f.

Diminish. Dēminuō, ere, ī, ūtum.

Direction. Pars, partis, f.

Disposition. Animus, ī, m.

Distant, to be distant. Absum, esse, āfuī.

Premo, ere, pressi, Distress. pressum.

Perturbō, āre, āvī, Disturb. ātum; commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum.

Divide. Dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsum. Divine. Divinus, a, um.

Division. Pars, partis, f.

Divitiacus. Divitiacus, ī, m.

Faciō, ere, fēcī, factum; gerō, ere, gessī, gestum.

Double. Duplex, icis.

Doubt. Dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum. Draw up. Instruō, ere, strūxī,

 $str\bar{u}ctum$

Drive back. Repello, ere, reppuli, repulsum: to drive out, ēiciō, ere, jēcī, jectum.

Druids. Druides, um, m. pl.

Dumnorix. Dumnorix, igis, m. During. Usually expressed by the Accusative. 98, 379.

Incolō, ere, uī, cultum, Dwell. habitō, āre, āvi, ātum.

E.

Each. Uterque, traque, trumque, inflected like uter, 45, 151; with each other, inter sē.

Eager, to be eager. Ardeo, ēre, ārsī, ārsum.

Easily. Facile, adv.

Easy. Facilis, e; very easy, perfacilis, e.

Eight. Octo, indeclinable.

Eighth. Octāvus, a, um.

Either. Aut, conj.; either . . . or, aut . . . aut.

Embassy. Lēgātiō, ōnis, f.

Enclose. Contineo, ēre, uī, tentum.

End, to bring to an end. Conficio, ere, feci, fectum.

Endure. Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum. 269, 292,

Enemy. Hostis, is, m. and f.; inimīcus, ī, m.

Effemino, are, avī, Enervate. $\bar{a}tum.$

Conscrībo, ere. Enlist. enrol. scrīpsī, scrīptum.

Entangled. Impedītus, a, um.

Confirmo, are, avī, Establish. ātum.

Even. Etiam, adv.

Ever, always. Semper, adv.

Except. Praeterquam, adv. See 279, sentence 17. Exchange. Inter sē dō, dare, de $d\bar{\imath}$, datum. Exile. Exsul, ulis, m. and f. Expect. Exspecto, are, avī, atum. Expense. Sūmptus, ūs, m. Experience. $\overline{U}sus$, $\overline{u}s$, m. Explore. Exploro, āre, āvī, àtum.

Excellently. $\vec{E}gregi\bar{e}$, adv.

F.

Expose. Nūdō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Faithful. Fīdus, a, um; fidēlis, e. False. Falsus, a, um. Far. Longe, adv. Father. Pater, tris, m. Father-in-law. Socer, erī, m. Favor. Grātia, ae, f. To favor, faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautum. (Followed by the Dative.) Timor, ōris, m. To fear, timeo, ēre, uī. Fertile. Fertilis, e. Fertility. Fertilitās, ātis, f. Few. Paucī, ae, a. Fortify. $\bar{i}tum.$ Field. Ager, grī, m. Fierce. Ferus, a, um. Fifth. $Qu\bar{i}ntus$, a, um. Fight. Pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum; fighting goes on, pūgnatur; 281, 301. Fill. Compleo, ēre, ēvī, ētum. mum.Find. Reperio, ire, repperi, repertum. Finish. Conficio, ere, feci, fectum.

Fire. *Ignis*, is, m; to set on fire, incendō, ere, ī, cēnsum.

Primus, a, um.

Five. Quinque, indeclinable.

First.

Flight. Fuga, ae, f. Flow. Fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxum. Foe. Inimīcus, ī, m. Sequor, ī, secūtus sum. Follow. Foot. Pēs, pedis, m. Foot-soldier. Pedes, itis, m. For. Pro, prep. w. abl.; ad, prep. w. acc.; for, on account of, ob, prep. w. acc.; for is often expressed by the Dative, 54, 384; for, during, per, prep. w. acc.; often expressed by the Accusative alone, 98, 379; to ask for, rogō, āre, āvī, ātum; to wait for, exspecto, are, avī, atum. Force. Cogo, ere, coegi, coactum Forced marches. Māgna itinera: Forces. Copiae, arum, f. pl. Forest. Silva, ae, f. Form line of battle. Aciem instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum. Formerly. Anteā, adv. Forth, to go forth. Exeo, ire, $i\bar{\imath}$, itum; to lead forth, $\bar{e}d\bar{u}c\bar{o}$, ere, dūxī, ductum. Fortification. $M\bar{u}n\bar{i}ti\bar{o}$, $\bar{o}nis$, f. Mūnio, īre, īvī or iī, Fortune. Fortūna, ae, f. Forward, to send forward. Praemittō, ere, mīsī, missum. Fourteenth. Quārtus decimus, quārta decima, quārtum deci-Free. $L\bar{\imath}ber$, era, erum; to be free from, vacō, āre, āvī, ātum. To free, līberō, āre, āvī, ātum. Freedom. Libertas, atis, f. Frequent. Crēber, bra, brum. Frequently. Saere, adv. Friend. $Am\bar{\imath}cus$, $\bar{\imath}$, m. Friendly. $Am\bar{i}cus$, a, um.

Friendship. $Am\bar{i}citia$, ae, f: From. \bar{A} , ab, $d\bar{e}$, prep. w. abl.; to be distant from, absum, esse, $\bar{a}fu\bar{i}$.

Front, in front of. $Pr\bar{o}$, prep. w. abl.

Future. Reliquum tempus; for the future, in future, in reliquum tempus.

G.

Galba. Galba, ae, m. Praesidium, iī, n. Garrison. Gate. Porta, ae, f. Gaul, the country. Gallia, ae, f. Gaul, a Gaul, Gallus, ī, m. Gem. Gemma, ae, f. General. Imperātor, ōris, m. Geneva. Genāva, ae, f. German. Germānus, ī, m. Gift. Donum, i, n. Girl. Puella, ae, f. Give. Dō, dare, dedī, datum; to give up, trādo, ere, didī, ditum; reddō, ere, didī, ditum. Glory. Gloria, ae, f. Go. Eō, īre, īvī or iī, itum, 277, 295; to go forth, exeo, ire, ii, itum; fighting goes on, pūgnātur, 281, 301. Gold. Aurum, i, n. Golden, gold. Aureus, a, um. Good. Bonus, a, um, comp. melior, sup. optimus. Grain. Frūmentum, ī, n. Grandson. Nepos, otis, m. Great. Māgnus, a, um; so great, tantus, a, um. Greatly, to be greatly pleased with. Adamō, āre, āvī, ātum. Greece. Graecia, ae, f.

Greek. Graecus, a, um; a Greek, Graecus, i, m.

Grief. Dolor, ōris, m.

Guard. Cūstōdiō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum.

Guest. Hospes, itis, m. and f.

H.

Hand. Manus, ūs, f. Happen. Fīō, fierī, factus sum. 277, 294.

Happily. Feliciter, adv.

Harbor. Portus, üs, m.

Harm. Maleficium, iī, n.

Hasten. Contendō, ere, ī, tum; mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Have. Habeō, ēre, uī, itum; to have power, possum, posse, potuī, 269, 290; to have to, often expressed by the Gerundive, 266, 234.

He. Is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud; htc; haec, hoc; 102, 186; often only implied in the ending of the verb.

Hear. Audiō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum. Height. Altitūdō, inis, f.

Help. Auxilium, iī, n. To help, juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum.

Helvetii. $Helv\bar{e}ti\bar{i}$, $\bar{o}rum$, m. pl. Hesitate. $Dubit\bar{o}$, $\bar{a}re$, $\bar{a}v\bar{i}$, $\bar{a}tum$. High. Altus, a, um.

Hill. Collis, is, m.

Himself. $Su\bar{i}$, **102**, 184; *ipse*, a, um, **102**, 186.

His. Suus, a, um; sometimes expressed by the genitive of is or ille; sometimes not expressed in Latin.

Hold. Teneō, ēre, uī, tentum; to regard, habeō, ēre, uī, itum.

Home. Domus, ūs, f.; at home, domī, 185, 426; homeward, home, domum, 277, 380.

Honor, ornament. Ōrnāmentum, ī, n.

Hope. Spēs, spēī, f.

Horse. Equus, \bar{i} , m.

Horseman. Eques, itis, m. Hostage. Obses, idis, m. and f.

Hour. Hora, ae, f.

How. Quam, adv.; how large, quantus, a, um; how many, quot, indeclinable.

Hundred. Centum, indeclinable. Hurl. Cōiciō, ere, jēcī, jectum.

I.

I. Ego, meī. 102, 184.
If. Sī, conj. 250, 507.
Implore. Implōrō, āre, āvī, ātum.
Import. Importō, āre, āvī, ātum.
In. In, prep. w. acc. and abl.; in front of, prō, prep. w. abl.; in regard to, dē, prep. w. abl.; in the vicinity of, ad, apud, circum, prep. w. acc.; to plead in chains, ex vinculīs; in such a way, ita, adv.
Incessantly. Continenter, adv.

Incessantly. Continenter, adv.

Inflict. Infero, ferre, intuli, illatum; to inflict punishment, sūmo, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, with supplicium; literally, to take punishment.

Inform. Certi\(\bar{o}\)rem faci\(\bar{o}\), ere, f\(\bar{e}\bar{c}\)rel\(\bar{i}\), factum; to be informed, certior fier\(\bar{i}\).

Inhabit. Incolō, ere, uī, cultum; habitō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Inhabitant. Is quī incolit, literally, he who inhabits.

Inquire. Quaero, ere, sīvī or siī, sītum.

Intend. In animō esse, w. Dative; I intend, mihǐ in animō est; to intend is often expressed by the future active participle, 266, 233.

Intention, it is my intention.

Mihi in animo est.

Interest, to be for one's interest.

Interest, esse, fuit. 281, 301.

Interior of. Interior, us, in agreement with noun.

Into. In, prep. w. acc.

Island. Insula, ae, f.

It. Is, ea, id; ille, a, ud; hīc, haec, hōc; 102, 186; often only implied in the ending of the verb.

Italy. Italia, ae, f.

Its. Suus, a, um; sometimes expressed by the genitive of is or ille; sometimes not expressed in Latin.

J.

Judge, Jūdex, icis, m. and f. To judge, jūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum. Justice. Jūstitia, ae, f.

K.

Keep. Teneō, ēre, uī, tentum; contineō, ēre, uī, tentum; re tineō, ēre, uī, tentum; habeō, ēre, uī, itum; to prevent, prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum.

Kent. Cantium, iī, n.

King. Rēx, rēgis, m.

Know. Sciō, īre, īvī or īī, ītum; intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctum.

Knowledge. Scientia, ae, J.

T.

Lake. Lacus, üs, m. Land. Terra, ae, f.; lands, fields, agrī, ōrum, m. pl. Large. Magnus, a, um, comp. mājor, sup. māximus; how large, quantus, a, um. Last, nearest. Proximus, a, um. Latinus, Latinus, i, m. Lavinia. Lāvīnia, ae, f. Law. Lēx, lēgis, f. Lav waste. Vasto, āre, āvī, ātum. Lead. $D\bar{u}c\bar{o}$, ere, $d\bar{u}x\bar{i}$, ductum; to lead across, trānsdūcō, ere, $d\bar{u}x\bar{\imath}$, ductum; to lead back, redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum; to lead out, ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum. Leader. Princeps, ipis, m. and f.; dux, ducis, m. and f. Learning. Doctrina, ae, f. Leave. Relinquo, ere, liqui, lictum.Legion. Legio, onis, f. Lemannus, i, m. Length, at length. Dēmum, adv. Letter of the alphabet. Littera, ae, f.: letter, epistle, epistula, ae, f.; litterae, arum, f. pl. Liberty. Libertās, ātis, f. Lieutenant. Lēgātus, ī, m. Life. Vita, ae, f. Like very much. Adamō, āre, āvī, ātum. Line. $A ci\bar{e}s$, $\bar{e}\bar{i}$, f.; line of battle,

acies; line of march, agmen,

Listen to. Audiō, īre, īvī or iī,

Vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctum. Long. Longe, adv.; a long time,

inis, n.

 $\bar{i}tum.$

Live.

diū, comp. diūtius, sup. diūtissimē, adv.

Love. Amor, oris, m. To love. amō, āre, āvī, ātum.

M. Magistrate. Magistrātus, ūs, m.

Facio, ere, fēcī, factum; Make. to make war, gero, ere, gessi, gestum: infero, ferre, intuli, illātum. Homō, inis, m. and f.; Man. vir, virī, m. Many, much. Multus, a, um; how many, quot, indeclinable. Iter, itineris, n.; forced marches, māgna itinera; line of march, ägmen, inis, n. To march, iter facio, facere, feci, factum. Marcus, Mārcus, ī, m. Match, a match for. Par, paris. May. Licet, ēre, licuit, 281, 301. Menapii. Menapii, ōrum, m. pl. Merchant. Mercator, oris, m. Messenger, Nūntius, iī, m. Midday. Merīdiēs, ēī, m. Mile. Mīlle passūs; 247, footnote. Military. Mīlitāris, e; military affairs, rēs mīlitāris. Animus, ī, m.; mēns, Mind. mentis. f. Moat. Fossa, ae, f. Month. Mēnsis, is, m.

Mother. Mater, tris, f.

Gerundive. 266, 234.

āre, āvī, ātum.

Must.

Mountain. Mons, montis, m.

Much, to like very much, adamo,

Often expressed by the

My. Meus, a, um. 102, 185.
Myself. Ego, meī, 102, 184; ipse, a, um, 102, 186.

N.

Name. Nōminō, āre, āvī, ātum. Nation. Gēns, gentis, f.; nātiō, ōnis, f.

Natural boundaries. Nātūra locī.

Nature. Nātūra, ae, f. Navigate. Nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Navigation. Gerund of $n\bar{a}vig\bar{o}$.

Near. Apud, ad, prep. w. acc.

Nearer. Propior, us.

Nearly. Ferē, adv.; paene, adv.

Neighbor. Finitimus, i, m. Neighboring. Finitimus, a, um;

prōximus, a, um. Nervii. Nerviī, ōrum, m. pl.

Nervii. Nervii, orum, m. pl. Never. Nūnguam, adv.

New. Novus, a, um.

Next. Prōximus, a, um.

No. Nūllus, a, um, **45**, 151; nihil w. Partitive Genitive, **28**, 397.

Noble. Nobilis, e.

Not. Non, adv.; w. imperative or subjunctive of desire, nē, adv.; not? nonne? conj., interrogative particle; not yet, nondum, adv.

Number. Numerus, i, m.

0.

Obey. Pāreō, ēre, uī, itum. (Followed by the Dative.)
Observe. Observō, āre, āvī, ātum.
Obtain possession of. Potior, īrī,
ītus sum; 258, 421; to obtain
one's request, impetrō, āre, āvī,
ātum.

Occupy. Occupō, āre, āvī, ātum. Octodurus. Octōdūrus, ī, m.

Of. $D\bar{e}$, \bar{e} , ex, prep. w. abl.; out of, \bar{e} , ex; in front of, $pr\bar{o}$, prep. w. abl.

Off, to cut off. Interclū $d\bar{o}$, ere, $s\bar{\imath}$, sum.

Often. Saepe, adv.

On, at. Ad, prep. w. acc.; in. prep. w. abl.; on the side of, ā, ab, prep. w. abl.; on all sides, undique, adv.; fighting goes on, pūgnātur, 281, 301.

One. $\bar{U}nus$, a, um; **97**, 175; that one, is, ea, id; ille, a, ud; **102**, 186.

Open. Apertus, a, um.

Opinion. Sententia, ae, f.

Or. Aut, conj.; in questions, an, conj.

Oration. _Orātiō, ōnis, f.

Orator. Ōrātor, ōris, m.

Order. Imperō, āre, āvī, ātum; jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussum; in order that, ut, conj. 119, 497.

Other. Alius, a, ud; 45, 151; the remaining, reliquus, a, um; with each other, inter sē.

Ought. Dêbeō, êre, uī, itum; often expressed by the Gerundive, **266**, 234.

Our. Noster, tra, trum.

Out of. Ex, \bar{e} , prep. w. abl.; to lead out, $\bar{e}d\bar{u}c\bar{o}$, ere, $d\bar{u}x\bar{\imath}$, ductum; to set out, $profic\bar{\imath}scor$, $\bar{\imath}$, profectus sum.

Over. Per, trāns, prep. w. acc., a bridge over, in, prep. w. abl.; to bring over, carry over, trānsportō, āre, āvī, ālum.

Owe. Dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum.

Own. Suus, a, um.

P.

Pass the winter. Hiemō, āre, āvī,

Passionate. $Ir\bar{a}cundus$, a, um.

Dolor, oris, m.

Part. Pars, partis, f.

Pain.

ātum.

Patiently. Patienter, adv. Peace. Pāx, pācis, f. Pedius, iī, m. Pedius. Penalty. Poena, ae, f. People. Populus, ī, m. Peril. Periculum, i, n. Perilous. Perīculosus, a, um. Persuade. Persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum. (Followed by the Dative of the person.) Pisistratus. Pisistratus, ī, m. Locus, i, m., pl. loca, ōrum, n.; a battle takes place, pūgnātur. To place, pōnō, ere, posuī, positum; collocō. āre, āvī, ātum; constituo, ere, $u\bar{\imath}$, $\bar{u}tum$; to place in command, praeficio, ere, fēcī, fectum. Consilium, ii, n.; sen-Plan. tentia, ae, f. Plato. Plato, onis, m. Plead. Dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum; agō, ere, ēgī, āctum. Pleased, to be greatly pleased with. Adamō, āre, āvī, ātum. Plough. Arō, āre, āvī, ātum. Poet. Poēta, ae, m. Pompey. Pompēius, iī, m. Populace. Plēbs, plēbis, f. Position. Locus, ī, m., pl. loca,

ōrum. n.

est.

Possession, to obtain possession of. Potior, īrī, ītus sum, 258, 421; to take possession of, occupō, āre, āvī, ātum. Potentia, ae, f.; regal Power. power, regnum, i, n.; to have power, possum, posse, potuī, 269, 290. Praise. Laudō, āre, āvī, ātum. Prefer. Mālō, mālle, māluī. 273. 293. Prepare. Paro, āre, āvī, ātum; comparo, āre, āvī, ātum. Prepared. Parātus, a, um. Present. Dono, āre, āvī, ātum. Present, for the present. In praesentiā. Valeo, ēre, uī, itum. Prevail. Prevent. Prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum. Previously. Anteā, adv. Price. Pretium, ii, n. Propose a law. Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, 269, 292. Protect, fortify. Mūniō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum. Praesidium, iī, n. Protection. Pröspiciō, ere, spēxī, Provide. spectum; provideo, ēre, vīdī, (Followed by the Davīsum. tive.) Province. Provincia, ae, f. Provisions. Cibāria, ōrum, n. pl. Punishment. Supplicium, ii, n. Pupil. Discipulus, ī, m. Purpose. Consilium, ii, n.; conātus, ūs, m.; for the purpose of, causā w. Genitive. Pursue. Sequor, ī, secūtus sum; īnsequor, ī, secūtus sum; per-Possess. Habeō, ēre, uī, itum; sequor, ī, secūtus sum. sum, esse, fuī in w. abl.; he pos-Put to death. Interficio, ere, fecī, sesses wisdom, sapientia in eō

fectum; occīdo, ere, ī, sum.

Q.

Quarters, winter quarters. $H\bar{\imath}$ -berna, $\bar{o}rum$, n. pl.
Queen. $R\bar{e}g\bar{\imath}na$, ae, f.
Quickly. Celeriter, adv.

R.

Rampart. Vallum, ī, n. Rash. Temerārius, a, um. Kather than. Quam, conj. Ravage. Dēpopulor, ārī, ātus sum.Reach, arrive at. Adeō, īre, iī, itum; venio, īre, vēnī, ventum; perveniö, ire, vēnī, ventum; to extend, pertineo, ere, ui, tentum.Read. Lego, ere, legi, lectum. Readily. Facile, adv. Ready. Parātus, a, um. Rear. Novissimum āgmen, novissimī āgminis, n. Reason. Causa, ae, f.; rēs, rēi, f. Recollection. Memoria, ae, f. Reference, with reference to. $D\tilde{e}$, prep. w. abl. Refinement. Cultus, ūs, m. Regal power. Rēgnum, ī, n. Regard, to regard as. Habeo, ere, uī, itum prō w. abl.; in regard to, dē, prep. w. abl. Region. Regio, onis, f. Reject. Recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum. Rely upon. Confido, ere, fisus sum. See 259. Remain. Maneō, ĕre, mānsī, mānsum; permaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum; remaneō, ēre, mānsī, $m\bar{a}nsum$: to remain silent, taceō, ēre, uī, itum.

Remember. Reminiscor, i. 258, 231. Remi. $R\bar{e}m\bar{i}$, $\bar{o}rum$, m. pl. Remove. Moveo, ere, movi, motum : removeo, ere, movi, motum.Renew. Renovō, āre, āvī, ātum. Renowned. Clārus, a, um. Repent. Paenitet, ere, uit; I repent, mē paenitet. 281, 301; 285, 409. Report. Rūmor, ōris, m. To report, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum; ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum. Repulse. Propulso, are, avi, ātum; repello, ere, reppulī, repulsum. Reputation. Auctoritas, ātis, f. Request, to obtain one's request. Impetro, āre, āvī, ātum. Reside. Habitō, āre, āvī, ātum. Rest of. Reliquus, a, um. Restore. Restituō, ere, uī, ūtum. Retain. Retineo, ere, uī, tentum. Retard. Tardō, āre, āvī, ātum. Return. Redeo, ire, ii, itum; revertor, i, reverti, reversum, deponent in present system. Revenue. Vectīgal, ālis, n. Revolution. Res novae. Rhine. Rhēnus, ī, m. Rhone. Rhodanus, ī, m. Ride toward. Adequito, are, avī, ātum. River. Flümen, inis, n. Romānus, a, um; a Roman. Roman, Romanus, ī, m. Rome. Roma, ae, f. Romulus. Romulus, i, m.

Route. Iter, itineris, n.

Rumor. Rūmor, ōris, m.

Rule. Rego, ere, rēxī, rēctum.

S.

Safe. Tūtus, a, um. Safeguard. Praesidium, ii, n. Safety. Salūs, ūtis, f. Same. Idem, eadem, idem. 102, 186. Santones. Santones, um, m. pl. Say. Dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum. School. Schola, ae, f. Scout. Explorator, oris, m. Sea. Mare, is, n. Second. Secundus, a, um. Secure, win. Concilio, are, avi, ātum. Video, ēre, vīdī, vīsum. See. Petō, ere, īvī or iī, ītum; quaerō, ere, sīvī or siī, sītum. Seize. Occupo, āre, āvī, ātum. Select. Dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctum. Senate. Senātus, ūs, m. Send. Mitto, ere, mīsī, missum;

to send ahead, send forward, praemittō, ere, mīsī, missum. Separate. Dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsum. Servitude. Servitūs, ūtis, f. Set fire to. Incendo, ere, i, cen-

sum.Set out. Proficīscor, ī, profectus sum.

Setting. Occāsus, ūs, m. Setting out. Profectio, onis, f. Settle. Consido, ere, sedi, sessum. Septimus, a, um. Seventh. Several. Complūrēs, a or ia, ium. Severe. Acer, cris, cre; sevērus, a, um.Severely. Acriter, adv.; graviter,

adv.

Shepherd. Pastor, oris, m. Ship. Nāvis, is, f.; nāvigium, iī, n.; ship of war, longa nāvis.

Contineo, ēre, uī, ten-Shut in. tum. Side, part. Pars, partis, f.; on

all sides, undique, adv. Conspectus, ūs, m.

Sight. Signal. Insignis, e.

Silent, to be silent, to remain Taceo, ēre, uī, itum. silent.

Since. Cum, conj.

Cantus, ūs, m. Singing.

Single, one. $\overline{U}nus$, a, um. 97, 175.

Sex, indeclinable.

Sextus, a, um. Sixîh.

Skilful. Perītus, a, um.

Skin. Pellis, is, f.

Slave. Servus, ī, m. Slavery. Servitūs, ūtis, f.

Slay. Occīdo, ere, ī, sum; interficio, ere, feci, fectum.

Dormio, īre, īvī or iī, Sleep. ītum.

Small. Parvus, a, um. 86, 165. So, to such an extent. adv.; in such a way, ita, adv.; so great, tantus, a, um.

Soldier. Miles, itis, m. and f.

Son. $F\bar{\imath}lius$, $i\bar{\imath}$, m. 32, 51, 5.

Son-in-law. Gener, erī, m. Soon, as soon as. Simul, simul

atque, conj. Soul. Animus, ī, m.

Soundly. Arte, adv.

Sovereignty. Principātus, ūs, m. Spatium, ii, n.; locus, Space.

ī. m. Spare. Parco, ere, peperci, parsum. (Followed by the Dative.) $D\bar{i}c\bar{o}$, ere, $d\bar{i}x\bar{i}$, dictum. Speak.

Speedily. Celeriter, adv.

Spirit. Animus, i, m. State. Cīvitās, ātis, f. To state, say, dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum.

Station. Colloco, are, avī, atum; constituo, ere, ui, utum. Stone, Lapis, idis, m. Storm. Tempestās, ātis, f.; to take by storm, expugno, are, āvī, ātum. Story. Fābula, ae, f. Stricken with fear. Timore perterritus, a. um. Strip. Nūdo, āre, āvī, ātum. Successfully. Feliciter, adv. Successive. Continuus, a, um. Tantus, a, um; Such, so great. in such a way, ita, adv. Suebi. Suēbī, ōrum, m. pl. Suffer. Patior, i, passus sum. Summer. Aestās, ātis, f. Vocō, āre, āvī, ātum. Summon. Sun. Sol. sölis, m. Sunset. Solis occāsus, ūs, m. Supplied, to be well supplied. Abundo, āre, āvī, ātum. Supply, supplies. Commeātus, ūs, m.; supply of grain, supplies,

rēs frūmentāria. Alō, ere, uī, alitum Support. and altum.

Praecēdo, ere, cessī, Surpass. cessum; praestō, āre, stitī, stitum and stātum.

Contineo, ēre, uī, Surround. tentum.

Suspicion. Suspīciō, onis, f. Sustain. Sustineo, ēre, uī, tentum.

Т.

Take. Capiō, ere, cēpī, captum; sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum; to carry, portō, āre, āvī, ātum; to take by storm, expūgnō, āre, $\bar{a}v\bar{i}$, $\bar{a}tum$; to take possession

of, occupo, are, avī, atum: to take from, effero, ferre, extuli, ēlātum; to take vengeance on. ulcīscor, i, ultus sum; a battle takes place, pūgnātur, 281, 301. Doceo, ēre, uī, doctum Tell. Dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum. Templum, i, n. Temple. Ten. Decem, indeclinable. Tend. Pertineō, ēre, uī, tentum. Tenth. Decimus, a, um. Terreo, ēre, uī, itum; Terrify. to terrify greatly, perterreo, ēre, uī, itum. Territory. Fines, ium, m. pl. Tamesis, is, m. Thames. Than. Quam, conj. Ille, a, ud; is, ea, id; That. 102, 186; that of yours, iste, a, ud, 102, 186; that, relative, quī, quae, quod, 106, 187; that, repeating a previous noun, is often not to be rendered into Latin; that, in order that, ut, quō, quōminus, conj. 119, 497. The. See page 25, foot-note 1. Their. Suus, a, um; sometimes expressed by the genitive of is or *ille*, **102**, 186; sometimes not expressed in Latin. Tum, adv. Then. There. $Ib\bar{\imath}$, adv. Therefore. Igitur, conj. Thing. Rēs, rēī, f. Think. Putō, āre, āvī, ātum; arbitror, ārī, ātus sum; exīs-

timo, āre, āvī, ātum. Tertius, a, um.

Thou. Tū, tuī. 102, 184.

Through. Per, prep. w. acc.

This. $H\bar{i}c$, haec, $h\bar{o}c$. 102, 186.

Trēs, tria. 97.175.

Third.

Three.

Throw. Jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum. Nūntius, iī, m. Tidings. Time. Tempus, oris, n.; dies, eī, f. (although, when meaning day, usually masculine); for a long time, diū, comp. diūtius, sup. diūtissimē, adv. To. Ad, prep. w. acc.; often expressed by the Dative, 54, 384; with reference to, de, prep. w. abl.; to set fire to, incendo, ere. ī. cēnsum. $\bar{U}n\bar{a}$, adv.; to call to-Together. gether, convoco, are, avi, atum. Top of. Summus, a, um. Toward. Ad, prep. w. acc. Tower. Turris, is, f. Oppidum, ī, n. Town. Traitor. Proditor, oris, m. Viātor, ōris, m. Traveller. Treason. Proditio, onis, f. Tribe. Gēns, gentis, f. Tribūnus, ī, m. Tribune. Triplex, icis. Triple. Vērus, a, um. True. Truth. Vērum, ī, n. Tentō, āre, āvī, ātum. Trv. Tullia, ae, f. Tullia. Two. Duo, ae, o, 97, 175. Tyrannus, ī, m. Tyrant.

U.

Under. Sub, prep. w. acc. and abl.; under the command of, dux, in the Ablative Absolute; under the command of Caesar, Caesare duce.
Understand. Intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctum.
Undertake. Suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum.

Unfortunate. *Infēlīx*, *īcis*. Conjungo, ere, jūnxī, Unite. iūnctum. Unless. Nisi, conj. 250, 507. Unskilled. Imperītus, a, um. Until. Dum, quoad, conj. 337, 519. Unwilling, to be unwilling. $N\bar{o}l\bar{o}$, nõlle, nõluī. 273, 293. Unworthy. Indignus, a, um. Up, to draw up. Instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum; to give up, trādō, ere, didī, ditum. Upbraid. Accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum. Upon. In, prep. w. acc. and abl.; against, in, contrā, prep. w. acc. Urge. Hortor, ārī, ātus sum. Use. Usus, ūs, m. To use, ūtor, ī, ūsus sum. Useful. Ütilis, e.

v.

Usipetes. Usipetēs, um, m. pl.

Valor. Virtūs, ūtis, f.
Valuable. Pretiōsus, a, um.
Veneti. Venetī, ōrum, m. pl.
Vengeance, to take vengeance on.
Ulcīscor, ī, ultus sum.
Vergobretus. Vergobretus, ī, m.
Very. Often expressed by the
sup.; very easy, perfacilis, e;
to like very much, adamō, āre,
āvī, ātum.
Vessel. Nāvis, is, f.
Vicinity, in the vicinity of. Apud,
ad, circum, prep. w. acc.

Victoria. Vīctōria, ae, f.
Victory. Vīctōria, ae, f.
Village. Vīcus, ī, m.
Virtue. Virtūs, ūtis, f.
Voice. Vōx, vōcis, f.

W.

Wage. Gerō, ere, gessī, gestum; to wage against, īnferō, ferre, intuli, illātum.

Wait for. Exspecto, āre, āvi, ātum.

Wall. Mūrus, ī, m.

Want. Inopia, ae, f.

War. Bellum, ī, n.; ship of war, nāvis longa.

Warlike. Bellicosus, a, um.

Warn. Moneo, ēre, uī, itum.

Waste, to lay waste. Vastō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Way, in such a way. Ita, adv. Weaken. Effēminō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Well, to be well supplied. Abundō, āre, āvī, ātum.

What? Quis, quae, quid; qui, quae, quod. 106, 188.

quae, quod. 106, 188. When. Cum, conj.

Whether. Num, in a single question; utrum, in a double question.

Which, who. Quī, quae, quod, **106**, 187; which? who? quis, quae, quid; quī, quae, quod; **106**, 188.

Whole. Omnis, e; tōtus, a, um, 45, 151; ūniversus, a, um.

Why. Quārē, cūr, adv.

Width. Lātitūdō, inis, f.

Willing, to be willing. Volö, velle, volui. 273, 293.

Winter. Hiems, emis, f.; winter quarters, hiberna, orum, n. pl.

To winter, pass the winter hiemo, āre, āvī, ātum.

Wisdom. Sapientia, ae, f.

Wise. Sapiēns, entis.
Wish. Cunio. ere. ini or

Wish. Cupiō, ere, ivi or ii, itum; volō, velle, volui. 273, 293.

With. Cum, prep. w. abl.; among, apud, prep. w. acc.; with reference to, dē, prep. w. abl.; with each other, with one another, inter sē; to be greatly pleased with, adamō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Withdraw. Subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum; redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum; dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum.

Without. Sine, prep. w. abl.Withstand. Sustineō, ēre, uī, tentum.

Witness. Testis, is, m. and f. Word. Verbum, \bar{i} , n.

Would that. *Utinam*, interj. **114**, 483, 1.

Wound. Vulnus, eris, n. To wound, vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātum. Write. Scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum.

Wrong. Injūria, ae, f.

Y.

Yet, not yet. Nondum, adv. Yoke. Jugum, ī, n. You, thou. Tū, tuī. 102, 184. Your. Vester, tra, trum; thy, tuus, a, um.

APPENDIX.

GENERAL RULES OF SYNTAX

Given here in a body, for convenience of reference, in the order and form in which they occur in the standard edition of Harkness's LATIN GRAMMAR, together with the numbers of sections in which the Rules are given respectively in this Volume, and their grammatical reference numbers.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE I.—Predicate Nouns (59).

362. A noun predicated of another noun denoting the same person or thing agrees with it in CASE:

Brūtus cūstos lībertātis fuit, Brutus was the guardian of liberty.

RULE II.—Appositives (28).

363. An appositive agrees in CASE with the noun or pronoun which it qualifies:

Cluilius rex moritur, Cluilius the king dies.

Nominative.—Vocative.

RULE III.—Subject Nominative (12).

368. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative:

Servius regnāvit, Servius reigned.

RULE IV.—Case of Address (190).

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative:

Perge, Laeli, proceed, Laelius.

ACCUSATIVE.

RULE V.—Direct Object (16).

371. The DIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Accusative:

Deus mundum aedificāvit. God made (built) the world.

RULE VI.—Two Accusatives—Same Person (153).

373. Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing:

Hamilcarem imperatorem fecerunt, they made Hamilcar commander.

RULE VII.—Two Accusatives—Person and Thing (273).

374. Some verbs of asking, demanding, teaching, and concealing admit two Accusatives—one of the *person* and the other of the *thing*:

Mē sententiam rogāvit, he asked me my opinion.

RULE VIII.-Accusative of Specification.

378. A verb or an adjective may take an Accusative to define its application:

Capita vēlāmur, we have our heads veiled.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Time and Space (98).

379. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the Accusative:

Septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit annōs, he reigned thirty-seven years. Quīnque mīlia passuum ambulāre, to walk five miles.

RULE X.—Accusative of Limit (277).

380. The Place to which is designated by the Accusative:

I. Generally with a preposition—ad or in:

Legiones ad urbem adducit, he is leading the legions to or toward the city.

II. In names of towns without a preposition:

Nuntius Romam redit, the messenger returns to Rome.

RULE XI.—Accusative in Exclamations.

381. The Accusative, either with or without an interjection, may be used with Exclamations:

Heu mé miserum, ah me unhappy!

DATIVE.

RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs (54).

- 384. The Indirect Object of an action is put in the Dative. It is used—
 - I. With Intransitive and Passive verbs:

Tibĭ serviō, I am devoted to you.

II. With Transitive verbs, in connection with the Direct Object; Agros plabi dedit, he gave lands to the common people.

RULE XIII.—Two Datives—To which and For which (281).

- 390. Two Datives—the object to which and the object or end for which—occur with a few verbs:
 - I. With Intransitive and Passive verbs:

Malo est hominibus avaritia, avarice is an evil to men.

II. With Transitive verbs in connection with the Accusative:

Quinque cohortes castris praesidio reliquit, he left five cohorts for the defence of the camp.

RULE XIV.—Dative with Adjectives (141).

391. With adjectives, the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative:

Omnibus cārum est, it is dear to all.

RULE XV.-Dative with Nouns and Adverbs.

- 392. The Dative is used with a few special nouns and adverbs:
 - I. With a few nouns from verbs which take the Dative:

Jūstitia est obtemperātiŏ lēgibus, justice is obedience to laws.

II. With a few adverbs from adjectives which take the Dative:

Congruenter naturae vivere, to live in accordance with nature.

GENITIVE.

RULE XVI.—Genitive with Nouns (28).

395. Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

Catonis orātiones, Cato's orations.

RULE XVII.—Genitive with Adjectives.

399. Many adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning:

Avidus laudis, desirous of praise.

RULE XVIII.—Predicate Genitive.

401. A noun predicated of another noun denoting a different person or thing is put in the Genitive:

Omnia hostium erant, all things belonged to the enemy.

RULE XIX.—Genitive with Special Verbs.

406. The Genitive is used-

I. With misereor and miseresco:

Miserère laborum, pity the labors.

II. With recordor, memini, reminiscor, and obliviscor:

Meminit praeteritorum, he remembers the past.

III. With refert and interest:

Interest omnium, it is the interest of all.

RULE XX.—Accusative and Genitive (285).

409. The Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing are used with a few transitive verbs:

I. With verbs of reminding, admonishing:

Tē amīcitiae commonefacit, he reminds you of friendship.

• II. With verbs of accusing, convicting, acquitting:

Viros sceleris arguis, you accuse men of crime.

III. With miseret, paenitet, pudet, taedet, and piget:

Eōrum nōs miseret, we pity them.

ABLATIVE PROPER.

RULE XXI.—Place from which (277).

412. The Place from which is denoted by the Ablative:

I. Generally with a preposition-a, ab, de, or ex:

Ab urbe proficiscitur, he sets out from the city.

II. In Names of Towns without a preposition:

Platonem Athenis arcessivit, he summoned Plato from Athens. .

RULE XXII.—Separation, Source, Cause (158).

413. Separation, Source, and Cause are denoted by the Ablative with or without a preposition:

Caedem ā vöbīs dēpellö, I ward off slaughter from you. Höc audīvī dē parente meō, I heard this from my father. Ars ūtilitāte laudātur, an art is praised because of its usefulness.

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives (88).

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est amābilius virtūte, nothing is more lovely than virtue.

INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

RULE XXIV.—Ablative of Accompaniment.

419. The Ablative is used—

I. To denote Accompaniment. It then takes the preposition **cum:** Vivit cum Balbō, *he lives with Balbus*.

II. To denote Characteristic or Quality. It is then modified by an Adjective or by a Genitive:

Summā virtūte adulēscēns, a youth of the highest virtue.

III. To denote Manner. It then takes the preposition cum, or is modified by an Adjective or by a Genitive:

Cum virtute vixit, he lived virtuously.

RULE XXV.—Ablative of Means (78).

420. Instrument and Means are denoted by the Ablative:

Cornibus taurī sē tūtantur, bulls defend themselves with their horns.

RULE XXVI.—Ablative in Special Constructions (258).

421. The Ablative is used—

I. With utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, and their compounds: Plurimis rebus fruimur et utimur, we enjoy and use very many things.

II. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY:

Vīlla abundat lacte, cāseō, melle, the villa abounds in milk, cheese, and loney.

III. With dignus, indignus, and contentus:

Dīgnī sunt amīcitiā, they are worthy of friendship.

RULE XXVII.—Ablative of Price.

422. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative:

Vēndidit aurō patriam, he sold his country for gold.

RULE XXVIII.—Ablative of Difference (236).

423. The Measure of Difference is denoted by the Ablative:

Ünö die longiörem mensem, faciunt, they make the month one day longer.

RULE XXIX.—Specification (231).

424. A noun, adjective, or verb may take an Ablative to define its application:

Nōmine, nōn potestāte, fuit rēx, he was king in name, not in power.

LOCATIVE ABLATIVE:

RULE XXX.-Place in which (185).

425. The Place in which is denoted—

I. Generally by the Locative Ablative with the preposition in: Hannibal in Italia fuit, Hannibal was in Italy.

II. In NAMES OF Towns by the Locative, if such a form exists, otherwise by the Locative Ablative:

Romae fuit, he was at Rome.

RULE XXXI.—Time (93).

429. The TIME of an action is denoted by the Ablative: Octogesimo anno est mortuus, he died in his eightieth year.

RULE XXXII.—Ablative Absolute (240).

431. A noun and a participle may be put in the Ablative to add to the predicate an attendant circumstance:

Serviō regnante viguerunt, they flourished in the reign of Servius.

Cases with Prepositions.

RULE XXXIII.—Cases with Prepositions (64).

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with prepositions:

Ad amīcum, to a friend. In Italia, in Italy.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, AND VERBS.

RULE XXXIV.—Agreement of Adjectives (43).

438. An adjective agrees with its noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE:

Fortuna caeca est, fortune is blind.

RULE XXXV.—Agreement of Pronouns (107).

445. A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON:

Animal, quod sanguinem habet, an animal which has blood.

RULE XXXVI.-Agreement of Verb with Subject (12).

460. A finite verb agrees with its subject in NUMBER and PERSON:

Ego rēgēs ējēcī, I have banished kings.

Use of the Indicative.

RULE XXXVII.—Indicative (112).

474. The indicative is used in treating of facts: Deus mundum aedificavit, God made (built) the world.

Moods and Tenses in Principal Clauses.

RULE XXXVIII.—Subjunctive of Desire, Command (114).
483. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS DESIRED:

Valeant cīvēs, may the citizens be well.

RULE XXXIX.—Potential Subjunctive.

485. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS POSSIBLE:

Hīc quaerat quispiam, here some one may inquire.

RULE XL.—Imperative (114).

487. The Imperative is used in COMMANDS, EXHORTATIONS, and ENTREATIES:

Jüstitiam cole, practice justice.

MOODS AND TENSES IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

RULE XLI.—Sequence of Tenses (119).

491. Principal tenses depend upon principal tenses; historical upon historical:

Enītitur ut vincat, he strives to conquer.

RULE XLII.—Purpose (119).

497. The Subjunctive is used to denote Purpose-

I. With the relative qui, and with relative adverbs, as ubi, unde, etc.: Missi sunt qui (= ut ii) consulerent Apollinem, they were sent to consua Apollo.

II. With ut, nē, quō, quōminus:

Enititur ut vincat, he strives that he may conquer.

RULE XLIII.—Result (123).

500. The Subjunctive is used to denote Results-

I. With the relative $\mathbf{qu}\overline{\mathbf{i}}$, and with relative adverbs, as $\mathbf{ub}\overline{\mathbf{i}}$, \mathbf{unde} , \mathbf{cur} , etc.:

Non is sum qui $(=ut\ ego)$ his ütar, $I\ am\ not\ such\ a\ one\ as\ to\ use\ these\ things.$

II. With ut, ut nön, quīn:

Ita vīxit ut Athēniēnsibus esset cārissimus, he so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.

RULE XLIV.—Conditional Sentences with $s\bar{i}$, nisi, $n\bar{i}$, $s\bar{i}n$ (250).

507. Conditional sentences with sī, nisi, nī, sīn, take-

I. The Indicative in both clauses to assume the supposed case: Si spiritum ducit, vivit, if he breathes, he is alive.

II. The Present or Perfect Subjunctive in both clauses to represent the supposed case as possible:

Diès déficiat, sĩ velim causam défendere, the day would fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause.

III. The Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in both clauses to represent the supposed case as contrary to fact:

Plūribus verbīs ad tē scrīberem, sī rēs verba dēsīderāret, I should write to you more fully (with more words), if the case required words.

RULE XLV.—Conditional Clauses with dum, modo, āc sī, ut sī, etc.

513. Conditional clauses take the Subjunctive—

I. With dum, modo, dummodo, 'if only,' 'provided that'; dum nē, modo nē, dummodo nē, 'if only not,' 'provided that not':

Manent ingenia, modo permaneat industria, mental powers remain, if only industry remains.

II. With ac sī, ut sī, quam sī, quasi, tanquam, tanquam sī, velut, velut sī, 'as if,' 'than if,' involving an ellipsis of the real conclusion:

Perinde habēbō, āc sī scrīpsissēs, I shall regard it just as if (i. e., as I should if) you had written.

RULE XLVI.—Moods in Concessive Clauses (254).

515. Concessive clauses take—

I. Generally the Indicative in the best prose, when introduced by quanquam:

Quamquam intellegunt, though they understand.

II. The Indicative or Subjunctive when introduced by etsī, etiamsī, tametsī, or sī, like conditional clauses with sī:

Etsī nihil sciŏ quod gaudeam, though I know no reason why I should rejoice.

III. The Subjunctive when introduced by licet, quamvis, ut, nē, cum, or the relative $qu\bar{\imath}$:

Licet irrideat, though he may deride.

RULE XLVII. - Moods with quod, quia, quoniam, quando

- 516. Causal clauses with quod, quia, quoniam, quandō, generally take—
 - I. The Indicative to assign a reason positively on one's own authority: Quoniam supplication decreta est, since a thanksgiving has been decreed.
- II. The Subjunctive to assign a reason doubtfully, or on another's authority:

Socrates accusatus est, quod corrumperet juventūtem, Socrates was accused because he corrupted the youth.

RULE XLVIII.—Causal Clauses with cum and quī.

517. Causal clauses with cum and $qu\bar{\imath}$ generally take the Subjunctive in writers of the best period:

Cum vīta metūs plēna sit, since life is full of fear.

RULE XLIX .-- Temporal Clauses with postquam, etc.

518. In temporal clauses with postquam, posteāquam, ubī, ut, simul atque, etc., 'after,' 'when,' 'as soon as,' the Indicative is used:

Postquam vidit, etc., castra posuit, he pitched his camp, after he saw, etc.

RULE L.-Temporal Clauses with dum, etc.

519. I. Temporal clauses with dum, donec, and quoad, m the sense of while, as long as, take the Indicative:

Haec feel, dum liquit, I did this while it was allowed.

- II. Temporal clauses with dum, donec, and quoad, in the sense of until, take—
 - 1. The Indicative, when the action is viewed as an actual fact: Dēlīberā hoc, dum ego redeo, consider this until I return.
- 2. The Subjunctive, when the action is viewed as something desired, proposed, or conceived:

Different, dum defervescat īra, let them defer it till their anger cools.

RULE LI.—Temporal Clauses with antequam and priusquam.

- 520. In temporal clauses with antequam and priusquam—
 - I. Any tense except the Imperfect and Pluperfect is put-
 - 1. In the Indicative, when the action is viewed as an actual fact: Priusquam lücet, adsunt, they are present before it is light.
- 2. In the Subjunctive, when the action is viewed as something desired, proposed, or conceived:

Antequam de re publica dicam, before I (can) speak of the republic.

II. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are put in the Subjunctive:

Antequam urbem caperent, before they took the city.

RULE LII.—Temporal Clauses with cum.

- 521. In temporal clauses with cum—
- I. Any tense except the Imperfect and the Pluperfect is put in the Inc.

Cum quiescunt, probant, while they are silent, they approve.

II. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are put—

1. In the Indicative, when the temporal clause asserts an historical fact:

Pāruit cum necesse erat, he obeyed when it was necessary.

2. In the Subjunctive, when the temporal clause simply defines the time of the principal action:

Cum epistulam complicarem, while I was folding the letter.

RULE LIII.-Moods in Principal Clauses (262).

- 523. The principal clauses of the Direct Discourse on becoming Indirect take the Infinitive or Subjunctive as follows:
 - I. When Declarative, they take the Infinitive with a Subject Accusative: Dicebat animos esse divinos, he was wont to say that souls are divine.
 - II. When Interrogative, they take-
 - 1. Generally the Subjunctive:
- Ad postulāta Caesaris respondit, quid sibĭ vellet, cūr venīret, to the demands of Caesar he replied, what did he wish, why did he come?
- 2. Sometimes the *Infinitive with a Subject Accusative*, as in rhetorical questions:

Docebant rem esse testimonio, etc.; quid esse levius, they showed that the fact was a proof, etc.; what was more inconsiderate?

III. When IMPERATIVE, they take the Subjunctive:

Scrībit Labiēnō cum legione veniat, he writes to Labienus to come (that he should come) with a legion.

RULE LIV.-Moods in Subordinate Clauses (262).

524. The subordinate clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE, on becoming Indirect, take the Subjunctive:

Respondit se id quod in Nervis fecisset facturum, he replied that he would do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.

RULE LV.-Moods in Indirect Clauses (127).

529. The Subjunctive is used-

I. In indirect questions:

Quaeritur, cūr doctissimī hominēs dissentiant, it is a question, why the most learned men disagree.

II. Often in clauses dependent upon an Infinitive or upon another Subjunctive:

Nihil indignius est quam eum qui culpă careat supplició non carere, nothing is more shameful than that he who is free from fault should not be exempt from punishment.

Infinitive.

RULE LVI.-Infinitive (132).

533. Many verbs admit an Infinitive to complete or qualify their meaning:

Haec vītāre cupimus, we desire to avoid these things.

RULE LVII.—Accusative and Infinitive (171).

534. Many transitive verbs admit both an Accusative and an Infinitive:

Te sapere docet, he teaches you to be wise.

RULE LVIII.—Subject of Infinitive (171).

536. The Infinitive sometimes takes an Accusative as its subject:

Platonem Tarentum vēnisse reperio, I find that Plato came to Tarentum.

SUPINE.

RULE LIX.-Supine in Um (166).

546. The Supine in *um* is used with verbs of motion to express Purpose:

Lēgātī vēnērunt rēs repetītum, deputies came to demand restitution.

RULE LX.—Supine in ū (246).

547. The Supine in \bar{u} is generally used as an Ablative of Specification :

Quid est tam jūcundum audītū, what is so agreeable to hear (in hearing)?

Adverbs.

RULE LXI.—Use of Adverbs (70).

551. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS:

Sapientës fëliciter vivunt, the wise live happily.

TABLE SHOWING THE ARTICLES IN THIS BOOK CONTAINING ARTICLES

FROM THE LATIN GRAMMAR.

			_	т о.	t. Cou	rco.
Gram. Lat. Course.	Gram.		Gram.	ца		258
1-4 1	211	227	421		•	314
$\tilde{5}$ -14 $\tilde{2}$	$\overline{212}$.	235	422		-	$\frac{514}{236}$
16-18 4	217, 218	246	423			230
$\stackrel{10-10}{22}$ $\stackrel{1}{1}$	219'	250	424	• •		$\frac{251}{185}$
$\frac{1}{30}, \frac{1}{31}$ $\frac{1}{1}$	231, 232	258	425,426		•	93
33 $\overline{1}$	233, 234	266	429			$\frac{95}{240}$
$\frac{1}{38-42}$ $\frac{1}{6}$	289-292	269	102 0			
44 6	293	273	1 202 -			$\begin{array}{c} 65 \\ 43 \end{array}$
45 8	294, 295	277	438		, .	45
46-48 10	1 298		440, NN	1.1 an	a z	
51	300, 301	281		-	191, f	107
55-58 49	346-349	14	445		• • • • •	
59	351-353		459, 1.		, 324	$\frac{16}{20}$
60.61 58	356, 357	\dots 14	460 .	• •	259, i	
62-65 63	362	59	465, N.	2.		
$66, 4 \dots 63$	363	31	467, 4			$\frac{10}{112}$
99 64	368	20	474	•		114
105 64	369	190	483 .	-		000
111 64	371	25				$\frac{322}{114}$
116 92	373	153	487 .			$114 \\ 15, 2$
120 92	374	273	489 .		. 27	$\frac{119}{119}$
146-151 42	376.	275, 19	491-493			119
152-154 82	378	299	497, 498	$\stackrel{\circ}{1}$.		$\frac{110}{123}$
155-157 86	379		500, 50			123
160-162 86	380	277	506, 50	• •		250
165, 166 86	381	299	513.			330
170 86	384	54	514, 51			254
$171, 172 \dots 97$	385, 2.	. 332, f. n. 2	516, 51	7 .	: :	334
174-177 97	390	281	518, 51	9	: :	337
178 247, f. n.	391	141	520, 52		: :	341
$179 \dots 97$	392	04	522-52			262
182–186 102	395	91	526 .			262
187-190 106	397.	0.01	529.			127
192–195 14	399	000	533.			132
196 14 and 111	401	0.01	534.			171
197-200 14	406.	307	200	: :		171
201–204 140	409	088	541-54			291
$205 \dots 152$	412.	150	546 .			166
206 170	413	158	547			246
207		99	548-55	0 .		291
$208 \dots 194$	417.	314	551.			70
209 207	419	78	001 •			• • •
210 214	420		1			

Harkness's Standard Latin Text-Books

HARKNESS'S COMPLETE LATIN GRAMMAR \$1.25 An entirely new work designed as a complete text-book for the
class room and a book of reference for advanced students.
HARKNESS'S SHORT LATIN GRAMMAR 80 cents An elementary manual for beginners and for students who do not contemplate a collegiate course of study.
HARKNESS'S EASY METHOD FOR BEGINNERS IN LATIN \$1.20 An elementary grammar, a book of Latin exercises, and a Latin reader in one volume.
HARKNESS'S FIRST YEAR IN LATIN \$1.12 A course in Latin for the first year with progressive exercises in reading and writing Latin, etc.
HARKNESS'S NEW LATIN READER 87 cents An elementary Latin Reader designed to accompany Harkness's Latin Grammar, with notes, vocabularies, etc.
HARKNESS'S INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK 87 cents An outline of Latin Grammar, with special reference to drill on the inflections and principles of the language.
HARKNESS'S CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES \$1.20 A new edition of this standard text, with colored illustrations, maps, notes, vocabulary, etc.
HARKNESS'S CICERO'S ORATIONS \$1.22 Containing ten orations, with notes, vocabulary, etc.
HARKNESS'S SALLUST'S CATILINE 90 cents With explanatory notes, vocabulary, etc.
HARKNESS'S COURSE IN CAESAR, SALLUST, AND CICERO \$1.40 A preparatory course in Latin Reading, including four books of Caesar, Sallust's Catiline, and eight orations of Cicero, with notes, vocabulary, etc.
Copies of any of the books of Harkness's Standard Latin series will be sent prepaid to any address on receipt of the price by the Publishers.

American Book Company
Cincinnati

New York

Chicago

Harkness's New Latin Grammars

A	COMPLETE LATIN GRAMMAR Cloth-leather binding. 12mo, 464 pages	. \$1.25
A	SHORT LATIN GRAMMAR Cloth-leather binding. 12mo, 254 pages By Albert Harkness, Ph.D., LL.D., Professor E Brown University.	

These new text-books are the crowning triumph of a life-work which has made the name of their author familiar to classical scholars and teachers everywhere. They represent the latest advances in philological science, and embody the results of the author's large experience in teaching and of his own linguistic studies, together with the suggestions and advice of eminent German specialists in the field of Historical and Comparative Grammar. The peculiar qualities of simplicity, clearness, and adaptation of treatment to the practical needs of the student and of the class room,—qualities that have always characterized the Harkness Grammars,—have been preserved and even intensified in these new books.

The Complete Latin Grammar is designed at once as a text-book for the class room and a book of reference for the student. It aims not only to present systematically for the benefit of the beginner the leading facts and laws of the Latin language, but also to provide accurately for the needs of the advanced student.

The Short Latin Grammar is published for the benefit of those who prefer to begin with a more elementary manual, or those who do not contemplate a collegiate course. In the preparation of this work the convenience and interest of the student have been carefully consulted. The paradigms, rules, and discussions have in general been introduced in the exact form and language of the Complete Latin Grammar by which it may at any time be supplemented. The numbering of the sections in the two books is also alike.

Copies of the books will be sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price by the Publishers:

American Book Company

New York • Cincinnati • Chicago

HARKNESS AND FORBES'S

Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War

With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary. By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph. D., LL.D.,
Professor Emeritus in Brown University. Assisted by CHARLES H. FORBES, A.B.,
Professor of Latin in Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass.

Price, \$1.25

THIS WORK is preëminently a student's edition of Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War, and has been prepared with special reference to the present needs of preparatory and secondary schools. While it is remarkable for its simplicity, yet it contains everything which is needed for studying the author. Attention is called particularly to the following special features of the book:

- 1. This edition is furnished with an Introduction containing an outline of the life of Caesar, a description in brief of the scenes of his military operations in Gaul, Germany, and Britain, and a short treatise on the military system of the Romans, together with a list of valuable works on subjects treated in the Introduction.
- 2. The text is chiefly that of the critical edition of H. Meusel, Berlin, 1894, now quite generally accepted as the standard. Each important chapter begins with a brief summary in English.
- 3. The notes are intended to guide the faithful efforts of the student and to interest him in the stirring events recorded in the Commentaries. Special attention has been given to the difficult subjects of the subjunctive mood and of the indirect discourse.
- 4. The vocabulary gives special attention to etymology, but the treatment is made as simple as possible with the sole aim of aiding the student in understanding and appreciating the significant elements of words. The important subject of idioms and phrases receives due attention.
- 5. The illustrations are entirely appropriate and unlike those in most other works of a similar nature. They have in no instance been introduced merely for purposes of decoration. Among the most striking features of the work are the nine colored plates illustrative of the military system of the Romans, which have been made only after consultation with the highest authorities, and are here reproduced in their natural colors. Besides these, there are many other illustrations, eleven plans of battles, seven campaign maps, and a general map of Gaul.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

REVISED EDITION

VIRGIL'S AENEID

With an Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary by HENRY S. FRIEZE, late Professor of Latin in the University of Michigan. Revised by WALTER DENNISON, Professor of Latin in the University of Michigan.

First Six Books . . . \$1.30 Complete \$1.50 Complete Text Edition \$0.50

This Work differs in many respects from the former edition. Such changes and alterations have been introduced as are necessary to make the book conform to modern demands, and many important additions have also been made.

The Introduction has been enlarged by the addition of sections on the life and writings of Virgil, the plan of the Aeneid, the meter, manuscripts, editions, and helpful books of reference.

The Text has been corrected to conform to the readings that have become established, and the spellings are in accord with the evidence of inscriptions of the first century A.D. To meet the need of early assistance in reading the verse metrically, the long vowels in the first two books are fully indicated.

The Notes have been thoroughly revised and largely added to. The old grammar references are corrected and new ones (to Harkness's Complete, Lane & Morgan's, and Bennett's Grammars) added. The literary appreciation of the poet is increased by parallel quotations from English literature. The irregularities of scansion in each book are also given with sufficient explanations.

The Vocabulary has been made as simple as possible and includes only those words occurring in the Aeneid. The parts of compound words are not indicated separately when they appear unmodified in the compound form. The principal parts of verbs are given which are understood to be in actual use.

The Illustrations for the most part are new and fresh, and have been selected with great care with a view to assisting directly in the interpretation of the text. There are also maps showing the wanderings of Aeneas, the vicinity of Cumae, and pre-historic Rome, and a full-page facsimile of one of the best manuscripts of Virgil, the Codex Palatinus.

American Book Company, Publishers

Latin Dictionaries

HARPER'S LATIN DICTIONARY

Founded on the translation of "Freund's Latin-German Lexicon." Edited by E. A. Andrews, LL.D. Revised, Enlarged, and in great part Rewritten by Charlton T. Lewis, Ph.D., and Charles Short, LL.D.

Royal Octavo, 2030 pages Sheep, \$6.50; Full Russia, \$10.00

The translation of Dr. Freund's great Latin-German Lexicon, edited by the late Dr. E. A. Andrews, and published in 1850, has been from that time in extensive and satisfactory use throughout England and America. Meanwhile great advances have been made in the science on which lexicography depends. The present work embodies the latest advances in philological study and research, and is in every respect the most complete and satisfactory Latin Dictionary published.

LEWIS'S LATIN DICTIONARY FOR SCHOOLS

By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D.

Large Octavo, 1200 pages . Cloth, \$4.50; Half Leather, \$5.00

This dictionary is not an abridgment, but an entirely new and independent work, designed to include all of the student's needs, after acquiring the elements of grammar, for the interpretation of the Latin authors commonly read in school.

LEWIS'S ELEMENTARY LATIN DICTIONARY

By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D.

Crown Octavo, 952 pages. Half Leather. . . \$2.00

This work is sufficiently full to meet the needs of students in secondary or preparatory schools, and also in the first and second years' work in colleges.

SMITH'S ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY

(278)

Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.

American Book Company

Chicago

New York Cincinnati

A Descriptive Catalogue of High School and College Text-Books

WE issue a complete descriptive catalogue of our text-books for secondary schools and higher institutions, illustrated with authors' portraits. For the convenience of teachers, separate sections are published, devoted to the newest and best books in the following branches of study:

ENGLISH MATHEMATICS HISTORY AND POLITICAL SCIENCE SCIENCE MODERN LANGUAGES ANCIENT LANGUAGES PHILOSOPHY AND EDUCATION

If you are interested in any of these branches, ww shall be very glad to send you on request the catalogue sections which you may wish to see. Address the nearest office of the Company.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Publishers of School and College Text-Books

NEW YORK

CINCINNATI

CHICAGO

BOSTON

ATLANTA

DALLAS

SAN FRANCISCO

(312)

END OF E-TEXT



This Text was Scanned and Processed by Jorge and Ray at www.Brainfly.net

If you have any suggestions such as books you would like to see added to the collection or if you would like our wholesale prices list please

send us an email to:

primarysources@brainfly.net

TEACHER'S DISCOUNT:

If you are a **TEACHER** you can take advantage of our teacher's discount. Click on **Teacher's Discount** on our website (www.Brainfly.net) and we will send you a full copy of *Primary Literary Sources For Ancient Literature* **AND our** 5000 Classics CD, a collection of over 5000 classic works of literature in electronic format (.txt), for the discounted price of \$55.95 with Free Shipping